



Trident 24.10 documentation

Trident

NetApp
November 15, 2024

Table of Contents

- Trident 24.10 documentation 1
- Release notes 2
 - What's new 2
 - Earlier versions of documentation 14
- Get started 15
 - Learn about Trident 15
 - Quick start for Trident 22
 - Requirements 24
- Install Trident 27
 - Learn about Trident installation 27
 - Install using Trident operator 31
 - Install using tridentctl 60
- Use Trident 66
 - Prepare the worker node 66
 - Configure and manage backends 76
 - Create and manage storage classes 229
 - Provision and manage volumes 234
- Manage and monitor Trident 274
 - Upgrade Trident 274
 - Manage Trident using tridentctl 280
 - Monitor Trident 287
 - Uninstall Trident 290
- Trident for Docker 293
 - Prerequisites for deployment 293
 - Deploy Trident 296
 - Upgrade or uninstall Trident 301
 - Work with volumes 302
 - Collect logs 310
 - Manage multiple Trident instances 311
 - Storage configuration options 312
 - Known issues and limitations 322
- Best practices and recommendations 324
 - Deployment 324
 - Storage configuration 324
 - Integrate Trident 331
 - Data protection and disaster recovery 341
 - Security 343
- Protect applications with Trident protect 350
 - Learn about Trident protect 350
 - Install Trident protect 350
 - Manage Trident protect 361
 - Manage and protect applications 369
 - Uninstall Trident protect 412

- Knowledge and support 413
 - Frequently asked questions 413
 - Troubleshooting 419
 - Support 425
- Reference 427
 - Trident ports 427
 - Trident REST API 427
 - Command-line options 428
 - Kubernetes and Trident objects 429
 - Pod Security Standards (PSS) and Security Context Constraints (SCC) 441
- Legal notices 446
 - Copyright 446
 - Trademarks 446
 - Patents 446
 - Privacy policy 446
 - Open source 446

Trident 24.10 documentation

Release notes

What's new

Release Notes provide information about new features, enhancements, and bug fixes in the latest version of Trident.



The `tridentctl` binary for Linux that is provided in the installer zip file is the tested and supported version. Be aware that the `macos` binary provided in the `/extras` part of the zip file is not tested or supported.

What's new in 24.10

Enhancements

- Google Cloud NetApp Volumes driver is now generally available for NFS volumes and supports zone-aware provisioning.
- GCP Workload Identity will be used as Cloud Identity for Google Cloud NetApp Volumes with GKE.
- Added `formatOptions` configuration parameter to ONTAP-SAN and ONTAP-SAN-Economy drivers to allow users to specify LUN format options.
- Reduced Azure NetApp Files minimum volume size to 50 GiB. Azure new minimum size expected to be generally available in November.
- Added `denyNewVolumePools` configuration parameter to restrict ONTAP-NAS-Economy and ONTAP-SAN-Economy drivers to preexisting Flexvol pools.
- Added detection for the addition, removal, or renaming of aggregates from the SVM across all ONTAP drivers.
- Added 18MiB overhead to LUKS LUNs to ensure reported PVC size is usable.
- Improved ONTAP-SAN and ONTAP-SAN-Economy node stage and unstage error handling to allow unstage to remove devices after a failed stage.
- Added a custom role generator allowing customers to create a minimalistic role for Trident in ONTAP.
- Added additional logging for troubleshooting `lsscsi` ([Issue #792](#)).

Kubernetes

- Added new Trident features for Kubernetes-native workflows:
 - Data protection
 - Data migration
 - Disaster recovery
 - Application mobility

[Learn more about Trident protect.](#)

- Added a new flag `--k8s_api_qps` to installers to set the QPS value used by Trident to communicate with the Kubernetes API server.
- Added `--node-prep` flag to installers for automatic management of storage protocol dependencies on

Kubernetes cluster nodes. Tested and verified compatibility with Amazon Linux 2023 iSCSI storage protocol

- Added support for force detach for ONTAP-NAS-Economy volumes during Non-Graceful Node Shutdown scenarios.
- New ONTAP-NAS-Economy NFS volumes will use per-qtrees export policies when using `autoExportPolicy` backend option. Qtrees will only be mapped to node restrictive export policies at time of publish to improve access control and security. Existing qtrees will be switched to the new export policy model when Trident unpublishes the volume from all nodes to do so without impacting active workloads.
- Added support for Kubernetes 1.31.

Experimental Enhancements

- Added tech preview for Fibre Channel support on ONTAP-SAN driver. Refer to [Fibre Channel support](#).

Fixes

- **Kubernetes:**
 - Fixed Rancher admission webhook preventing Trident Helm installations ([Issue #839](#)).
 - Fixed Affinity key in helm chart values ([Issue #898](#)).
 - Fixed `tridentControllerPluginNodeSelector/tridentNodePluginNodeSelector` won't work with "true" value ([Issue #899](#)).
 - Deleted ephemeral snapshots created during cloning ([Issue #901](#)).
- Added support for Windows Server 2019.
- Fixed ``go mod tidy`` in Trident repo ([Issue #767](#)).

Deprecations

- **Kubernetes:**
 - Updated minimum supported Kubernetes to 1.25.
 - Removed support for POD Security Policy.

Product rebranding

Beginning with the 24.10 release, Astra Trident is rebranded to Trident (Netapp Trident). This rebranding does not affect any features, platforms supported, or interoperability for Trident.

Changes in 24.06

Enhancements

- **IMPORTANT:** The `limitVolumeSize` parameter now limits qtree/LUN sizes in the ONTAP economy drivers. Use the new `limitVolumePoolSize` parameter to control Flexvol sizes in those drivers. ([Issue #341](#)).
- Added ability for iSCSI self-healing to initiate SCSI scans by exact LUN ID if deprecated igroups are in use ([Issue #883](#)).
- Added support for volume clone and resize operations to be allowed even when the backend is in suspended mode.

- Added ability for user-configured log settings for the Trident controller to be propagated to Trident node pods.
- Added support in Trident to use REST by default instead of ZAPI for ONTAP versions 9.15.1 and later.
- Added support for custom volume names and metadata on the ONTAP storage backends for new persistent volumes.
- Enhanced the `azure-netapp-files` (ANF) driver to automatically enable the snapshot directory by default when the NFS mount options are set to use NFS version 4.x.
- Added Bottlerocket support for NFS volumes.
- Added technical preview support for Google Cloud NetApp Volumes.

Kubernetes

- Added support for Kubernetes 1.30.
- Added ability for Trident DaemonSet to clean zombie mounts and residual tracking files at startup ([Issue #883](#)).
- Added PVC annotation `trident.netapp.io/luksEncryption` for dynamically importing LUKS volumes ([Issue #849](#)).
- Added topology awareness to ANF driver.
- Added support for Windows Server 2022 nodes.

Fixes

- Fixed Trident installation failures due to stale transactions.
- Fixed `tridentctl` to ignore warning messages from Kubernetes ([Issue #892](#)).
- Changed Trident controller `SecurityContextConstraint` priority to 0 ([Issue #887](#)).
- ONTAP drivers now accept volume sizes below 20MiB ([Issue#885](#)).
- Fixed Trident to prevent shrinking of Flexvols during resize operation for the ONTAP-SAN driver.
- Fixed ANF volume import failure with NFS v4.1.

Deprecations

- Removed support for EOL Windows Server 2019.

Changes in 24.02

Enhancements

- Added support for Cloud Identity.
 - AKS with ANF - Azure Workload Identity will be used as Cloud identity.
 - EKS with FSxN - AWS IAM role will be used as Cloud identity.
- Added support to install Trident as an add-on on EKS cluster from EKS console.
- Added ability to configure and disable iSCSI self-healing ([Issue #864](#)).
- Added FSx personality to ONTAP drivers to enable integration with AWS IAM and SecretsManager, and to enable Trident to delete FSx volumes with backups ([Issue #453](#)).

Kubernetes

- Added support for Kubernetes 1.29.

Fixes

- Fixed ACP warning messages, when ACP is not enabled ([Issue #866](#)).
- Added a 10-second delay before performing a clone split during snapshot delete for ONTAP drivers, when a clone is associated with the snapshot.

Deprecations

- Removed in-toto attestations framework from multi-platform image manifests.

Changes in 23.10

Fixes

- Fixed volume expansion if a new requested size is smaller than the total volume size for ontap-nas and ontap-nas-flexgroup storage drivers ([Issue #834](#)).
- Fixed volume size to display only usable size of the volume during import for ontap-nas and ontap-nas-flexgroup storage drivers ([Issue #722](#)).
- Fixed FlexVol name conversion for ONTAP-NAS-Economy.
- Fixed Trident initialization issue on a windows node when node is rebooted.

Enhancements

Kubernetes

Added support for Kubernetes 1.28.

Trident

- Added support for using Azure Managed Identities (AMI) with azure-netapp-files storage driver.
- Added support for NVMe over TCP for the ONTAP-SAN driver.
- Added ability to pause the provisioning of a volume when backend is set to suspended state by user ([Issue #558](#)).

Changes in 23.07.1

Kubernetes: Fixed daemonset deletion to support zero-downtime upgrades ([Issue #740](#)).

Changes in 23.07

Fixes

Kubernetes

- Fixed Trident upgrade to disregard old pods stuck in terminating state ([Issue #740](#)).
- Added toleration to "transient-trident-version-pod" definition ([Issue #795](#)).

Trident

- Fixed ONTAP ZAPI requests to ensure LUN serial numbers are queried when getting LUN attributes to identify and fix ghost iSCSI devices during Node Staging operations.
- Fixed error handling in storage driver code ([Issue #816](#)).
- Fixed quota resize when using ONTAP drivers with `use-rest=true`.
- Fixed LUN clone creation in `ontap-san-economy`.
- Revert publish info field from `rawDevicePath` to `devicePath`; added logic to populate and recover (in some cases) `devicePath` field.

Enhancements

Kubernetes

- Added support for importing pre-provisioned snapshots.
- Minimized deployment and daemonset linux permissions ([Issue #817](#)).

Trident

- No longer reporting the state field for "online" volumes and snapshots.
- Updates the backend state if the ONTAP backend is offline ([Issues #801](#), [#543](#)).
- LUN Serial Number is always retrieved and published during the `ControllerVolumePublish` workflow.
- Added additional logic to verify iSCSI multipath device serial number and size.
- Additional verification for iSCSI volumes to ensure correct multipath device is unstaged.

Experimental Enhancement

Added tech preview support for NVMe over TCP for the ONTAP-SAN driver.

Documentation

Many organizational and formatting improvements have been made.

Deprecations

Kubernetes

- Removed support for `v1beta1` snapshots.
- Removed support for pre-CSI volumes and storage classes.
- Updated minimum supported Kubernetes to 1.22.

Changes in 23.04



Force volume detach for ONTAP-SAN-* volumes is supported only with Kubernetes versions with the Non-Graceful Node Shutdown feature gate enabled. Force detach must be enabled at install time using the `--enable-force-detach` Trident installer flag.

Fixes

- Fixed Trident Operator to use IPv6 localhost for installation when specified in spec.
- Fixed Trident Operator cluster role permissions to be in sync with the bundle permissions ([Issue #799](#)).
- Fixed issue with attaching raw block volume on multiple nodes in RWX mode.
- Fixed FlexGroup cloning support and volume import for SMB volumes.
- Fixed issue where Trident controller could not shut down immediately ([Issue #811](#)).
- Added fix to list all igroup names associated with a specified LUN provisioned with ontap-san-* drivers.
- Added a fix to allow external processes to run to completion.
- Fixed compilation error for s390 architecture ([Issue #537](#)).
- Fixed incorrect logging level during volume mount operations ([Issue #781](#)).
- Fixed potential type assertion error ([Issue #802](#)).

Enhancements

- Kubernetes:
 - Added support for Kubernetes 1.27.
 - Added support for importing LUKS volumes.
 - Added support for ReadWriteOncePod PVC access mode.
 - Added support for force detach for ONTAP-SAN-* volumes during Non-Graceful Node Shutdown scenarios.
 - All ONTAP-SAN-* volumes will now use per-node igroups. LUNs will only be mapped to igroups while actively published to those nodes to improve our security posture. Existing volumes will be opportunistically switched to the new igroup scheme when Trident determines it is safe to do so without impacting active workloads ([Issue #758](#)).
 - Improved Trident security by cleaning up unused Trident-managed igroups from ONTAP-SAN-* backends.
- Added support for SMB volumes with Amazon FSx to the ontap-nas-economy and ontap-nas-flexgroup storage drivers.
- Added support for SMB shares with the ontap-nas, ontap-nas-economy and ontap-nas-flexgroup storage drivers.
- Added support for arm64 nodes ([Issue #732](#)).
- Improved Trident shutdown procedure by deactivating API servers first ([Issue #811](#)).
- Added cross-platform build support for Windows and arm64 hosts to Makefile; see BUILD.md.

Deprecations

Kubernetes: Backend-scoped igroups will no longer be created when configuring ontap-san and ontap-san-economy drivers ([Issue #758](#)).

Changes in 23.01.1

Fixes

- Fixed Trident Operator to use IPv6 localhost for installation when specified in spec.

- Fixed Trident Operator cluster role permissions to be in sync with the bundle permissions [Issue #799](#).
- Added a fix to allow external processes to run to completion.
- Fixed issue with attaching raw block volume on multiple nodes in RWX mode.
- Fixed FlexGroup cloning support and volume import for SMB volumes.

Changes in 23.01



Kubernetes 1.27 is now supported in Trident. Please upgrade Trident prior to upgrading Kubernetes.

Fixes

- Kubernetes: Added options to exclude Pod Security Policy creation to fix Trident installations via Helm ([Issues #783, #794](#)).

Enhancements

Kubernetes

- Added support for Kubernetes 1.26.
- Improved overall Trident RBAC resource utilization ([Issue #757](#)).
- Added automation to detect and fix broken or stale iSCSI sessions on host nodes.
- Added support for expanding LUKS encrypted volumes.
- Kubernetes: Added credential rotation support for LUKS encrypted volumes.

Trident

- Added support for SMB volumes with Amazon FSx for ONTAP to the `ontap-nas` storage driver.
- Added support for NTFS permissions when using SMB volumes.
- Added support for storage pools for GCP volumes with CVS service level.
- Added support for optional use of `flexgroupAggregateList` when creating FlexGroups with the `ontap-nas-flexgroup` storage driver.
- Improved performance for the `ontap-nas-economy` storage driver when managing multiple FlexVols.
- Enabled dataLIF updates for all ONTAP NAS storage drivers.
- Updated the Trident Deployment and DaemonSet naming convention to reflect the host node OS.

Deprecations

- Kubernetes: Updated minimum supported Kubernetes to 1.21.
- Data LIFs should no longer be specified when configuring `ontap-san` or `ontap-san-economy` drivers.

Changes in 22.10

You must read the following critical information before upgrading to Trident 22.10.

Critical information about Trident 22.10



- Kubernetes 1.25 is now supported in Trident. You must upgrade Trident to 22.10 prior to upgrading to Kubernetes 1.25.
- Trident now strictly enforces the use of multipathing configuration in SAN environments, with a recommended value of `find_multipaths: no` in `multipath.conf` file.

Use of non-multipathing configuration or use of `find_multipaths: yes` or `find_multipaths: smart` value in `multipath.conf` file will result in mount failures. Trident has recommended the use of `find_multipaths: no` since the 21.07 release.

Fixes

- Fixed issue specific to ONTAP backend created using `credentials` field failing to come online during 22.07.0 upgrade ([Issue #759](#)).
- **Docker:** Fixed an issue causing the Docker volume plugin to fail to start in some environments ([Issue #548](#) and [Issue #760](#)).
- Fixed SLM issue specific to ONTAP SAN backends to ensure only subset of data LIFs belonging to reporting nodes are published.
- Fixed performance issue where unnecessary scans for iSCSI LUNs happened when attaching a volume.
- Removed granular retries within the Trident iSCSI workflow to fail fast and reduce external retry intervals.
- Fixed issue where an error was returned when flushing an iSCSI device when the corresponding multipath device was already flushed.

Enhancements

- Kubernetes:
 - Added support for Kubernetes 1.25. You must upgrade Trident to 22.10 prior to upgrading to Kubernetes 1.25.
 - Added a separate ServiceAccount, ClusterRole, and ClusterRoleBinding for the Trident Deployment and DaemonSet to allow future permissions enhancements.
 - Added support for [cross-namespace volume sharing](#).
- All Trident `ontap-*` storage drivers now work with the ONTAP REST API.
- Added new operator yaml (`bundle_post_1_25.yaml`) without a `PodSecurityPolicy` to support Kubernetes 1.25.
- Added [support for LUKS-encrypted volumes](#) for `ontap-san` and `ontap-san-economy` storage drivers.
- Added support for Windows Server 2019 nodes.
- Added [support for SMB volumes on Windows nodes](#) through the `azure-netapp-files` storage driver.
- Automatic MetroCluster switchover detection for ONTAP drivers is now generally available.

Deprecations

- **Kubernetes:** Updated minimum supported Kubernetes to 1.20.
- Removed Astra Data Store (ADS) driver.
- Removed support for `yes` and `smart` options for `find_multipaths` when configuring worker node

multipathing for iSCSI.

Changes in 22.07

Fixes

Kubernetes

- Fixed issue to handle boolean and number values for node selector when configuring Trident with Helm or the Trident Operator. ([GitHub issue #700](#))
- Fixed issue in handling errors from non-CHAP path, so that kubelet will retry if it fails. ([GitHub issue #736](#))

Enhancements

- Transition from k8s.gcr.io to registry.k8s.io as default registry for CSI images
- ONTAP-SAN volumes will now use per-node igroups and only map LUNs to igroups while actively published to those nodes to improve our security posture. Existing volumes will be opportunistically switched to the new igroup scheme when Trident determines it is safe to do so without impacting active workloads.
- Included a ResourceQuota with Trident installations to ensure Trident DaemonSet is scheduled when PriorityClass consumption is limited by default.
- Added support for Network Features to Azure NetApp Files driver. ([GitHub issue #717](#))
- Added tech preview automatic MetroCluster switchover detection to ONTAP drivers. ([GitHub issue #228](#))

Deprecations

- **Kubernetes:** Updated minimum supported Kubernetes to 1.19.
- Backend config no longer allows multiple authentication types in single config.

Removals

- AWS CVS driver (deprecated since 22.04) has been removed.
- Kubernetes
 - Removed unnecessary SYS_ADMIN capability from node pods.
 - Reduces nodeprep down to simple host info and active service discovery to do a best-effort confirmation that NFS/iSCSI services are available on worker nodes.

Documentation

A new [Pod Security Standards](#) (PSS) section has been added detailing permissions enabled by Trident on installation.

Changes in 22.04

NetApp is continually improving and enhancing its products and services. Here are some of the latest features in Trident. For previous releases, Refer to [Earlier versions of documentation](#).



If you are upgrading from any previous Trident release and use Azure NetApp Files, the `location` config parameter is now a mandatory, singleton field.

Fixes

- Improved parsing of iSCSI initiator names. ([GitHub issue #681](#))
- Fixed issue where CSI storage class parameters weren't allowed. ([GitHub issue #598](#))
- Fixed duplicate key declaration in Trident CRD. ([GitHub issue #671](#))
- Fixed inaccurate CSI Snapshot logs. ([GitHub issue #629](#))
- Fixed issue with unpublishing volumes on deleted nodes. ([GitHub issue #691](#))
- Added handling of filesystem inconsistencies on block devices. ([GitHub issue #656](#))
- Fixed issue pulling auto-support images when setting the `imageRegistry` flag during installation. ([GitHub issue #715](#))
- Fixed issue where Azure NetApp Files driver failed to clone a volume with multiple export rules.

Enhancements

- Inbound connections to Trident's secure endpoints now require a minimum of TLS 1.3. ([GitHub issue #698](#))
- Trident now adds HSTS headers to responses from its secure endpoints.
- Trident now attempts to enable the Azure NetApp Files unix permissions feature automatically.
- **Kubernetes:** Trident daemonset now runs at system-node-critical priority class. ([GitHub issue #694](#))

Removals

E-Series driver (disabled since 20.07) has been removed.

Changes in 22.01.1

Fixes

- Fixed issue with unpublishing volumes on deleted nodes. ([GitHub issue #691](#))
- Fixed panic when accessing nil fields for aggregate space in ONTAP API responses.

Changes in 22.01.0

Fixes

- **Kubernetes:** Increase node registration backoff retry time for large clusters.
- Fixed issue where azure-netapp-files driver could be confused by multiple resources with the same name.
- ONTAP SAN IPv6 Data LIFs now work if specified with brackets.
- Fixed issue where attempting to import an already imported volume returns EOF leaving PVC in pending state. ([GitHub issue #489](#))
- Fixed issue when Trident performance slows down when > 32 snapshots are created on a SolidFire volume.
- Replaced SHA-1 with SHA-256 in SSL certificate creation.
- Fixed Azure NetApp Files driver to allow duplicate resource names and limit operations to a single location.
- Fixed Azure NetApp Files driver to allow duplicate resource names and limit operations to a single location.

Enhancements

- Kubernetes enhancements:
 - Added support for Kubernetes 1.23.
 - Add scheduling options for Trident pods when installed via Trident Operator or Helm. ([GitHub issue #651](#))
- Allow cross-region volumes in GCP driver. ([GitHub issue #633](#))
- Added support for 'unixPermissions' option to Azure NetApp Files volumes. ([GitHub issue #666](#))

Deprecations

Trident REST interface can listen and serve only at 127.0.0.1 or [::1] addresses

Changes in 21.10.1



The v21.10.0 release has an issue that can put the Trident controller into a `CrashLoopBackOff` state when a node is removed and then added back to the Kubernetes cluster. This issue is fixed in v21.10.1 ([GitHub issue 669](#)).

Fixes

- Fixed potential race condition when importing a volume on a GCP CVS backend resulting in failure to import.
- Fixed an issue that can put the Trident controller into a `CrashLoopBackOff` state when a node is removed and then added back to the Kubernetes cluster ([GitHub issue 669](#)).
- Fixed issue where SVMs were no longer discovered if no SVM name was specified ([GitHub issue 612](#)).

Changes in 21.10.0

Fixes

- Fixed issue where clones of XFS volumes could not be mounted on the same node as the source volume ([GitHub issue 514](#)).
- Fixed issue where Trident logged a fatal error on shutdown ([GitHub issue 597](#)).
- Kubernetes-related fixes:
 - Return a volume's used space as the minimum `restoreSize` when creating snapshots with `ontap-nas` and `ontap-nas-flexgroup` drivers ([GitHub issue 645](#)).
 - Fixed issue where `Failed to expand filesystem` error was logged after volume resize ([GitHub issue 560](#)).
 - Fixed issue where a pod could get stuck in `Terminating` state ([GitHub issue 572](#)).
 - Fixed the case where an `ontap-san-economy FlexVol` might be full of snapshot LUNs ([GitHub issue 533](#)).
 - Fixed custom YAML installer issue with different image ([GitHub issue 613](#)).
 - Fixed snapshot size calculation ([GitHub issue 611](#)).
 - Fixed issue where all Trident installers could identify plain Kubernetes as OpenShift ([GitHub issue 639](#)).

- Fixed the Trident operator to stop reconciliation if the Kubernetes API server is unreachable (GitHub issue 599).

Enhancements

- Added support for `unixPermissions` option to GCP-CVS Performance volumes.
- Added support for scale-optimized CVS volumes in GCP in the range 600 GiB to 1 TiB.
- Kubernetes-related enhancements:
 - Added support for Kubernetes 1.22.
 - Enabled the Trident operator and Helm chart to work with Kubernetes 1.22 (GitHub issue 628).
 - Added operator image to `tridentctl images` command (GitHub issue 570).

Experimental enhancements

- Added support for volume replication in the `ontap-san` driver.
- Added **tech preview** REST support for the `ontap-nas-flexgroup`, `ontap-san`, and `ontap-nas-economy` drivers.

Known issues

Known issues identify problems that might prevent you from using the product successfully.

- When upgrading a Kubernetes cluster from 1.24 to 1.25 or later that has Trident installed, you must update `values.yaml` to set `excludePodSecurityPolicy` to `true` or add `--set excludePodSecurityPolicy=true` to the `helm upgrade` command before you can upgrade the cluster.
- Trident now enforces a blank `fsType` (`fsType=""`) for volumes that do not have the `fsType` specified in their `StorageClass`. When working with Kubernetes 1.17 or later, Trident supports providing a blank `fsType` for NFS volumes. For iSCSI volumes, you are required to set the `fsType` on your `StorageClass` when enforcing an `fsGroup` using a `Security Context`.
- When using a backend across multiple Trident instances, each backend configuration file should have a different `storagePrefix` value for ONTAP backends or use a different `TenantName` for SolidFire backends. Trident cannot detect volumes that other instances of Trident have created. Attempting to create an existing volume on either ONTAP or SolidFire backends succeeds, because Trident treats volume creation as an idempotent operation. If `storagePrefix` or `TenantName` do not differ, there might be name collisions for volumes created on the same backend.
- When installing Trident (using `tridentctl` or the Trident Operator) and using `tridentctl` to manage Trident, you should ensure the `KUBECONFIG` environment variable is set. This is necessary to indicate the Kubernetes cluster that `tridentctl` should work against. When working with multiple Kubernetes environments, you should ensure that the `KUBECONFIG` file is sourced accurately.
- To perform online space reclamation for iSCSI PVs, the underlying OS on the worker node might require mount options to be passed to the volume. This is true for RHEL/RedHat CoreOS instances, which require the `discard` [mount option](#); ensure that the `discard` mountOption is included in your `StorageClass` to support online block discard.
- If you have more than one instance of Trident per Kubernetes cluster, Trident cannot communicate with other instances and cannot discover other volumes that they have created, which leads to unexpected and incorrect behavior if more than one instance runs within a cluster. There should be only one instance of Trident per Kubernetes cluster.

- If Trident-based `StorageClass` objects are deleted from Kubernetes while Trident is offline, Trident does not remove the corresponding storage classes from its database when it comes back online. You should delete these storage classes using `tridentctl` or the REST API.
- If a user deletes a PV provisioned by Trident before deleting the corresponding PVC, Trident does not automatically delete the backing volume. You should remove the volume via `tridentctl` or the REST API.
- ONTAP cannot concurrently provision more than one FlexGroup at a time unless the set of aggregates are unique to each provisioning request.
- When using Trident over IPv6, you should specify `managementLIF` and `dataLIF` in the backend definition within square brackets. For example, `[fd20:8b1e:b258:2000:f816:3eff:feec:0]`.



You cannot specify `dataLIF` on an ONTAP SAN backend. Trident discovers all available iSCSI LIFs and uses them to establish the multipath session.

- If using the `solidfire-san` driver with OpenShift 4.5, ensure that the underlying worker nodes use MD5 as the CHAP authentication algorithm. Secure FIPS-compliant CHAP algorithms SHA1, SHA-256, and SHA3-256 are available with Element 12.7.

Find more information

- [Trident GitHub](#)
- [Trident blogs](#)

Earlier versions of documentation

If you aren't running Trident 24.10, the documentation for previous releases is available based on the [Trident support lifecycle](#).

- [Trident 24.06](#)
- [Trident 24.02](#)
- [Trident 23.10](#)
- [Trident 23.07](#)
- [Trident 23.04](#)
- [Trident 23.01](#)
- [Trident 22.10](#)
- [Trident 22.07](#)
- [Trident 22.04](#)
- [Trident 22.01](#)

Get started

Learn about Trident

Learn about Trident

Trident is a fully-supported open source project maintained by NetApp. It has been designed to help you meet your containerized application's persistence demands using industry-standard interfaces, such as the Container Storage Interface (CSI).

What is Trident?

Netapp Trident enables consumption and management of storage resources across all popular NetApp storage platforms, in the public cloud or on premises, including ONTAP (AFF, FAS, Select, Cloud, Amazon FSx for NetApp ONTAP), Element software (NetApp HCI, SolidFire), Azure NetApp Files service, and Cloud Volumes Service on Google Cloud.

Trident is a Container Storage Interface (CSI) compliant dynamic storage orchestrator that natively integrates with [Kubernetes](#). Trident runs as a single Controller Pod plus a Node Pod on each worker node in the cluster. Refer to [Trident architecture](#) for details.

Trident also provides direct integration with the Docker ecosystem for NetApp storage platforms. The NetApp Docker Volume Plugin (nDVP) supports the provisioning and management of storage resources from the storage platform to Docker hosts. Refer to [Deploy Trident for Docker](#) for details.



If this is your first time using Kubernetes, you should familiarize yourself with the [Kubernetes concepts and tools](#).

Take the Trident test drive

To take a test drive, request access to the "Easily Deploy and Clone Persistent Storage for Containerized Workloads" [NetApp Test Drive](#) using a ready-to-use lab image. The test drive provides a sandbox environment with a three-node Kubernetes cluster and Trident installed and configured. This is a great way to familiarize yourself with Trident and explore its features.

Another option is the [kubeadm Install Guide](#) provided by Kubernetes.



Don't use a Kubernetes cluster that you build using these instructions in a production environment. Use the production deployment guides provided by your distribution for production-ready clusters.

Kubernetes integration with NetApp products

The NetApp portfolio of storage products integrates with many aspects of a Kubernetes cluster, providing advanced data management capabilities, which enhance the functionality, capability, performance, and availability of the Kubernetes deployment.

Amazon FSx for NetApp ONTAP

[Amazon FSx for NetApp ONTAP](#) is a fully managed AWS service that lets you launch and run file systems powered by the NetApp ONTAP storage operating system.

Azure NetApp Files

[Azure NetApp Files](#) is an enterprise-grade Azure file share service, powered by NetApp. You can run your most demanding file-based workloads in Azure natively, with the performance and rich data management you expect from NetApp.

Cloud Volumes ONTAP

[Cloud Volumes ONTAP](#) is a software-only storage appliance that runs the ONTAP data management software in the cloud.

Google Cloud NetApp Volumes

[Google Cloud NetApp Volumes](#) is a fully managed file storage service in Google Cloud that provides high-performance, enterprise-grade file storage.

Element software

[Element](#) enables the storage administrator to consolidate workloads by guaranteeing performance and enabling a simplified and streamlined storage footprint.

NetApp HCI

[NetApp HCI](#) simplifies the management and scale of the datacenter by automating routine tasks and enabling infrastructure administrators to focus on more important functions.

Trident can provision and manage storage devices for containerized applications directly against the underlying NetApp HCI storage platform.

NetApp ONTAP

[NetApp ONTAP](#) is the NetApp multiprotocol, unified storage operating system that provides advanced data management capabilities for any application.

ONTAP systems have all-flash, hybrid, or all-HDD configurations and offer many different deployment models, including engineered hardware (FAS and AFF), white-box (ONTAP Select), and cloud-only (Cloud Volumes ONTAP). Trident supports these ONTAP deployment models.

Trident architecture

Trident runs as a single Controller Pod plus a Node Pod on each worker node in the

cluster. The node pod must be running on any host where you want to potentially mount a Trident volume.

Understanding controller pods and node pods

Trident deploys as a single [Trident Controller Pod](#) and one or more [Trident Node Pods](#) on the Kubernetes cluster and uses standard Kubernetes [CSI Sidecar Containers](#) to simplify the deployment of CSI plugins. [Kubernetes CSI Sidecar Containers](#) are maintained by the Kubernetes Storage community.

Kubernetes [node selectors](#) and [tolerations and taints](#) are used to constrain a pod to run on a specific or preferred node. You can configure node selectors and tolerations for controller and node pods during Trident installation.

- The controller plugin handles volume provisioning and management, such as snapshots and resizing.
- The node plugin handles attaching the storage to the node.

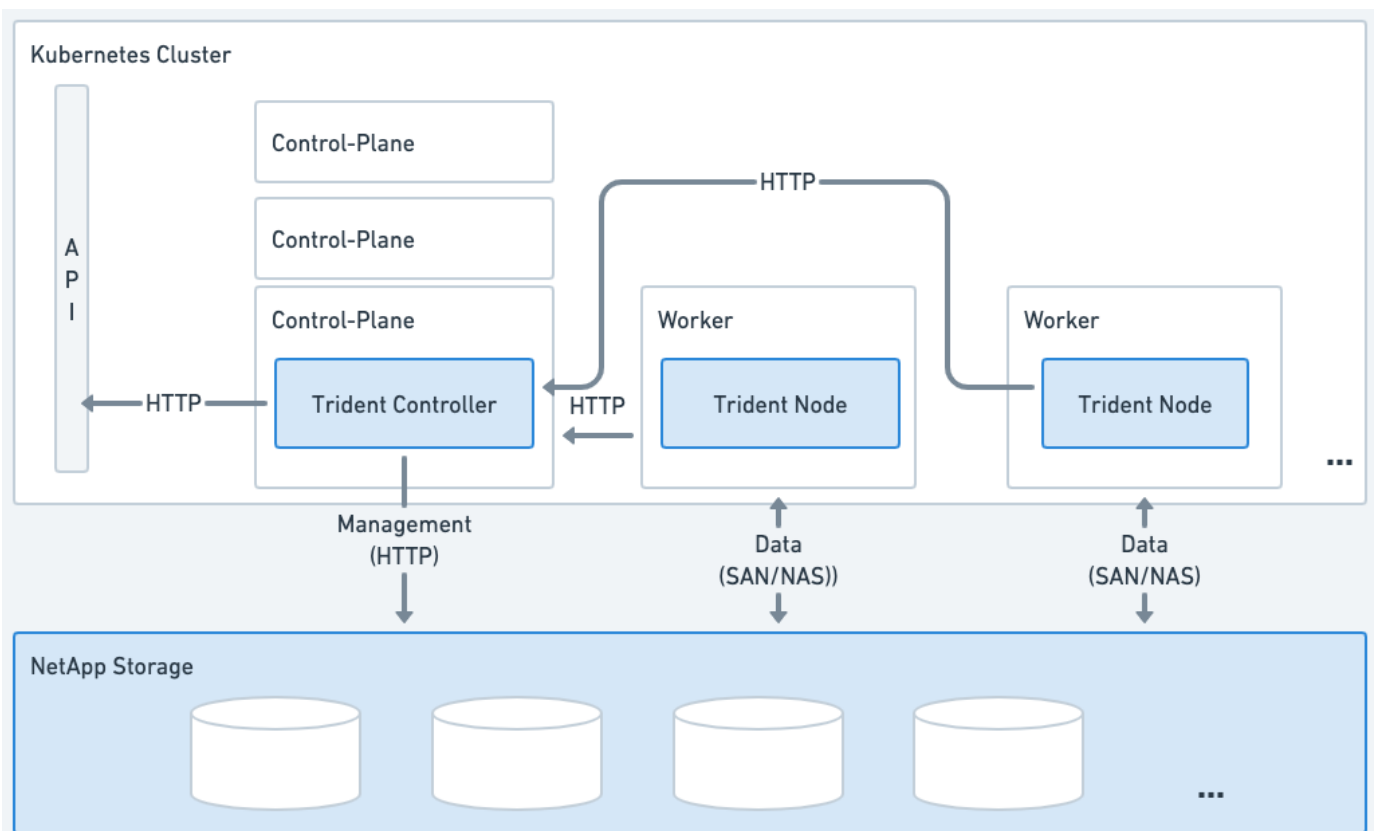


Figure 1. Trident deployed on the Kubernetes cluster

Trident Controller Pod

The Trident Controller Pod is a single Pod running the CSI Controller plugin.

- Responsible for provisioning and managing volumes in NetApp storage
- Managed by a Kubernetes Deployment
- Can run on the control-plane or worker nodes, depending on installation parameters.

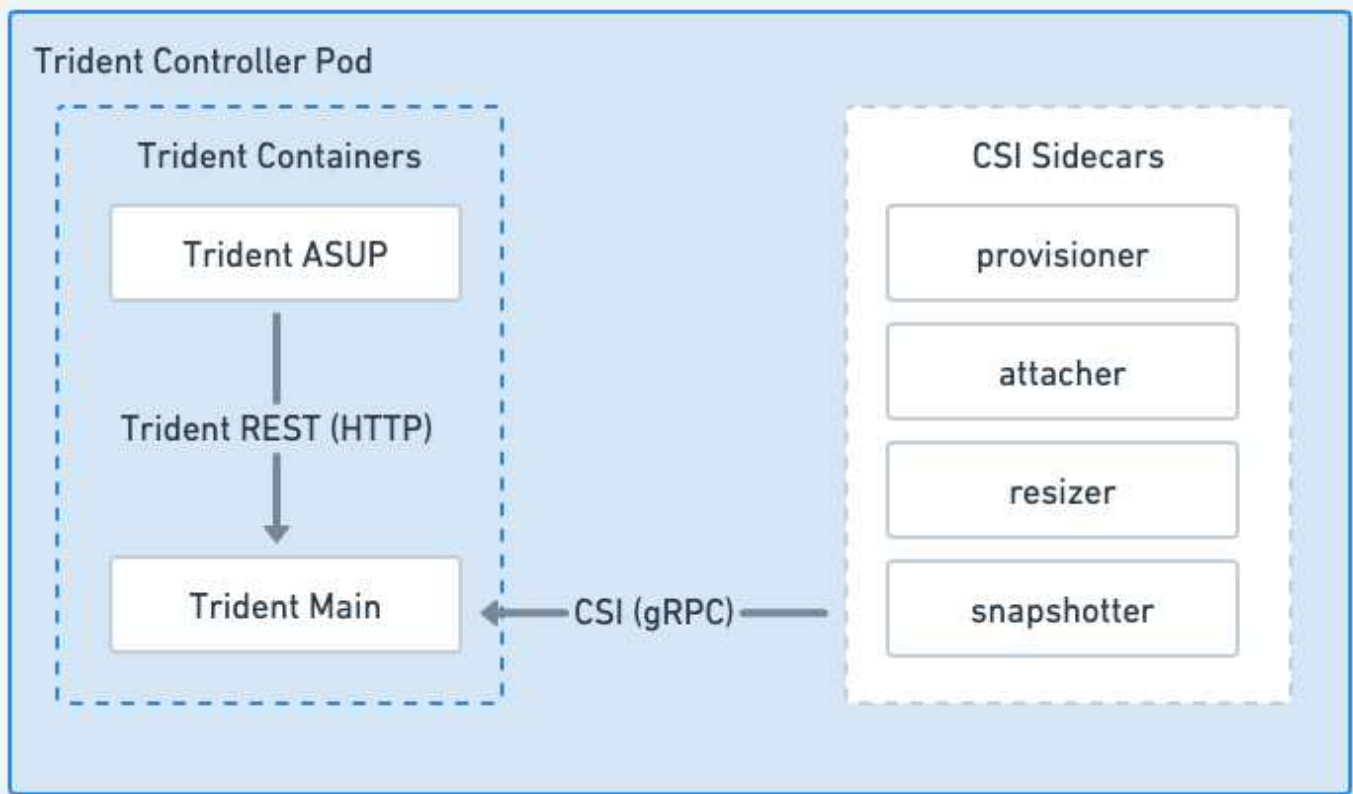


Figure 2. Trident Controller Pod diagram

Trident Node Pods

Trident Node Pods are privileged Pods running the CSI Node plugin.

- Responsible for mounting and unmounting storage for Pods running on the host
- Managed by a Kubernetes DaemonSet
- Must run on any node that will mount NetApp storage

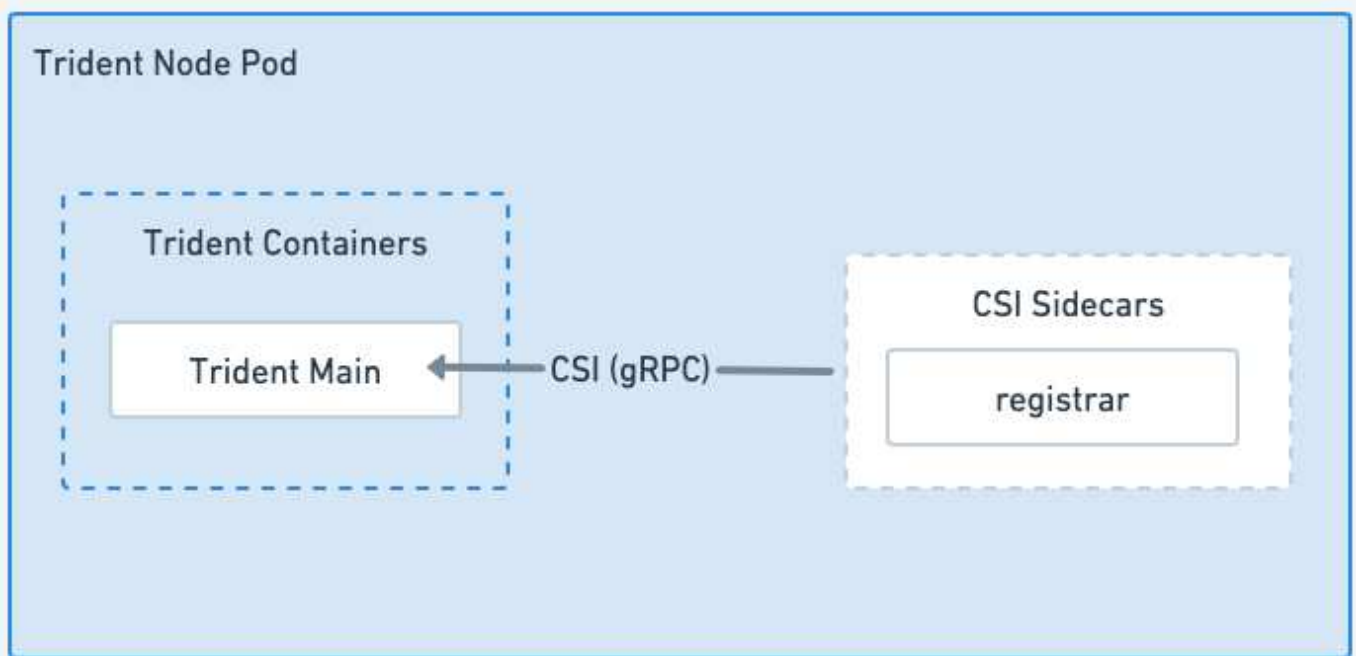


Figure 3. Trident Node Pod diagram

Supported Kubernetes cluster architectures

Trident is supported with the following Kubernetes architectures:

Kubernetes cluster architectures	Supported	Default install
Single master, compute	Yes	Yes
Multiple master, compute	Yes	Yes
Master, etcd, compute	Yes	Yes
Master, infrastructure, compute	Yes	Yes

Concepts

Provisioning

Provisioning in Trident has two primary phases. The first phase associates a storage class with the set of suitable backend storage pools and occurs as a necessary preparation before provisioning. The second phase includes the volume creation itself and requires choosing a storage pool from those associated with the pending volume's storage class.

Storage class association

Associating backend storage pools with a storage class relies on both the storage class's requested attributes and its `storagePools`, `additionalStoragePools`, and `excludeStoragePools` lists. When you create a storage class, Trident compares the attributes and pools offered by each of its backends to those requested by

the storage class. If a storage pool's attributes and name match all of the requested attributes and pool names, Trident adds that storage pool to the set of suitable storage pools for that storage class. In addition, Trident adds all storage pools listed in the `additionalStoragePools` list to that set, even if their attributes do not fulfill all or any of the storage class's requested attributes. You should use the `excludeStoragePools` list to override and remove storage pools from use for a storage class. Trident performs a similar process every time you add a new backend, checking whether its storage pools satisfy those of the existing storage classes and removing any that have been marked as excluded.

Volume creation

Trident then uses the associations between storage classes and storage pools to determine where to provision volumes. When you create a volume, Trident first gets the set of storage pools for that volume's storage class, and, if you specify a protocol for the volume, Trident removes those storage pools that cannot provide the requested protocol (for example, a NetApp HCI/SolidFire backend cannot provide a file-based volume while an ONTAP NAS backend cannot provide a block-based volume). Trident randomizes the order of this resulting set, to facilitate an even distribution of volumes, and then iterates through it, attempting to provision the volume on each storage pool in turn. If it succeeds on one, it returns successfully, logging any failures encountered in the process. Trident returns a failure **only if** it fails to provision on **all** the storage pools available for the requested storage class and protocol.

Volume snapshots

Learn more about how Trident handles the creation of volume snapshots for its drivers.

Learn about volume snapshot creation

- For the `ontap-nas`, `ontap-san`, `gcp-cvs`, and `azure-netapp-files` drivers, each Persistent Volume (PV) maps to a FlexVol. As a result, volume snapshots are created as NetApp snapshots. NetApp snapshot technology delivers more stability, scalability, recoverability, and performance than competing snapshot technologies. These snapshot copies are extremely efficient both in the time needed to create them and in storage space.
- For the `ontap-nas-flexgroup` driver, each Persistent Volume (PV) maps to a FlexGroup. As a result, volume snapshots are created as NetApp FlexGroup snapshots. NetApp snapshot technology delivers more stability, scalability, recoverability, and performance than competing snapshot technologies. These snapshot copies are extremely efficient both in the time needed to create them and in storage space.
- For the `ontap-san-economy` driver, PVs map to LUNs created on shared FlexVols. VolumeSnapshots of PVs are achieved by performing FlexClones of the associated LUN. ONTAP FlexClone technology makes it possible to create copies of even the largest datasets almost instantaneously. Copies share data blocks with their parents, consuming no storage except what is required for metadata.
- For the `solidfire-san` driver, each PV maps to a LUN created on the NetApp Element software/NetApp HCI cluster. VolumeSnapshots are represented by Element snapshots of the underlying LUN. These snapshots are point-in-time copies and only take up a small amount of system resources and space.
- When working with the `ontap-nas` and `ontap-san` drivers, ONTAP snapshots are point-in-time copies of the FlexVol and consume space on the FlexVol itself. This can result in the amount of writable space in the volume to reduce with time as snapshots are created/scheduled. One simple way of addressing this is to grow the volume by resizing through Kubernetes. Another option is to delete snapshots that are no longer required. When a VolumeSnapshot created through Kubernetes is deleted, Trident will delete the associated ONTAP snapshot. ONTAP snapshots that were not created through Kubernetes can also be deleted.

With Trident, you can use VolumeSnapshots to create new PVs from them. Creating PVs from these snapshots is performed by using the FlexClone technology for supported ONTAP and CVS backends. When creating a

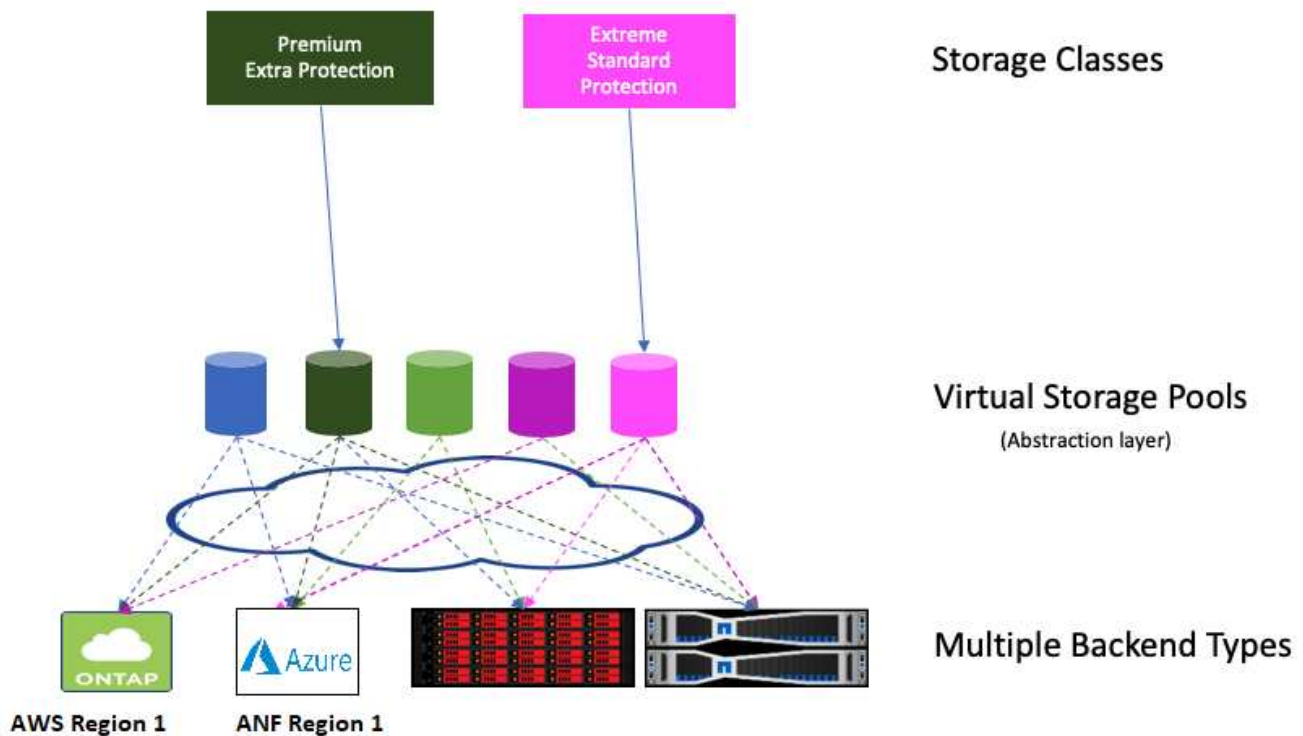
PV from a snapshot, the backing volume is a FlexClone of the snapshot's parent volume. The `solidfire-san` driver uses Element software volume clones to create PVs from snapshots. Here it creates a clone from the Element snapshot.

Virtual pools

Virtual pools provide a layer of abstraction between Trident storage backends and Kubernetes `StorageClasses`. They allow an administrator to define aspects, such as location, performance, and protection for each backend in a common, backend-agnostic way without making a `StorageClass` specify which physical backend, backend pool, or backend type to use to meet desired criteria.

Learn about virtual pools

The storage administrator can define virtual pools on any of the Trident backends in a JSON or YAML definition file.



Any aspect specified outside the virtual pools list is global to the backend and will apply to all the virtual pools, while each virtual pool might specify one or more aspects individually (overriding any backend-global aspects).



- When defining virtual pools, do not attempt to rearrange the order of existing virtual pools in a backend definition.
- We advise against modifying attributes for an existing virtual pool. You should define a new virtual pool to make changes.

Most aspects are specified in backend-specific terms. Crucially, the aspect values are not exposed outside the backend's driver and are not available for matching in `StorageClasses`. Instead, the administrator defines

one or more labels for each virtual pool. Each label is a key:value pair, and labels might be common across unique backends. Like aspects, labels can be specified per-pool or global to the backend. Unlike aspects, which have predefined names and values, the administrator has full discretion to define label keys and values as needed. For convenience, storage administrators can define labels per virtual pool and group volumes by label.

A `StorageClass` identifies which virtual pool to use by referencing the labels within a selector parameter. Virtual pool selectors support the following operators:

Operator	Example	A pool's label value must:
=	performance=premium	Match
!=	performance!=extreme	Not match
in	location in (east, west)	Be in the set of values
notin	performance notin (silver, bronze)	Not be in the set of values
<key>	protection	Exist with any value
!<key>	!protection	Not exist

Volume access groups

Learn more about how Trident uses [volume access groups](#).



Ignore this section if you are using CHAP, which is recommended to simplify management and avoid the scaling limit described below. In addition, if you are using Trident in CSI mode, you can ignore this section. Trident uses CHAP when installed as an enhanced CSI provisioner.

Learn about volume access groups

Trident can use volume access groups to control access to the volumes that it provisions. If CHAP is disabled, it expects to find an access group called `trident` unless you specify one or more access group IDs in the configuration.

While Trident associates new volumes with the configured access groups, it does not create or otherwise manage access groups themselves. The access groups must exist before the storage backend is added to Trident, and they need to contain the iSCSI IQNs from every node in the Kubernetes cluster that could potentially mount the volumes provisioned by that backend. In most installations, that includes every worker node in the cluster.

For Kubernetes clusters with more than 64 nodes, you should use multiple access groups. Each access group may contain up to 64 IQNs, and each volume can belong to four access groups. With the maximum four access groups configured, any node in a cluster up to 256 nodes in size will be able to access any volume. For latest limits on volume access groups, refer to [here](#).

If you're modifying the configuration from one that is using the default `trident` access group to one that uses others as well, include the ID for the `trident` access group in the list.

Quick start for Trident

You can install Trident and start managing storage resources in a few steps. Before

getting started, review [Trident requirements](#).



For Docker, refer to [Trident for Docker](#).

1

Install Trident

Trident offers several installation methods and modes optimized for a variety of environments and organizations.

[Install Trident](#)

2

Prepare the worker node

All worker nodes in the Kubernetes cluster must be able to mount the volumes you have provisioned for your pods.

[Prepare the worker node](#)

3

Create a backend

A backend defines the relationship between Trident and a storage system. It tells Trident how to communicate with that storage system and how Trident should provision volumes from it.

[Configure a backend](#) for your storage system

4

Create a Kubernetes StorageClass

The Kubernetes StorageClass object specifies Trident as the provisioner and allows you to create a storage class to provision volumes with customizable attributes. Trident creates a matching storage class for Kubernetes objects that specify the Trident provisioner.

[Create a storage class](#)

5

Provision a volume

A *PersistentVolume* (PV) is a physical storage resource provisioned by the cluster administrator on a Kubernetes cluster. The *PersistentVolumeClaim* (PVC) is a request for access to the PersistentVolume on the cluster.

Create a PersistentVolume (PV) and a PersistentVolumeClaim (PVC) that uses the configured Kubernetes StorageClass to request access to the PV. You can then mount the PV to a pod.

[Provision a volume](#)

What's next?

You can now add additional backends, manage storage classes, manage backends, and perform volume operations.

Requirements

Before installing Trident you should review these general system requirements. Specific backends might have additional requirements.

Critical information about Trident

You must read the following critical information about Trident.

Critical information about Trident

- Kubernetes 1.31 is now supported in Trident. Upgrade Trident prior to upgrading Kubernetes.
- Trident strictly enforces the use of multipathing configuration in SAN environments, with a recommended value of `find_multipaths: no` in `multipath.conf` file.

Use of non-multipathing configuration or use of `find_multipaths: yes` or `find_multipaths: smart` value in `multipath.conf` file will result in mount failures. Trident has recommended the use of `find_multipaths: no` since the 21.07 release.

Supported frontends (orchestrators)

Trident supports multiple container engines and orchestrators, including the following:

- Anthos On-Prem (VMware) and Anthos on bare metal 1.16
- Kubernetes 1.25 - 1.31
- OpenShift 4.10 - 4.17
- Rancher Kubernetes Engine 2 (RKE2) v1.28.5+rke2r1

The Trident operator is supported with these releases:

- Anthos On-Prem (VMware) and Anthos on bare metal 1.16
- Kubernetes 1.25 - 1.31
- OpenShift 4.10 - 4.17
- Rancher Kubernetes Engine 2 (RKE2) v1.28.5+rke2r1

Trident also works with a host of other fully-managed and self-managed Kubernetes offerings, including Google Kubernetes Engine (GKE), Amazon Elastic Kubernetes Services (EKS), Azure Kubernetes Service (AKS), Mirantis Kubernetes Engine (MKE), and VMWare Tanzu Portfolio.

Trident and ONTAP can be used as a storage provider for [KubeVirt](#).



Before upgrading a Kubernetes cluster from 1.24 to 1.25 or later that has Trident installed, refer to [Upgrade a Helm installation](#).

Supported backends (storage)

To use Trident, you need one or more of the following supported backends:

- Amazon FSx for NetApp ONTAP
- Azure NetApp Files
- Cloud Volumes ONTAP
- Google Cloud NetApp Volumes
- FAS/AFF/Select 9.5 or later
- NetApp All SAN Array (ASA)
- NetApp HCI/Element software 11 or above

Feature requirements

The table below summarizes the features available with this release of Trident and the versions of Kubernetes it supports.

Feature	Kubernetes version	Feature gates required?
Trident	1.25 - 1.31	No
Volume Snapshots	1.25 - 1.31	No
PVC from Volume Snapshots	1.25 - 1.31	No
iSCSI PV resize	1.25 - 1.31	No
ONTAP Bidirectional CHAP	1.25 - 1.31	No
Dynamic Export Policies	1.25 - 1.31	No
Trident Operator	1.25 - 1.31	No
CSI Topology	1.25 - 1.31	No

Tested host operating systems

Though Trident does not officially support specific operating systems, the following are known to work:

- RedHat CoreOS (RHCOS) versions as supported by OpenShift Container Platform (AMD64 and ARM64)
- RHEL 8+ (AMD64 and ARM64)



NVMe/TCP requires RHEL 9 or later.

- Ubuntu 22.04 or later (AMD64 and ARM64)
- Windows Server 2022

By default, Trident runs in a container and will, therefore, run on any Linux worker. However, those workers need to be able to mount the volumes that Trident provides using the standard NFS client or iSCSI initiator, depending on the backends you are using.

The `tridentctl` utility also runs on any of these distributions of Linux.

Host configuration

All worker nodes in the Kubernetes cluster must be able to mount the volumes you have provisioned for your pods. To prepare the worker nodes, you must install NFS, iSCSI, or NVMe tools based on your driver selection.

[Prepare the worker node](#)

Storage system configuration

Trident might require changes to a storage system before a backend configuration can use it.

[Configure backends](#)

Trident ports

Trident requires access to specific ports for communication.

[Trident ports](#)

Container images and corresponding Kubernetes versions

For air-gapped installations, the following list is a reference of container images needed to install Trident. Use the `tridentctl images` command to verify the list of needed container images.

Kubernetes versions	Container image
v1.25.0, v1.26.0, v1.27.0, v1.28.0, v1.29.0, v1.30.0, v1.31.0	<ul style="list-style-type: none">• <code>docker.io/netapp/trident:24.10.0</code>• <code>docker.io/netapp/trident-autosupport:24.10</code>• <code>registry.k8s.io/sig-storage/csi-provisioner:v5.1.0</code>• <code>registry.k8s.io/sig-storage/csi-attacher:v4.7.0</code>• <code>registry.k8s.io/sig-storage/csi-resizer:v1.12.0</code>• <code>registry.k8s.io/sig-storage/csi-snapshotter:v8.1.0</code>• <code>registry.k8s.io/sig-storage/csi-node-driver-registrar:v2.12.0</code>• <code>docker.io/netapp/trident-operator:24.10.0</code> (optional)

Install Trident

Learn about Trident installation

To ensure Trident can be installed in a wide variety of environments and organizations, NetApp offers multiple installation options. You can install Trident using the Trident operator (manually or using Helm) or with `tridentctl`. This topic provides important information for selecting the right installation process for you.

Critical information about Trident 24.06

You must read the following critical information about Trident.

Critical information about Trident

- Kubernetes 1.31 is now supported in Trident. Upgrade Trident prior to upgrading Kubernetes.
- Trident strictly enforces the use of multipathing configuration in SAN environments, with a recommended value of `find_multipaths: no` in `multipath.conf` file.

Use of non-multipathing configuration or use of `find_multipaths: yes` or `find_multipaths: smart` value in `multipath.conf` file will result in mount failures. Trident has recommended the use of `find_multipaths: no` since the 21.07 release.

Before you begin

Regardless of your installation path, you must have:

- Full privileges to a supported Kubernetes cluster running a supported version of Kubernetes and feature requirements enabled. Review the [requirements](#) for details.
- Access to a supported NetApp storage system.
- Capability to mount volumes from all of the Kubernetes worker nodes.
- A Linux host with `kubectl` (or `oc`, if you are using OpenShift) installed and configured to manage the Kubernetes cluster that you want to use.
- The `KUBECONFIG` environment variable set to point to your Kubernetes cluster configuration.
- If you are using Kubernetes with Docker Enterprise, [follow their steps to enable CLI access](#).



If you have not familiarized yourself with the [basic concepts](#), now is a great time to do that.

Choose your installation method

Select the installation method that's right for you. You should also review the considerations for [moving between methods](#) before making your decision.

Using the Trident operator

Whether deploying manually or using Helm, the Trident operator is a great way to simplify installation and dynamically manage Trident resources. You can even [customize your Trident operator deployment](#) using the attributes in the `TridentOrchestrator` custom resource (CR).

The benefits of using the Trident operator include:

Trident object creation

The Trident operator automatically creates the following objects for your Kubernetes version.

- ServiceAccount for the operator
- ClusterRole and ClusterRoleBinding to the ServiceAccount
- Dedicated PodSecurityPolicy (for Kubernetes 1.25 and earlier)
- The operator itself

Resource accountability

The cluster-scoped Trident operator manages resources associated with a Trident installation at the cluster level. This mitigates errors that might be caused when maintaining cluster-scoped resources using a namespace-scoped operator. This is essential for self-healing and patching.

Self-healing capability

The operator monitors Trident installation and actively takes measures to address issues, such as when the deployment is deleted or if it is accidentally modified. A `trident-operator-<generated-id>` pod is created that associates a `TridentOrchestrator` CR with a Trident installation. This ensures there is only one instance of Trident in the cluster and controls its setup, making sure the installation is idempotent. When changes are made to the installation (such as, deleting the deployment or node daemonset), the operator identifies them and fixes them individually.

Easy updates to existing installations

You can easily update an existing deployment with the operator. You only need to edit the `TridentOrchestrator` CR to make updates to an installation.

For example, consider a scenario where you need to enable Trident to generate debug logs. To do this, patch your `TridentOrchestrator` to set `spec.debug` to `true`:

```
kubectl patch torc <trident-orchestrator-name> -n trident --type=merge  
-p '{"spec":{"debug":true}}'
```

After `TridentOrchestrator` is updated, the operator processes the updates and patches the existing installation. This might trigger the creation of new pods to modify the installation accordingly.

Clean reinstallation

The cluster-scoped Trident operator enables clean removal of cluster-scoped resources. Users can completely uninstall Trident and easily reinstall.

Automatic Kubernetes upgrade handling

When the Kubernetes version of the cluster is upgraded to a supported version, the operator updates an existing Trident installation automatically and changes it to ensure that it meets the requirements of the Kubernetes version.



If the cluster is upgraded to an unsupported version, the operator prevents installing Trident. If Trident has already been installed with the operator, a warning is displayed to indicate that Trident is installed on an unsupported Kubernetes version.

Using `tridentctl`

If you have an existing deployment that must be upgraded or if you are looking to highly customize your deployment, you should consider [installing using `tridentctl`](#). This is the conventional method of deploying Trident.

You can [customize your `tridentctl` installation](#) to generate the manifests for Trident resources. This includes the deployment, daemonset, service account, and the cluster role that Trident creates as part of its installation.



Beginning with the 22.04 release, AES keys will no longer be regenerated every time Trident is installed. With this release, Trident will install a new secret object that persists across installations. This means, `tridentctl` in 22.04 can uninstall previous versions of Trident, but earlier versions cannot uninstall 22.04 installations. Select the appropriate installation *method*.

Choose your installation mode

Determine your deployment process based on the *installation mode* (Standard, Offline, or Remote) required by your organization.

Standard installation

This is the easiest way to install Trident and works for most environments that do not impose network restrictions. Standard installation mode uses default registries to store required Trident (`docker.io`) and CSI (`registry.k8s.io`) images.

When you use standard mode, the Trident installer:

- Fetches the container images over the Internet
- Creates a deployment or node daemonset, which spins up Trident pods on all the eligible nodes in the Kubernetes cluster

Offline installation

Offline installation mode might be required in an air-gapped or secure location. In this scenario, you can create a single private, mirrored registry or two mirrored registries to store required Trident and CSI images.



Regardless of your registry configuration, CSI images must reside in one registry.

Remote installation

Here is a high-level overview of the remote installation process:

- Deploy the appropriate version of `kubectl` on the remote machine from where you want to deploy Trident.
- Copy the configuration files from the Kubernetes cluster and set the `KUBECONFIG` environment variable on the remote machine.
- Initiate a `kubectl get nodes` command to verify that you can connect to the required Kubernetes cluster.
- Complete the deployment from the remote machine by using the standard installation steps.

Select the process based on your method and mode

After you've made your decisions, select the appropriate process.

Method	Installation mode
Trident operator (manually)	Standard installation
	Offline installation
Trident operator (Helm)	Standard installation
	Offline installation
<code>tridentctl</code>	Standard or offline installation

Moving between installation methods

You can decide to change your installation method. Before doing so, consider the following:

- Always use the same method for installing and uninstalling Trident. If you have deployed with `tridentctl`, you should use the appropriate version of the `tridentctl` binary to uninstall Trident. Similarly, if you are deploying with the operator, you should edit the `TridentOrchestrator` CR and set `spec.uninstall=true` to uninstall Trident.
- If you have an operator-based deployment that you want to remove and use instead `tridentctl` to deploy Trident, you should first edit `TridentOrchestrator` and set `spec.uninstall=true` to uninstall Trident. Then delete `TridentOrchestrator` and the operator deployment. You can then install using `tridentctl`.
- If you have a manual operator-based deployment, and you want to use Helm-based Trident operator deployment, you should manually uninstall the operator first, and then perform the Helm install. This enables Helm to deploy the Trident operator with the required labels and annotations. If you do not do this, your Helm-based Trident operator deployment will fail with label validation error and annotation validation error. If you have a `tridentctl`-based deployment, you can use Helm-based deployment without running into issues.

Other known configuration options

When installing Trident on VMWare Tanzu Portfolio products:

- The cluster must support privileged workloads.
- The `--kubelet-dir` flag should be set to the location of kubelet directory. By default, this is `/var/vcap/data/kubelet`.

Specifying the kubelet location using `--kubelet-dir` is known to work for Trident Operator, Helm, and `tridentctl` deployments.

Install using Trident operator

Manually deploy the Trident operator (Standard mode)

You can manually deploy the Trident operator to install Trident. This process applies to installations where the container images required by Trident are not stored in a private registry. If you do have a private image registry, use the [process for offline deployment](#).

Critical information about Trident 24.10

You must read the following critical information about Trident.

Critical information about Trident

- Kubernetes 1.31 is now supported in Trident. Upgrade Trident prior to upgrading Kubernetes.
- Trident strictly enforces the use of multipathing configuration in SAN environments, with a recommended value of `find_multipaths: no` in `multipath.conf` file.

Use of non-multipathing configuration or use of `find_multipaths: yes` or `find_multipaths: smart` value in `multipath.conf` file will result in mount failures. Trident has recommended the use of `find_multipaths: no` since the 21.07 release.

Manually deploy the Trident operator and install Trident

Review [the installation overview](#) to ensure you've met installation prerequisites and selected the correct installation option for your environment.

Before you begin

Before you begin installation, log in to the Linux host and verify it is managing a working, [supported Kubernetes cluster](#) and that you have the necessary privileges.



With OpenShift, use `oc` instead of `kubectl` in all of the examples that follow, and log in as **system:admin** first by running `oc login -u system:admin` or `oc login -u kube-admin`.

1. Verify your Kubernetes version:

```
kubectl version
```

2. Verify cluster administrator privileges:

```
kubectl auth can-i '*' '*' --all-namespaces
```

3. Verify you can launch a pod that uses an image from Docker Hub and reach your storage system over the pod network:

```
kubectl run -i --tty ping --image=busybox --restart=Never --rm -- \
ping <management IP>
```

Step 1: Download the Trident installer package

The Trident installer package contains everything you need to deploy the Trident operator and install Trident. Download and extract the latest version of the Trident installer from [the Assets section on GitHub](#).

```
wget https://github.com/NetApp/trident/releases/download/v24.10.0/trident-
installer-24.10.0.tar.gz
tar -xf trident-installer-24.10.0.tar.gz
cd trident-installer
```

Step 2: Create the `TridentOrchestrator` CRD

Create the `TridentOrchestrator` Custom Resource Definition (CRD). You create a `TridentOrchestrator` Custom Resource later. Use the appropriate CRD YAML version in `deploy/crds` to create the `TridentOrchestrator` CRD.

```
kubectl create -f
deploy/crds/trident.netapp.io_tridentorchestrators_crd_post1.16.yaml
```

Step 3: Deploy the Trident operator

The Trident installer provides a bundle file that can be used to install the operator and create associated objects. The bundle file is an easy way to deploy the operator and install Trident using a default configuration.

- For clusters running Kubernetes 1.24, use `bundle_pre_1_25.yaml`.
- For clusters running Kubernetes 1.25 or later, use `bundle_post_1_25.yaml`.

Before you begin

- By default, the Trident installer deploys the operator in the `trident` namespace. If the `trident` namespace does not exist, create it using:

```
kubectl apply -f deploy/namespace.yaml
```

- To deploy the operator in a namespace other than the `trident` namespace, update `serviceaccount.yaml`, `clusterrolebinding.yaml` and `operator.yaml` and generate your bundle file using the `kustomization.yaml`.

1. Create the `kustomization.yaml` using the following command where `<bundle.yaml>` is `bundle_pre_1_25.yaml` or `bundle_post_1_25.yaml` based on your Kubernetes version.

```
cp deploy/kustomization_<bundle.yaml> deploy/kustomization.yaml
```

2. Compile the bundle using using the following command where `<bundle.yaml>` is `bundle_pre_1_25.yaml` or `bundle_post_1_25.yaml` based on your Kubernetes version.

```
kubectl kustomize deploy/ > deploy/<bundle.yaml>
```

Steps

1. Create the resources and deploy the operator:

```
kubectl create -f deploy/<bundle.yaml>
```

2. Verify the operator, deployment, and replicaset were created.

```
kubectl get all -n <operator-namespace>
```



There should only be **one instance** of the operator in a Kubernetes cluster. Do not create multiple deployments of the Trident operator.

Step 4: Create the `TridentOrchestrator` and install Trident

You can now create the `TridentOrchestrator` and install Trident. Optionally, you can [customize your Trident installation](#) using the attributes in the `TridentOrchestrator` spec.

```

kubect1 create -f deploy/crds/tridentorchestrator_cr.yaml
tridentorchestrator.trident.netapp.io/trident created

kubect1 describe torc trident

Name:          trident
Namespace:
Labels:        <none>
Annotations:   <none>
API Version:   trident.netapp.io/v1
Kind:          TridentOrchestrator
...
Spec:
  Debug:       true
  Namespace:   trident
  nodePrep:
    - iscsi
Status:
  Current Installation Params:
    IPv6:                false
    Autosupport Hostname:
    Autosupport Image:   netapp/trident-autosupport:24.10
    Autosupport Proxy:
    Autosupport Serial Number:
    Debug:               true
    Image Pull Secrets:
    Image Registry:
    k8sTimeout:          30
    Kubelet Dir:         /var/lib/kubelet
    Log Format:           text
    Silence Autosupport: false
    Trident Image:       netapp/trident:24.10.0
  Message:              Trident installed Namespace:
trident
  Status:               Installed
  Version:              v24.10.0
Events:
  Type Reason Age From Message ---- -
  Installing 74s trident-operator.netapp.io Installing Trident Normal
  Installed 67s trident-operator.netapp.io Trident installed

```

Verify the installation

There are several ways to verify your installation.

Using `TridentOrchestrator` status

The status of `TridentOrchestrator` indicates if the installation was successful and displays the version of Trident installed. During the installation, the status of `TridentOrchestrator` changes from `Installing` to `Installed`. If you observe the `Failed` status and the operator is unable to recover by itself, [check the logs](#).

Status	Description
Installing	The operator is installing Trident using this <code>TridentOrchestrator</code> CR.
Installed	Trident has successfully installed.
Uninstalling	The operator is uninstalling Trident, because <code>spec.uninstall=true</code> .
Uninstalled	Trident is uninstalled.
Failed	The operator could not install, patch, update or uninstall Trident; the operator will automatically try to recover from this state. If this state persists you will require troubleshooting.
Updating	The operator is updating an existing installation.
Error	The <code>TridentOrchestrator</code> is not used. Another one already exists.

Using pod creation status

You can confirm if the Trident installation completed by reviewing the status of the created pods:

```
kubectl get pods -n trident
```

NAME	READY	STATUS	RESTARTS
trident-controller-7d466bf5c7-v4cpw 1m	6/6	Running	0
trident-node-linux-mr6zc 1m	2/2	Running	0
trident-node-linux-xrp7w 1m	2/2	Running	0
trident-node-linux-zh2jt 1m	2/2	Running	0
trident-operator-766f7b8658-ldzsv 3m	1/1	Running	0

Using `tridentctl`

You can use `tridentctl` to check the version of Trident installed.

```
./tridentctl -n trident version
```

```
+-----+-----+
| SERVER VERSION | CLIENT VERSION |
+-----+-----+
| 24.10.0        | 24.10.0        |
+-----+-----+
```

Manually deploy the Trident operator (Offline mode)

You can manually deploy the Trident operator to install Trident. This process applies to installations where the container images required by Trident are stored in a private registry. If you do not have a private image registry, use the [process for standard deployment](#).

Critical information about Trident 24.10

You must read the following critical information about Trident.

Critical information about Trident

- Kubernetes 1.31 is now supported in Trident. Upgrade Trident prior to upgrading Kubernetes.
- Trident strictly enforces the use of multipathing configuration in SAN environments, with a recommended value of `find_multipaths: no` in `multipath.conf` file.

Use of non-multipathing configuration or use of `find_multipaths: yes` or `find_multipaths: smart` value in `multipath.conf` file will result in mount failures. Trident has recommended the use of `find_multipaths: no` since the 21.07 release.

Manually deploy the Trident operator and install Trident

Review [the installation overview](#) to ensure you've met installation prerequisites and selected the correct installation option for your environment.

Before you begin

Log in to the Linux host and verify it is managing a working and [supported Kubernetes cluster](#) and that you have the necessary privileges.



With OpenShift, use `oc` instead of `kubectl` in all of the examples that follow, and log in as **system:admin** first by running `oc login -u system:admin` or `oc login -u kube-admin`.

1. Verify your Kubernetes version:

```
kubectl version
```

2. Verify cluster administrator privileges:

```
kubectl auth can-i '*' '*' --all-namespaces
```

3. Verify you can launch a pod that uses an image from Docker Hub and reach your storage system over the pod network:

```
kubectl run -i --tty ping --image=busybox --restart=Never --rm -- \
ping <management IP>
```

Step 1: Download the Trident installer package

The Trident installer package contains everything you need to deploy the Trident operator and install Trident. Download and extract the latest version of the Trident installer from [the Assets section on GitHub](#).

```
wget https://github.com/NetApp/trident/releases/download/v24.10.0/trident-
installer-24.10.0.tar.gz
tar -xf trident-installer-24.10.0.tar.gz
cd trident-installer
```

Step 2: Create the `TridentOrchestrator` CRD

Create the `TridentOrchestrator` Custom Resource Definition (CRD). You create a `TridentOrchestrator` Custom Resources later. Use the appropriate CRD YAML version in `deploy/crds` to create the `TridentOrchestrator` CRD:

```
kubectl create -f deploy/crds/<VERSION>.yaml
```

Step 3: Update the registry location in the operator

In `/deploy/operator.yaml`, update `image: docker.io/netapp/trident-operator:24.10.0` to reflect the location of your image registry. Your [Trident and CSI images](#) can be located in one registry or different registries, but all CSI images must be located in the same registry. For example:

- `image: <your-registry>/trident-operator:24.10.0` if your images are all located in one registry.
- `image: <your-registry>/netapp/trident-operator:24.10.0` if your Trident image is located in a different registry from your CSI images.

Step 4: Deploy the Trident operator

The Trident installer provides a bundle file that can be used to install the operator and create associated objects. The bundle file is an easy way to deploy the operator and install Trident using a default configuration.

- For clusters running Kubernetes 1.24, use `bundle_pre_1_25.yaml`.
- For clusters running Kubernetes 1.25 or later, use `bundle_post_1_25.yaml`.

Before you begin

- By default, the Trident installer deploys the operator in the `trident` namespace. If the `trident` namespace does not exist, create it using:

```
kubectl apply -f deploy/namespace.yaml
```

- To deploy the operator in a namespace other than the `trident` namespace, update `serviceaccount.yaml`, `clusterrolebinding.yaml` and `operator.yaml` and generate your bundle file using the `kustomization.yaml`.

1. Create the `kustomization.yaml` using the following command where `<bundle.yaml>` is `bundle_pre_1_25.yaml` or `bundle_post_1_25.yaml` based on your Kubernetes version.

```
cp deploy/kustomization_<bundle.yaml> deploy/kustomization.yaml
```

2. Compile the bundle using using the following command where `<bundle.yaml>` is `bundle_pre_1_25.yaml` or `bundle_post_1_25.yaml` based on your Kubernetes version.

```
kubectl kustomize deploy/ > deploy/<bundle.yaml>
```

Steps

1. Create the resources and deploy the operator:

```
kubectl create -f deploy/<bundle.yaml>
```

2. Verify the operator, deployment, and replicaset were created.

```
kubectl get all -n <operator-namespace>
```



There should only be **one instance** of the operator in a Kubernetes cluster. Do not create multiple deployments of the Trident operator.

Step 5: Update the image registry location in the `TridentOrchestrator`

Your [Trident and CSI images](#) can be located in one registry or different registries, but all CSI images must be

located in the same registry. Update `deploy/crds/tridentorchestrator_cr.yaml` to add the additional location specs based on your registry configuration.

Images in one registry

```
imageRegistry: "<your-registry>"
autosupportImage: "<your-registry>/trident-autosupport:24.10"
tridentImage: "<your-registry>/trident:24.10.0"
```

Images in different registries

```
imageRegistry: "<your-registry>"
autosupportImage: "<your-registry>/trident-autosupport:24.10"
tridentImage: "<your-registry>/trident:24.10.0"
```

Step 6: Create the `TridentOrchestrator` and install Trident

You can now create the `TridentOrchestrator` and install Trident. Optionally, you can further [customize your Trident installation](#) using the attributes in the `TridentOrchestrator` spec. The following example shows an installation where Trident and CSI images are located in different registries.

```

kubect1 create -f deploy/crds/tridentorchestrator_cr.yaml
tridentorchestrator.trident.netapp.io/trident created

kubect1 describe torc trident

Name:          trident
Namespace:
Labels:        <none>
Annotations:   <none>
API Version:   trident.netapp.io/v1
Kind:          TridentOrchestrator
...
Spec:
  Autosupport Image: <your-registry>/trident-autosupport:24.10
  Debug:              true
  Image Registry:    <your-registry>
  Namespace:         trident
  Trident Image:     <your-registry>/trident:24.10.0
Status:
  Current Installation Params:
    IPv6:              false
    Autosupport Hostname:
    Autosupport Image: <your-registry>/trident-autosupport:24.10
    Autosupport Proxy:
    Autosupport Serial Number:
    Debug:              true
    Http Request Timeout: 90s
    Image Pull Secrets:
    Image Registry:    <your-registry>
    k8sTimeout:        30
    Kubelet Dir:       /var/lib/kubelet
    Log Format:         text
    Probe Port:        17546
    Silence Autosupport: false
    Trident Image:     <your-registry>/trident:24.10.0
  Message:             Trident installed
  Namespace:          trident
  Status:              Installed
  Version:             v24.10.0
Events:
  Type Reason Age From Message -----Normal
  Installing 74s trident-operator.netapp.io Installing Trident Normal
  Installed 67s trident-operator.netapp.io Trident installed

```

Verify the installation

There are several ways to verify your installation.

Using `TridentOrchestrator` status

The status of `TridentOrchestrator` indicates if the installation was successful and displays the version of Trident installed. During the installation, the status of `TridentOrchestrator` changes from `Installing` to `Installed`. If you observe the `Failed` status and the operator is unable to recover by itself, [check the logs](#).

Status	Description
Installing	The operator is installing Trident using this <code>TridentOrchestrator</code> CR.
Installed	Trident has successfully installed.
Uninstalling	The operator is uninstalling Trident, because <code>spec.uninstall=true</code> .
Uninstalled	Trident is uninstalled.
Failed	The operator could not install, patch, update or uninstall Trident; the operator will automatically try to recover from this state. If this state persists you will require troubleshooting.
Updating	The operator is updating an existing installation.
Error	The <code>TridentOrchestrator</code> is not used. Another one already exists.

Using pod creation status

You can confirm if the Trident installation completed by reviewing the status of the created pods:

```
kubectl get pods -n trident
```

NAME	READY	STATUS	RESTARTS
AGE			
trident-controller-7d466bf5c7-v4cpw 1m	6/6	Running	0
trident-node-linux-mr6zc 1m	2/2	Running	0
trident-node-linux-xrp7w 1m	2/2	Running	0
trident-node-linux-zh2jt 1m	2/2	Running	0
trident-operator-766f7b8658-ldzsv 3m	1/1	Running	0

Using `tridentctl`

You can use `tridentctl` to check the version of Trident installed.

```
./tridentctl -n trident version

+-----+-----+
| SERVER VERSION | CLIENT VERSION |
+-----+-----+
| 24.10.0        | 24.10.0        |
+-----+-----+
```

Deploy Trident operator using Helm (Standard mode)

You can deploy the Trident operator and install Trident using Helm. This process applies to installations where the container images required by Trident are not stored in a private registry. If you do have a private image registry, use the [process for offline deployment](#).

Critical information about Trident 24.10

You must read the following critical information about Trident.

Critical information about Trident

- Kubernetes 1.31 is now supported in Trident. Upgrade Trident prior to upgrading Kubernetes.
- Trident strictly enforces the use of multipathing configuration in SAN environments, with a recommended value of `find_multipaths: no` in `multipath.conf` file.

Use of non-multipathing configuration or use of `find_multipaths: yes` or `find_multipaths: smart` value in `multipath.conf` file will result in mount failures. Trident has recommended the use of `find_multipaths: no` since the 21.07 release.

Deploy the Trident operator and install Trident using Helm

Using the Trident [Helm Chart](#) you can deploy the Trident operator and install Trident in one step.

Review [the installation overview](#) to ensure you've met installation prerequisites and selected the correct installation option for your environment.

Before you begin

In addition to the [deployment prerequisites](#) you need [Helm version 3](#).

Steps

1. Add the Trident Helm repository:

```
helm repo add netapp-trident https://netapp.github.io/trident-helm-chart
```

2. Use `helm install` and specify a name for your deployment as in the following example where `100.2404.0` is the version of Trident you are installing.

```
helm install <name> netapp-trident/trident-operator --version 100.2410.0  
--create-namespace --namespace <trident-namespace>
```



If you already created a namespace for Trident, the `--create-namespace` parameter will not create an additional namespace.

You can use `helm list` to review installation details such as name, namespace, chart, status, app version, and revision number.

Pass configuration data during install

There are two ways to pass configuration data during the install:

Option	Description
<code>--values</code> (or <code>-f</code>)	Specify a YAML file with overrides. This can be specified multiple times and the rightmost file will take precedence.
<code>--set</code>	Specify overrides on the command line.


For example, to change the default value of `debug`, run the following command where `100.2410.0` is the version of Trident you are installing:

```
helm install <name> netapp-trident/trident-operator --version 100.2410.0  
--create-namespace --namespace trident --set tridentDebug=true
```

Configuration options

This table and the `values.yaml` file, which is part of the Helm chart, provide the list of keys and their default values.

Option	Description	Default
<code>nodeSelector</code>	Node labels for pod assignment	
<code>podAnnotations</code>	Pod annotations	
<code>deploymentAnnotations</code>	Deployment annotations	

Option	Description	Default
tolerations	Tolerations for pod assignment	
affinity	Affinity for pod assignment	<pre> affinity: nodeAffinity: requiredDuringSchedulingIgnoredDuringExecution: nodeSelectorTerms: - matchExpressions: - key: kubernetes.io/arch operator: In values: - arm64 - amd64 - key: kubernetes.io/os operator: In values: - linux </pre> <div style="border: 1px solid #ccc; padding: 10px; margin-top: 10px;">  <p>Do not remove the default affinity from the values.yaml file. When you want to provide a custom affinity, extend the default affinity.</p> </div>
tridentControllerPluginNodeSelector	Additional node selectors for pods. Refer to Understanding controller pods and node pods for details.	
tridentControllerPluginTolerations	Overrides Kubernetes tolerations for pods. Refer to Understanding controller pods and node pods for details.	
tridentNodePluginNodeSelector	Additional node selectors for pods. Refer to Understanding controller pods and node pods for details.	
tridentNodePluginTolerations	Overrides Kubernetes tolerations for pods. Refer to Understanding controller pods and node pods for details.	

Option	Description	Default
imageRegistry	Identifies the registry for the <code>trident-operator</code> , <code>trident</code> , and other images. Leave empty to accept the default. IMPORTANT: When installing Trident in a private repository, if you are using the <code>imageRegistry</code> switch to specify the repository location, do not use <code>/netapp/</code> in the repository path.	""
imagePullPolicy	Sets the image pull policy for the <code>trident-operator</code> .	IfNotPresent
imagePullSecrets	Sets the image pull secrets for the <code>trident-operator</code> , <code>trident</code> , and other images.	
kubeletDir	Allows overriding the host location of kubelet's internal state.	"/var/lib/kubelet"
operatorLogLevel	Allows the log level of the Trident operator to be set to: <code>trace</code> , <code>debug</code> , <code>info</code> , <code>warn</code> , <code>error</code> , or <code>fatal</code> .	"info"
operatorDebug	Allows the log level of the Trident operator to be set to debug.	true
operatorImage	Allows the complete override of the image for <code>trident-operator</code> .	""
operatorImageTag	Allows overriding the tag of the <code>trident-operator</code> image.	""
tridentIPv6	Allows enabling Trident to work in IPv6 clusters.	false
tridentK8sTimeout	Overrides the default 30-second timeout for most Kubernetes API operations (if non-zero, in seconds).	0
tridentHttpRequestTimeout	Overrides the default 90-second timeout for the HTTP requests, with 0s being an infinite duration for the timeout. Negative values are not allowed.	"90s"
tridentSilenceAutosupport	Allows disabling Trident periodic AutoSupport reporting.	false

Option	Description	Default
tridentAutosupportImageTag	Allows overriding the tag of the image for Trident AutoSupport container.	<version>
tridentAutosupportProxy	Enables Trident AutoSupport container to phone home via an HTTP proxy.	""
tridentLogFormat	Sets the Trident logging format (text or json).	"text"
tridentDisableAuditLog	Disables Trident audit logger.	true
tridentLogLevel	Allows the log level of Trident to be set to: trace, debug, info, warn, error, or fatal.	"info"
tridentDebug	Allows the log level of Trident to be set to debug.	false
tridentLogWorkflows	Allows specific Trident workflows to be enabled for trace logging or log suppression.	""
tridentLogLayers	Allows specific Trident layers to be enabled for trace logging or log suppression.	""
tridentImage	Allows the complete override of the image for Trident.	""
tridentImageTag	Allows overriding the tag of the image for Trident.	""
tridentProbePort	Allows overriding the default port used for Kubernetes liveness/readiness probes.	""
windows	Enables Trident to be installed on Windows worker node.	false
enableForceDetach	Allows enabling the force detach feature.	false
excludePodSecurityPolicy	Excludes the operator pod security policy from creation.	false
cloudProvider	Set to "Azure" when using managed identities or a cloud identity on an AKS cluster. Set to "AWS" when using a cloud identity on an EKS cluster.	""

Option	Description	Default
cloudIdentity	Set to workload identity ("azure.workload.identity/client-id: xxxxxxxx-xxxx-xxxx-xxxx-xxxxxxxxxx") when using cloud identity on an AKS cluster. Set to AWS IAM role ("eks.amazonaws.com/role-arn: arn:aws:iam::123456:role/trident-role") when using cloud identity on an EKS cluster.	""
iscsiSelfHealingInterval	The interval at which the iSCSI self-healing is invoked.	5m0s
iscsiSelfHealingWaitTime	The duration after which iSCSI self-healing initiates an attempt to resolve a stale session by performing a logout and subsequent login.	7m0s
nodePrep	Enables Trident to prepare the nodes of the Kubernetes cluster to manage volumes using the specified data storage protocol. Currently, <code>iscsi</code> is the only value supported.	

Understanding controller pods and node pods

Trident runs as a single controller pod, plus a node pod on each worker node in the cluster. The node pod must be running on any host where you want to potentially mount a Trident volume.

Kubernetes [node selectors](#) and [tolerations and taints](#) are used to constrain a pod to run on a specific or preferred node. Using the `ControllerPlugin` and NodePlugin, you can specify constraints and overrides.`

- The controller plugin handles volume provisioning and management, such as snapshots and resizing.
- The node plugin handles attaching the storage to the node.

Deploy Trident operator using Helm (Offline mode)

You can deploy the Trident operator and install Trident using Helm. This process applies to installations where the container images required by Trident are stored in a private registry. If you do not have a private image registry, use the [process for standard deployment](#).

Critical information about Trident 24.10

You must read the following critical information about Trident.

Critical information about Trident

- Kubernetes 1.31 is now supported in Trident. Upgrade Trident prior to upgrading Kubernetes.
- Trident strictly enforces the use of multipathing configuration in SAN environments, with a recommended value of `find_multipaths: no` in `multipath.conf` file.

Use of non-multipathing configuration or use of `find_multipaths: yes` or `find_multipaths: smart` value in `multipath.conf` file will result in mount failures. Trident has recommended the use of `find_multipaths: no` since the 21.07 release.

Deploy the Trident operator and install Trident using Helm

Using the Trident [Helm Chart](#) you can deploy the Trident operator and install Trident in one step.

Review [the installation overview](#) to ensure you've met installation prerequisites and selected the correct installation option for your environment.

Before you begin

In addition to the [deployment prerequisites](#) you need [Helm version 3](#).



When installing Trident in a private repository, if you are using the `imageRegistry` switch to specify the repository location, do not use `/netapp/` in the repository path.

Steps

1. Add the Trident Helm repository:

```
helm repo add netapp-trident https://netapp.github.io/trident-helm-chart
```

2. Use `helm install` and specify a name for your deployment and image registry location. Your [Trident and CSI images](#) can be located in one registry or different registries, but all CSI images must be located in the same registry. In the examples, `100.2410.0` is the version of Trident you are installing.

Images in one registry

```
helm install <name> netapp-trident/trident-operator --version
100.2410.0 --set imageRegistry=<your-registry> --create-namespace
--namespace <trident-namespace> --set nodePrep={iscsi}
```

Images in different registries

```
helm install <name> netapp-trident/trident-operator --version
100.2410.0 --set imageRegistry=<your-registry> --set
operatorImage=<your-registry>/trident-operator:24.10.0 --set
tridentAutosupportImage=<your-registry>/trident-autosupport:24.06
--set tridentImage=<your-registry>/trident:24.10.0 --create
-namespace --namespace <trident-namespace> --set nodePrep={iscsi}
```



If you already created a namespace for Trident, the `--create-namespace` parameter will not create an additional namespace.

You can use `helm list` to review installation details such as name, namespace, chart, status, app version, and revision number.

Pass configuration data during install

There are two ways to pass configuration data during the install:

Option	Description
<code>--values</code> (or <code>-f</code>)	Specify a YAML file with overrides. This can be specified multiple times and the rightmost file will take precedence.
<code>--set</code>	Specify overrides on the command line.

For example, to change the default value of `debug`, run the following command where `100.2410.0` is the version of Trident you are installing:

```
helm install <name> netapp-trident/trident-operator --version 100.2410.0
--create-namespace --namespace trident --set tridentDebug=true
```

To add the `nodePrep` value, run the following command:

```
helm install <name> netapp-trident/trident-operator --version 100.2406.0
--create-namespace --namespace trident --set nodePrep={iscsi}
```


Configuration options

This table and the `values.yaml` file, which is part of the Helm chart, provide the list of keys and their default values.



Do not remove the default affinity from the `values.yaml` file. When you want to provide a custom affinity, extend the default affinity.

Option	Description	Default
<code>nodeSelector</code>	Node labels for pod assignment	
<code>podAnnotations</code>	Pod annotations	
<code>deploymentAnnotations</code>	Deployment annotations	
<code>tolerations</code>	Tolerations for pod assignment	

Option	Description	Default
affinity	Affinity for pod assignment	<pre> affinity: nodeAffinity: requiredDuringSchedulingIgnoredDuringExecution: nodeSelectorTerms: - matchExpressions: - key: kubernetes.io/arch operator: In values: - arm64 - amd64 - key: kubernetes.io/os operator: In values: - linux </pre> <div style="border: 1px solid #ccc; padding: 10px; margin-top: 10px;">  <p>Do not remove the default affinity from the values.yaml file. When you want to provide a custom affinity, extend the default affinity.</p> </div>
tridentControllerPluginNodeSelector	Additional node selectors for pods. Refer to Understanding controller pods and node pods for details.	
tridentControllerPluginTolerations	Overrides Kubernetes tolerations for pods. Refer to Understanding controller pods and node pods for details.	
tridentNodePluginNodeSelector	Additional node selectors for pods. Refer to Understanding controller pods and node pods for details.	

Option	Description	Default
tridentNodePluginTolerations	Overrides Kubernetes tolerations for pods. Refer to Understanding controller pods and node pods for details.	
imageRegistry	Identifies the registry for the trident-operator, trident, and other images. Leave empty to accept the default. IMPORTANT: When installing Trident in a private repository, if you are using the imageRegistry switch to specify the repository location, do not use /netapp/ in the repository path.	""
imagePullPolicy	Sets the image pull policy for the trident-operator.	IfNotPresent
imagePullSecrets	Sets the image pull secrets for the trident-operator, trident, and other images.	
kubeletDir	Allows overriding the host location of kubelet's internal state.	"/var/lib/kubelet"
operatorLogLevel	Allows the log level of the Trident operator to be set to: trace, debug, info, warn, error, or fatal.	"info"
operatorDebug	Allows the log level of the Trident operator to be set to debug.	true
operatorImage	Allows the complete override of the image for trident-operator.	""
operatorImageTag	Allows overriding the tag of the trident-operator image.	""
tridentIPv6	Allows enabling Trident to work in IPv6 clusters.	false
tridentK8sTimeout	Overrides the default 30-second timeout for most Kubernetes API operations (if non-zero, in seconds).	0
tridentHttpRequestTimeout	Overrides the default 90-second timeout for the HTTP requests, with 0s being an infinite duration for the timeout. Negative values are not allowed.	"90s"
tridentSilenceAutosupport	Allows disabling Trident periodic AutoSupport reporting.	false

Option	Description	Default
tridentAutosupportImageTag	Allows overriding the tag of the image for Trident AutoSupport container.	<version>
tridentAutosupportProxy	Enables Trident AutoSupport container to phone home via an HTTP proxy.	""
tridentLogFormat	Sets the Trident logging format (text or json).	"text"
tridentDisableAuditLog	Disables Trident audit logger.	true
tridentLogLevel	Allows the log level of Trident to be set to: trace, debug, info, warn, error, or fatal.	"info"
tridentDebug	Allows the log level of Trident to be set to debug.	false
tridentLogWorkflows	Allows specific Trident workflows to be enabled for trace logging or log suppression.	""
tridentLogLayers	Allows specific Trident layers to be enabled for trace logging or log suppression.	""
tridentImage	Allows the complete override of the image for Trident.	""
tridentImageTag	Allows overriding the tag of the image for Trident.	""
tridentProbePort	Allows overriding the default port used for Kubernetes liveness/readiness probes.	""
windows	Enables Trident to be installed on Windows worker node.	false
enableForceDetach	Allows enabling the force detach feature.	false
excludePodSecurityPolicy	Excludes the operator pod security policy from creation.	false
nodePrep	Enables Trident to prepare the nodes of the Kubernetes cluster to manage volumes using the specified data storage protocol. Currently, iSCSI is the only value supported.	

Customize Trident operator installation

The Trident operator allows you to customize Trident installation using the attributes in

the `TridentOrchestrator` spec. If you want to customize the installation beyond what `TridentOrchestrator` arguments allow, consider using `tridentctl` to generate custom YAML manifests to modify as needed.

Understanding controller pods and node pods

Trident runs as a single controller pod, plus a node pod on each worker node in the cluster. The node pod must be running on any host where you want to potentially mount a Trident volume.

Kubernetes [node selectors](#) and [tolerations and taints](#) are used to constrain a pod to run on a specific or preferred node. Using the `ControllerPlugin` and NodePlugin, you can specify constraints and overrides.`

- The controller plugin handles volume provisioning and management, such as snapshots and resizing.
- The node plugin handles attaching the storage to the node.

Configuration options



`spec.namespace` is specified in `TridentOrchestrator` to signify the namespace where Trident is installed. This parameter **cannot be updated after Trident is installed**. Attempting to do so causes the `TridentOrchestrator` status to change to `Failed`. Trident is not intended to be migrated across namespaces.

This table details `TridentOrchestrator` attributes.

Parameter	Description	Default
<code>namespace</code>	Namespace to install Trident in	"default"
<code>debug</code>	Enable debugging for Trident	false
<code>enableForceDetach</code>	<p><code>ontap-san</code>, <code>ontap-san-economy</code>, and <code>ontap-nas-economy</code> only.</p> <p>Works with Kubernetes Non-Graceful Node Shutdown (NGNS) to grant cluster administrators ability to safely migrate workloads with mounted volumes to new nodes should a node become unhealthy.</p>	false
<code>windows</code>	Setting to <code>true</code> enables installation on Windows worker nodes.	false
<code>cloudProvider</code>	Set to "Azure" when using managed identities or a cloud identity on an AKS cluster. Set to "AWS" when using a cloud identity on an EKS cluster.	""
<code>cloudIdentity</code>	Set to workload identity ("azure.workload.identity/client-id: xxxxxxxx-xxxx-xxxx-xxxx-xxxxxxxxxxxx") when using cloud identity on an AKS cluster. Set to AWS IAM role ("eks.amazonaws.com/role-arn: arn:aws:iam::123456:role/trident-role") when using cloud identity on an EKS cluster.	""
<code>IPv6</code>	Install Trident over IPv6	false

Parameter	Description	Default
k8sTimeout	Timeout for Kubernetes operations	30sec
silenceAutosupport	Don't send autosupport bundles to NetApp automatically	false
autosupportImage	The container image for Autosupport Telemetry	"netapp/trident-autosupport:24.10"
autosupportProxy	The address/port of a proxy for sending Autosupport Telemetry	"http://proxy.example.com:8888"
uninstall	A flag used to uninstall Trident	false
logFormat	Trident logging format to be used [text,json]	"text"
tridentImage	Trident image to install	"netapp/trident:24.10"
imageRegistry	Path to internal registry, of the format <registry FQDN>[:port][/subpath]	"k8s.gcr.io" (Kubernetes 1.19+) or "quay.io/k8scsi"
kubeletDir	Path to the kubelet directory on the host	"/var/lib/kubelet"
wipeout	A list of resources to delete to perform a complete removal of Trident	
imagePullSecrets	Secrets to pull images from an internal registry	
imagePullPolicy	Sets the image pull policy for the the Trident operator. Valid values are: Always to always pull the image. IfNotPresent to pull the image only if it does not already exist on the node. Never to never pull the image.	IfNotPresent
controllerPluginNodeSelector	Additional node selectors for pods. Follows same format as pod.spec.nodeSelector.	No default; optional
controllerPluginTolerations	Overrides Kubernetes tolerations for pods. Follows the same format as pod.spec.Tolerations.	No default; optional
nodePluginNodeSelector	Additional node selectors for pods. Follows same format as pod.spec.nodeSelector.	No default; optional
nodePluginTolerations	Overrides Kubernetes tolerations for pods. Follows the same format as pod.spec.Tolerations.	No default; optional
nodePrep	Enables Trident to prepare the nodes of the Kubernetes cluster to manage volumes using the specified data storage protocol. Currently, iscsi is the only value supported.	



For more information on formatting pod parameters, refer to [Assigning Pods to Nodes](#).

Details about force detach

Force detach is available for `ontap-san`, `ontap-san-economy` and `onatp-nas-economy` only. Before enabling force detach, non-graceful node shutdown (NGNS) must be enabled on the Kubernetes cluster. For more information, refer to [Kubernetes: Non Graceful node shutdown](#).



When using the `ontap-nas-economy` driver, you need to set the `autoExportPolicy` parameter in the backend configuration to `true` so that Trident can restrict access from the Kubernetes node with the taint applied using managed export policies.



Because Trident relies on Kubernetes NGNS, do not remove `out-of-service` taints from an unhealthy node until all non-tolerable workloads are rescheduled. Recklessly applying or removing the taint can jeopardize backend data protection.

When the Kubernetes cluster administrator has applied the `node.kubernetes.io/out-of-service=nodeshutdown:NoExecute` taint to the node and `enableForceDetach` is set to `true`, Trident will determine the node status and:

1. Cease backend I/O access for volumes mounted to that node.
2. Mark the Trident node object as `dirty` (not safe for new publications).



The Trident controller will reject new publish volume requests until the node is re-qualified (after having been marked as `dirty`) by the Trident node pod. Any workloads scheduled with a mounted PVC (even after the cluster node is healthy and ready) will be not be accepted until Trident can verify the node `clean` (safe for new publications).

When node health is restored and the taint is removed, Trident will:

1. Identify and clean stale published paths on the node.
2. If the node is in a `cleanable` state (the out-of-service taint has been removed and the node is in `Ready` state) and all stale, published paths are clean, Trident will readmit the node as `clean` and allow new published volumes to the node.

Sample configurations

You can use the attributes in [Configuration options](#) when defining `TridentOrchestrator` to customize your installation.

Basic custom configuration

This is an example for a basic custom installation.

```
cat deploy/crds/tridentorchestrator_cr_imagepullsecrets.yaml
apiVersion: trident.netapp.io/v1
kind: TridentOrchestrator
metadata:
  name: trident
spec:
  debug: true
  namespace: trident
  imagePullSecrets:
  - thisisasecret
```

Node selectors

This example installs Trident with node selectors.

```
apiVersion: trident.netapp.io/v1
kind: TridentOrchestrator
metadata:
  name: trident
spec:
  debug: true
  namespace: trident
  controllerPluginNodeSelector:
    nodetype: master
  nodePluginNodeSelector:
    storage: netapp
```

Windows worker nodes

This example installs Trident on a Windows worker node.

```
cat deploy/crds/tridentorchestrator_cr.yaml
apiVersion: trident.netapp.io/v1
kind: TridentOrchestrator
metadata:
  name: trident
spec:
  debug: true
  namespace: trident
  windows: true
```

Managed identities on an AKS cluster

This example installs Trident to enable managed identities on an AKS cluster.

```
apiVersion: trident.netapp.io/v1
kind: TridentOrchestrator
metadata:
  name: trident
spec:
  debug: true
  namespace: trident
  cloudProvider: "Azure"
```

Cloud identity on an AKS cluster

This example installs Trident for use with a cloud identity on an AKS cluster.

```
apiVersion: trident.netapp.io/v1
kind: TridentOrchestrator
metadata:
  name: trident
spec:
  debug: true
  namespace: trident
  cloudProvider: "Azure"
  cloudIdentity: 'azure.workload.identity/client-id: xxxxxxxx-xxxx-
xxxx-xxxx-xxxxxxxxxxxxx'
```

Cloud identity on an EKS cluster

This example installs Trident for use with a cloud identity on an AKS cluster.

```
apiVersion: trident.netapp.io/v1
kind: TridentOrchestrator
metadata:
  name: trident
spec:
  debug: true
  namespace: trident
  cloudProvider: "AWS"
  cloudIdentity: "'eks.amazonaws.com/role-arn:
arn:aws:iam::123456:role/trident-role'"
```

Cloud identity for GKE

This example installs Trident for use with a cloud identity on a GKE cluster.

```
apiVersion: trident.netapp.io/v1
kind: TridentBackendConfig
metadata:
  name: backend-tbc-gcp-gcnv
spec:
  version: 1
  storageDriverName: google-cloud-netapp-volumes
  projectNumber: '012345678901'
  network: gcnv-network
  location: us-west2
  serviceLevel: Premium
  storagePool: pool-premium1
```

Install using tridentctl

Install using tridentctl

You can install Trident using `tridentctl`. This process applies to installations where the container images required by Trident are stored either in a private registry or not. To customize your `tridentctl` deployment, refer to [Customize tridentctl deployment](#).

Critical information about Trident 24.10

You must read the following critical information about Trident.

Critical information about Trident

- Kubernetes 1.27 is now supported in Trident. Upgrade Trident prior to upgrading Kubernetes.
- Trident strictly enforces the use of multipathing configuration in SAN environments, with a recommended value of `find_multipaths: no` in `multipath.conf` file.

Use of non-multipathing configuration or use of `find_multipaths: yes` or `find_multipaths: smart` value in `multipath.conf` file will result in mount failures. Trident has recommended the use of `find_multipaths: no` since the 21.07 release.

Install Trident using `tridentctl`

Review [the installation overview](#) to ensure you've met installation prerequisites and selected the correct installation option for your environment.

Before you begin

Before you begin installation, log in to the Linux host and verify it is managing a working, [supported Kubernetes cluster](#) and that you have the necessary privileges.



With OpenShift, use `oc` instead of `kubectl` in all of the examples that follow, and log in as **system:admin** first by running `oc login -u system:admin` or `oc login -u kube-admin`.

1. Verify your Kubernetes version:

```
kubectl version
```

2. Verify cluster administrator privileges:

```
kubectl auth can-i '*' '*' --all-namespaces
```

3. Verify you can launch a pod that uses an image from Docker Hub and reach your storage system over the pod network:

```
kubectl run -i --tty ping --image=busybox --restart=Never --rm -- \
ping <management IP>
```

Step 1: Download the Trident installer package

The Trident installer package creates a Trident pod, configures the CRD objects that are used to maintain its state, and initializes the CSI sidecars to perform actions such as provisioning and attaching volumes to the cluster hosts. Download and extract the latest version of the Trident installer from [the Assets section on GitHub](#). Update `<trident-installer-XX.XX.X.tar.gz>` in the example with your selected Trident version.


```
wget https://github.com/NetApp/trident/releases/download/v24.10.0/trident-
installer-24.10.0.tar.gz
tar -xf trident-installer-24.10.0.tar.gz
cd trident-installer
```

Step 2: Install Trident

Install Trident in the desired namespace by executing the `tridentctl install` command. You can add additional arguments to specify image registry location.

Standard mode

```
./tridentctl install -n trident
```

Images in one registry

```
./tridentctl install -n trident --image-registry <your-registry>
--autosupport-image <your-registry>/trident-autosupport:24.10 --trident
-image <your-registry>/trident:24.10.0
```

Images in different registries

```
./tridentctl install -n trident --image-registry <your-registry>
--autosupport-image <your-registry>/trident-autosupport:24.10 --trident
-image <your-registry>/trident:24.10.0
```

Your installation status should look something like this.

```

.....
INFO Starting Trident installation.                namespace=trident
INFO Created service account.
INFO Created cluster role.
INFO Created cluster role binding.
INFO Added finalizers to custom resource definitions.
INFO Created Trident service.
INFO Created Trident secret.
INFO Created Trident deployment.
INFO Created Trident daemonset.
INFO Waiting for Trident pod to start.
INFO Trident pod started.                        namespace=trident
pod=trident-controller-679648bd45-cv2mx
INFO Waiting for Trident REST interface.
INFO Trident REST interface is up.              version=24.10.0
INFO Trident installation succeeded.
.....

```

Verify the installation

You can verify your installation using pod creation status or `tridentctl`.

Using pod creation status

You can confirm if the Trident installation completed by reviewing the status of the created pods:

```
kubectl get pods -n trident
```

NAME	READY	STATUS	RESTARTS	AGE
trident-controller-679648bd45-cv2mx	6/6	Running	0	5m29s
trident-node-linux-vgc8n	2/2	Running	0	5m29s



If the installer does not complete successfully or `trident-controller-<generated id>` (`trident-csi-<generated id>` in versions prior to 23.01) does not have a **Running** status, the platform was not installed. Use `-d` to [turn on debug mode](#) and troubleshoot the issue.

Using `tridentctl`

You can use `tridentctl` to check the version of Trident installed.

```
./tridentctl -n trident version
```

```
+-----+-----+
| SERVER VERSION | CLIENT VERSION |
+-----+-----+
| 24.10.0        | 24.10.0        |
+-----+-----+
```

Sample configurations

The following examples provide sample configurations for installing Trident using `tridentctl`.

Windows nodes

To enable Trident to run on Windows nodes:

```
tridentctl install --windows -n trident
```

Force detach

For more information about force detach, refer to [Customize Trident operator installation](#).

```
tridentctl install --enable-force-detach=true -n trident
```

Customize tridentctl installation

You can use the Trident installer to customize installation.

Learn about the installer

The Trident installer enables you to customize attributes. For example, if you have copied the Trident image to a private repository, you can specify the image name by using `--trident-image`. If you have copied the Trident image as well as the needed CSI sidecar images to a private repository, it might be preferable to specify the location of that repository by using the `--image-registry` switch, which takes the form `<registry FQDN>[:port]`.



When installing Trident in a private repository, if you are using the `--image-registry` switch to specify the repository location, do not use `/netapp/` in the repository path. For example:

```
./tridentctl install --image-registry <image-registry> -n <namespace>
```

If you are using a distribution of Kubernetes, where `kubelet` keeps its data on a path other than the usual `/var/lib/kubelet`, you can specify the alternate path by using `--kubelet-dir`.

If you need to customize the installation beyond what the installer's arguments allow, you can also customize

the deployment files. Using the `--generate-custom-yaml` parameter creates the following YAML files in the installer's `setup` directory:

- `trident-clusterrolebinding.yaml`
- `trident-deployment.yaml`
- `trident-crds.yaml`
- `trident-clusterrole.yaml`
- `trident-daemonset.yaml`
- `trident-service.yaml`
- `trident-namespace.yaml`
- `trident-serviceaccount.yaml`
- `trident-resourcequota.yaml`

After you have generated these files, you can modify them according to your needs and then use `--use-custom-yaml` to install your custom deployment.

```
./tridentctl install -n trident --use-custom-yaml
```

Use Trident

Prepare the worker node

All worker nodes in the Kubernetes cluster must be able to mount the volumes you have provisioned for your pods. To prepare the worker nodes, you must install NFS, iSCSI, NVMe/TCP, or FC tools based on your driver selection.

Selecting the right tools

If you are using a combination of drivers, you should install all required tools for your drivers. Recent versions of RedHat CoreOS have the tools installed by default.

NFS tools

[Install the NFS tools](#) if you are using: `ontap-nas`, `ontap-nas-economy`, `ontap-nas-flexgroup`, `azure-netapp-files`, `gcp-cvs`.

iSCSI tools

[Install the iSCSI tools](#) if you are using: `ontap-san`, `ontap-san-economy`, `solidfire-san`.

NVMe tools

[Install the NVMe tools](#) if you are using `ontap-san` for nonvolatile memory express (NVMe) over TCP (NVMe/TCP) protocol.



We recommend ONTAP 9.12 or later for NVMe/TCP.

SCSI over FC tools

SCSI over Fibre Channel (FC) is a tech preview feature in the Trident 24.10 release.

[Install the iSCSI tools](#) if you are using `ontap-san` with `sanType fcp` (SCSI over FC).

Refer to [Ways to configure FC & FC-NVMe SAN hosts](#) for more information.

Node service discovery

Trident attempts to automatically detect if the node can run iSCSI or NFS services.



Node service discovery identifies discovered services but does not guarantee services are properly configured. Conversely, the absence of a discovered service does not guarantee the volume mount will fail.

Review events

Trident creates events for the node to identify the discovered services. To review these events, run:

```
kubectl get event -A --field-selector involvedObject.name=<Kubernetes node name>
```

Review discovered services

Trident identifies services enabled for each node on the Trident node CR. To view the discovered services, run:

```
tridentctl get node -o wide -n <Trident namespace>
```

NFS volumes

Install the NFS tools using the commands for your operating system. Ensure the NFS service is started up during boot time.

RHEL 8+

```
sudo yum install -y nfs-utils
```

Ubuntu

```
sudo apt-get install -y nfs-common
```



Reboot your worker nodes after installing the NFS tools to prevent failure when attaching volumes to containers.

iSCSI volumes

Trident can automatically establish an iSCSI session, scan LUNs, and discover multipath devices, format them, and mount them to a pod.

iSCSI self-healing capabilities

For ONTAP systems, Trident runs iSCSI self-healing every five minutes to:

1. **Identify** the desired iSCSI session state and the current iSCSI session state.
2. **Compare** the desired state to the current state to identify needed repairs. Trident determines repair priorities and when to preempt repairs.
3. **Perform repairs** required to return the current iSCSI session state to the desired iSCSI session state.



Logs of self-healing activity are located in the `trident-main` container on the respective Daemonset pod. To view logs, you must have set `debug` to "true" during Trident installation.

Trident iSCSI self-healing capabilities can help prevent:

- Stale or unhealthy iSCSI sessions that could occur after a network connectivity issue. In the case of a stale session, Trident waits seven minutes before logging out to reestablish the connection with a portal.



For example, if CHAP secrets were rotated on the storage controller and the network loses connectivity, the old (*stale*) CHAP secrets could persist. Self-healing can recognize this and automatically reestablish the session to apply the updated CHAP secrets.

- Missing iSCSI sessions
- Missing LUNs

Points to consider before upgrading Trident

- If only per-node igroups (introduced in 23.04+) are in use, iSCSI self-healing will initiate SCSI rescans for all devices in the SCSI bus.
- If only backend-scoped igroups (deprecated as of 23.04) are in use, iSCSI self-healing will initiate SCSI rescans for exact LUN IDs in the SCSI bus.
- If a mix of per-node igroups and backend-scoped igroups are in use, iSCSI self-healing will initiate SCSI rescans for exact LUN IDs in the SCSI bus.

Install the iSCSI tools

Install the iSCSI tools using the commands for your operating system.

Before you begin

- Each node in the Kubernetes cluster must have a unique IQN. **This is a necessary prerequisite.**
- If using RHCOS version 4.5 or later, or other RHEL-compatible Linux distribution, with the `solidfire-san` driver and Element OS 12.5 or earlier, ensure that the CHAP authentication algorithm is set to MD5 in `/etc/iscsi/iscsid.conf`. Secure FIPS-compliant CHAP algorithms SHA1, SHA-256, and SHA3-256 are available with Element 12.7.

```
sudo sed -i 's/^\(node.session.auth.chap_algs\) .*/\1 = MD5/'  
/etc/iscsi/iscsid.conf
```

- When using worker nodes that run RHEL/RedHat CoreOS with iSCSI PVs, specify the `discard` `mountOption` in the StorageClass to perform inline space reclamation. Refer to [RedHat documentation](#).

RHEL 8+

1. Install the following system packages:

```
sudo yum install -y lsscsi iscsi-initiator-utils device-mapper-  
multipath
```

2. Check that iscsi-initiator-utils version is 6.2.0.874-2.el7 or later:

```
rpm -q iscsi-initiator-utils
```

3. Enable multipathing:

```
sudo mpathconf --enable --with_multipathd y --find_multipaths n
```



Ensure `etc/multipath.conf` contains `find_multipaths no` under defaults.

4. Ensure that `iscsid` and `multipathd` are running:

```
sudo systemctl enable --now iscsid multipathd
```

5. Enable and start `iscsi`:

```
sudo systemctl enable --now iscsi
```

Ubuntu

1. Install the following system packages:

```
sudo apt-get install -y open-iscsi lsscsi sg3-utils multipath-tools  
scsitools
```

2. Check that `open-iscsi` version is 2.0.874-5ubuntu2.10 or later (for bionic) or 2.0.874-7.1ubuntu6.1 or later (for focal):

```
dpkg -l open-iscsi
```

3. Set scanning to manual:


```
sudo sed -i 's/^\(node.session.scan\).*\/\1 = manual/'
/etc/iscsi/iscsid.conf
```

4. Enable multipathing:

```
sudo tee /etc/multipath.conf <<-EOF
defaults {
    user_friendly_names yes
    find_multipaths no
}
EOF
sudo systemctl enable --now multipath-tools.service
sudo service multipath-tools restart
```



Ensure `etc/multipath.conf` contains `find_multipaths no` under `defaults`.

5. Ensure that `open-iscsi` and `multipath-tools` are enabled and running:

```
sudo systemctl status multipath-tools
sudo systemctl enable --now open-iscsi.service
sudo systemctl status open-iscsi
```



For Ubuntu 18.04, you must discover target ports with `iscsiadm` before starting `open-iscsi` for the iSCSI daemon to start. You can alternatively modify the `iscsi` service to start `iscsid` automatically.

Configure or disable iSCSI self healing

You can configure the following Trident iSCSI self-healing settings to fix stale sessions:

- **iSCSI self-healing interval:** Determines the frequency at which iSCSI self-healing is invoked (default: 5 minutes). You can configure it to run more frequently by setting a smaller number or less frequently by setting a larger number.



Setting the iSCSI self-healing interval to 0 stops iSCSI self-healing completely. We do not recommend disabling iSCSI Self-healing; it should only be disabled in certain scenarios when iSCSI self-healing is not working as intended or for debugging purposes.

- **iSCSI Self-Healing Wait Time:** Determines the duration iSCSI self-healing waits before logging out of an unhealthy session and trying to log in again (default: 7 minutes). You can configure it to a larger number so that sessions that are identified as unhealthy have to wait longer before being logged out and then an attempt is made to log back in, or a smaller number to log out and log in earlier.

Helm

To configure or change iSCSI self-healing settings, pass the `iscsiSelfHealingInterval` and `iscsiSelfHealingWaitTime` parameters during the helm installation or helm update.

The following example sets the iSCSI self-healing interval to 3 minutes and self-healing wait time to 6 minutes:

```
helm install trident trident-operator-100.2410.0.tgz --set
iscsiSelfHealingInterval=3m0s --set iscsiSelfHealingWaitTime=6m0s -n
trident
```

tridentctl

To configure or change iSCSI self-healing settings, pass the `iscsi-self-healing-interval` and `iscsi-self-healing-wait-time` parameters during the tridentctl installation or update.

The following example sets the iSCSI self-healing interval to 3 minutes and self-healing wait time to 6 minutes:

```
tridentctl install --iscsi-self-healing-interval=3m0s --iscsi-self
-healing-wait-time=6m0s -n trident
```

NVMe/TCP volumes

Install the NVMe tools using the commands for your operating system.



- NVMe requires RHEL 9 or later.
- If the kernel version of your Kubernetes node is too old or if the NVMe package is not available for your kernel version, you might have to update the kernel version of your node to one with the NVMe package.

RHEL 9

```
sudo yum install nvme-cli
sudo yum install linux-modules-extra-$(uname -r)
sudo modprobe nvme-tcp
```

Ubuntu

```
sudo apt install nvme-cli
sudo apt -y install linux-modules-extra-$(uname -r)
sudo modprobe nvme-tcp
```

Verify installation

After installation, verify that each node in the Kubernetes cluster has a unique NQN using the command:

```
cat /etc/nvme/hostnqn
```



Trident modifies the `ctrl_device_tmo` value to ensure NVMe doesn't give up on the path if it goes down. Do not change this setting.

Fibre Channel (FC) support

You can now use the Fibre Channel (FC) protocol with Trident to provision and manage storage resources on ONTAP system.

SCSI over Fibre Channel (FC) is a tech preview feature in the Trident 24.10 release.

Fibre Channel is a widely adopted protocol in enterprise storage environments due to its high performance, reliability, and scalability. It provides a robust and efficient communication channel for storage devices, enabling fast and secure data transfers.

By using SCSI over Fibre Channel, you can leverage their existing SCSI-based storage infrastructure while benefiting from the high-performance and long-distance capabilities of Fibre Channel. It enables the consolidation of storage resources and the creation of scalable and efficient storage area networks (SANs) that can handle large amounts of data with low latency.

Using the FC feature with Trident, you can do the following:

- Dynamically provision PVCs using a deployment spec.
- Take volume snapshots and create a new volume from the snapshot.
- Clone an existing FC-PVC.
- Resize an already deployed volume.

Prerequisites

Configure the required network and node settings for FC.

Network settings

1. Get the WWPN of the target interfaces. Refer to [network interface show](#) for more information.
2. Get the WWPN for the interfaces on initiator (Host).

Refer to the corresponding host operating system utilities.

3. Configure zoning on the FC switch using WWPNs of the Host and target.

Refer to the respective switch vendor documentation for information.

Refer to the following ONTAP documentation for details:

- [Fibre Channel and FCoE zoning overview](#)
- [Ways to configure FC & FC-NVMe SAN hosts](#)

Prepare the worker node

All worker nodes in the Kubernetes cluster must be able to mount the volumes you have provisioned for your pods. To prepare the worker nodes for FC, you must install the required tools.

Install the FC tools

Install the FC tools using the commands for your operating system.

- When using worker nodes that run RHEL/RedHat CoreOS with iSCSI PVs, specify the `discard` `mountOption` in the `StorageClass` to perform inline space reclamation. Refer to [RedHat documentation](#).

RHEL 8+

1. Install the following system packages:

```
sudo yum install -y lsscsi iscsi-initiator-utils device-mapper-  
multipath
```

2. Check that iscsi-initiator-utils version is 6.2.0.874-2.el7 or later:

```
rpm -q iscsi-initiator-utils
```

3. Enable multipathing:

```
sudo mpathconf --enable --with_multipathd y --find_multipaths n
```



Ensure `etc/multipath.conf` contains `find_multipaths no` under defaults.

4. Ensure that `iscsid` and `multipathd` are running:

```
sudo systemctl enable --now iscsid multipathd
```

5. Enable and start `iscsi`:

```
sudo systemctl enable --now iscsi
```

Ubuntu

1. Install the following system packages:

```
sudo apt-get install -y open-iscsi lsscsi sg3-utils multipath-tools  
scsitools
```

2. Check that `open-iscsi` version is 2.0.874-5ubuntu2.10 or later (for bionic) or 2.0.874-7.1ubuntu6.1 or later (for focal):

```
dpkg -l open-iscsi
```

3. Set scanning to manual:

```
sudo sed -i 's/^\(node.session.scan\).*\/\1 = manual/'
/etc/iscsi/iscsid.conf
```

4. Enable multipathing:

```
sudo tee /etc/multipath.conf <<-EOF
defaults {
    user_friendly_names yes
    find_multipaths no
}
EOF
sudo systemctl enable --now multipath-tools.service
sudo service multipath-tools restart
```



Ensure `etc/multipath.conf` contains `find_multipaths no` under `defaults`.

5. Ensure that `open-iscsi` and `multipath-tools` are enabled and running:

```
sudo systemctl status multipath-tools
sudo systemctl enable --now open-iscsi.service
sudo systemctl status open-iscsi
```



For Ubuntu 18.04, you must discover target ports with `iscsiadm` before starting `open-iscsi` for the iSCSI daemon to start. You can alternatively modify the `iscsi` service to start `iscsid` automatically.

Create a backend configuration

Create a Trident backend for `ontap-san` driver and `fc` as the `sanType`.

Refer to:

- [Prepare to configure backend with ONTAP SAN drivers](#)
- [ONTAP SAN configuration options and examples](#)

Backend configuration example with FC

```
apiVersion: trident.netapp.io/v1
kind: TridentBackendConfig
metadata:
  name: backend-tbc-ontap-san
spec:
  version: 1
  backendName: ontap-san-backend
  storageDriverName: ontap-san
  managementLIF: 10.0.0.1
  sanType: fcp
  svm: trident_svm
  credentials:
    name: backend-tbc-ontap-san-secret
```

Create a storage class

For more information, refer to:

- [Storage configuration options](#)

Storage class example

```
apiVersion: storage.k8s.io/v1
kind: StorageClass
metadata:
  name: fcp-sc
provisioner: csi.trident.netapp.io
parameters:
  backendType: "ontap-san"
  protocol: "fcp"
  storagePool: "aggr1"
allowVolumeExpansion: True
```

Configure and manage backends

Configure backends

A backend defines the relationship between Trident and a storage system. It tells Trident how to communicate with that storage system and how Trident should provision volumes from it.

Trident automatically offers up storage pools from backends that match the requirements defined by a storage class. Learn how to configure the backend for your storage system.

- [Configure an Azure NetApp Files backend](#)

- [Configure a Cloud Volumes Service for Google Cloud Platform backend](#)
- [Configure a NetApp HCI or SolidFire backend](#)
- [Configure a backend with ONTAP or Cloud Volumes ONTAP NAS drivers](#)
- [Configure a backend with ONTAP or Cloud Volumes ONTAP SAN drivers](#)
- [Use Trident with Amazon FSx for NetApp ONTAP](#)

Azure NetApp Files

Configure an Azure NetApp Files backend

You can configure Azure NetApp Files as the backend for Trident. You can attach NFS and SMB volumes using an Azure NetApp Files backend. Trident also supports credential management using managed identities for Azure Kubernetes Services (AKS) clusters.

Azure NetApp Files driver details

Trident provides the following Azure NetApp Files storage drivers to communicate with the cluster. Supported access modes are: *ReadWriteOnce* (RWO), *ReadOnlyMany* (ROX), *ReadWriteMany* (RWX), *ReadWriteOncePod* (RWOP).

Driver	Protocol	volumeMode	Access modes supported	File systems supported
azure-netapp-files	NFS SMB	Filesystem	RWO, ROX, RWX, RWOP	nfs, smb

Considerations

- The Azure NetApp Files service does not support volumes smaller than 50 GiB. Trident automatically creates 50-GiB volumes if a smaller volume is requested.
- Trident supports SMB volumes mounted to pods running on Windows nodes only.

Managed identities for AKS

Trident supports [managed identities](#) for Azure Kubernetes Services clusters. To take advantage of streamlined credential management offered by managed identities, you must have:

- A Kubernetes cluster deployed using AKS
- Managed identities configured on the AKS kubernetes cluster
- Trident installed that includes the `cloudProvider` to specify "Azure".

Trident operator

To install Trident using the Trident operator, edit `tridentorchestrator_cr.yaml` to set `cloudProvider` to "Azure". For example:

```
apiVersion: trident.netapp.io/v1
kind: TridentOrchestrator
metadata:
  name: trident
spec:
  debug: true
  namespace: trident
  imagePullPolicy: IfNotPresent
  cloudProvider: "Azure"
```

Helm

The following example installs Trident sets `cloudProvider` to Azure using the environment variable `$CP`:

```
helm install trident trident-operator-100.2410.0.tgz --create
--namespace --namespace <trident-namespace> --set cloudProvider=$CP
```

`tridentctl`

The following example installs Trident and sets the `cloudProvider` flag to Azure:

```
tridentctl install --cloud-provider="Azure" -n trident
```

Cloud identity for AKS

Cloud identity enables Kubernetes pods to access Azure resources by authenticating as a workload identity instead of by providing explicit Azure credentials.

To take advantage of cloud identity in Azure, you must have:

- A Kubernetes cluster deployed using AKS
- Workload identity and `oidc-issuer` configured on the AKS Kubernetes cluster
- Trident installed that includes the `cloudProvider` to specify "Azure" and `cloudIdentity` specifying workload identity

Trident operator

To install Trident using the Trident operator, edit `tridentorchestrator_cr.yaml` to set `cloudProvider` to "Azure" and set `cloudIdentity` to `azure.workload.identity/client-id: xxxxxxxx-xxxx-xxxx-xxxx-xxxxxxxxxxxx`.

For example:

```
apiVersion: trident.netapp.io/v1
kind: TridentOrchestrator
metadata:
  name: trident
spec:
  debug: true
  namespace: trident
  imagePullPolicy: IfNotPresent
  cloudProvider: "Azure"
  *cloudIdentity: 'azure.workload.identity/client-id: xxxxxxxx-xxxx-
xxxx-xxxx-xxxxxxxxxxxx' *
```

Helm

Set the values for **cloud-provider (CP)** and **cloud-identity (CI)** flags using the following environment variables:

```
export CP="Azure"
export CI="'azure.workload.identity/client-id: xxxxxxxx-xxxx-xxxx-xxxx-
xxxxxxxxxxxx' "
```

The following example installs Trident and sets `cloudProvider` to Azure using the environment variable `$CP` and sets the `cloudIdentity` using the environment variable `$CI`:

```
helm install trident trident-operator-100.2410.0.tgz --set
cloudProvider=$CP --set cloudIdentity="$CI"
```

`tridentctl`

Set the values for **cloud provider** and **cloud identity** flags using the following environment variables:

```
export CP="Azure"
export CI="azure.workload.identity/client-id: xxxxxxxx-xxxx-xxxx-xxxx-
xxxxxxxxxxxx"
```

The following example installs Trident and sets the `cloud-provider` flag to `$CP`, and `cloud-identity` to `$CI`:

```
tridentctl install --cloud-provider=$CP --cloud-identity="$CI" -n
trident
```

Prepare to configure an Azure NetApp Files backend

Before you can configure your Azure NetApp Files backend, you need to ensure the following requirements are met.

Prerequisites for NFS and SMB volumes

If you are using Azure NetApp Files for the first time or in a new location, some initial configuration is required to set up Azure NetApp files and create an NFS volume. Refer to [Azure: Set up Azure NetApp Files and create an NFS volume](#).

To configure and use an [Azure NetApp Files](#) backend, you need the following:



- `subscriptionID`, `tenantID`, `clientID`, `location`, and `clientSecret` are optional when using managed identities on an AKS cluster.
- `tenantID`, `clientID`, and `clientSecret` are optional when using a cloud identity on an AKS cluster.

- A capacity pool. Refer to [Microsoft: Create a capacity pool for Azure NetApp Files](#).
- A subnet delegated to Azure NetApp Files. Refer to [Microsoft: Delegate a subnet to Azure NetApp Files](#).
- `subscriptionID` from an Azure subscription with Azure NetApp Files enabled.
- `tenantID`, `clientID`, and `clientSecret` from an [App Registration](#) in Azure Active Directory with sufficient permissions to the Azure NetApp Files service. The App Registration should use either:
 - The Owner or Contributor role [predefined by Azure](#).
 - A [custom Contributor role](#) at the subscription level (`assignableScopes`) with the following permissions that are limited to only what Trident requires. After creating the custom role, [assign the role using the Azure portal](#).

Custom contributor role

```
{
  "id": "/subscriptions/<subscription-
id>/providers/Microsoft.Authorization/roleDefinitions/<role-
definition-id>",
  "properties": {
    "roleName": "custom-role-with-limited-perms",
    "description": "custom role providing limited
permissions",
    "assignableScopes": [
      "/subscriptions/<subscription-id>"
    ],
    "permissions": [
      {
        "actions": [
          "Microsoft.NetApp/netAppAccounts/capacityPools/read",
          "Microsoft.NetApp/netAppAccounts/capacityPools/write",
          "Microsoft.NetApp/netAppAccounts/capacityPools/volumes/read",
          "Microsoft.NetApp/netAppAccounts/capacityPools/volumes/write",
          "Microsoft.NetApp/netAppAccounts/capacityPools/volumes/delete",
          "Microsoft.NetApp/netAppAccounts/capacityPools/volumes/snapshots/
read",
          "Microsoft.NetApp/netAppAccounts/capacityPools/volumes/snapshots/
write",
          "Microsoft.NetApp/netAppAccounts/capacityPools/volumes/snapshots/
delete",
          "Microsoft.NetApp/netAppAccounts/capacityPools/volumes/MountTarge
ts/read",
          "Microsoft.Network/virtualNetworks/read",
          "Microsoft.Network/virtualNetworks/subnets/read",
          "Microsoft.Features/featureProviders/subscriptionFeatureRegistrat
ions/read",
          "Microsoft.Features/featureProviders/subscriptionFeatureRegistrat
```

```

ions/write",

"Microsoft.Features/featureProviders/subscriptionFeatureRegistrat
ions/delete",
        "Microsoft.Features/features/read",
        "Microsoft.Features/operations/read",
        "Microsoft.Features/providers/features/read",

"Microsoft.Features/providers/features/register/action",

"Microsoft.Features/providers/features/unregister/action",

"Microsoft.Features/subscriptionFeatureRegistrations/read"
    ],
    "notActions": [],
    "dataActions": [],
    "notDataActions": []
  }
]
}
}

```

- The Azure location that contains at least one [delegated subnet](#). As of Trident 22.01, the location parameter is a required field at the top level of the backend configuration file. Location values specified in virtual pools are ignored.
- To use Cloud Identity, get the client ID from a [user-assigned managed identity](#) and specify that ID in `azure.workload.identity/client-id: xxxxxxxx-xxxx-xxxx-xxxx-xxxxxxxxxxxx`.

Additional requirements for SMB volumes

To create an SMB volume, you must have:

- Active Directory configured and connected to Azure NetApp Files. Refer to [Microsoft: Create and manage Active Directory connections for Azure NetApp Files](#).
- A Kubernetes cluster with a Linux controller node and at least one Windows worker node running Windows Server 2022. Trident supports SMB volumes mounted to pods running on Windows nodes only.
- At least one Trident secret containing your Active Directory credentials so Azure NetApp Files can authenticate to Active Directory. To generate secret `smbcreds`:

```
kubectl create secret generic smbcreds --from-literal username=user
--from-literal password='password'
```

- A CSI proxy configured as a Windows service. To configure a `csi-proxy`, refer to [GitHub: CSI Proxy](#) or [GitHub: CSI Proxy for Windows](#) for Kubernetes nodes running on Windows.

Azure NetApp Files backend configuration options and examples

Learn about NFS and SMB backend configuration options for Azure NetApp Files and review configuration examples.

Backend configuration options

Trident uses your backend configuration (subnet, virtual network, service level, and location), to create Azure NetApp Files volumes on capacity pools that are available in the requested location and match the requested service level and subnet.



Trident does not support Manual QoS capacity pools.

Azure NetApp Files backends provide these configuration options.

Parameter	Description	Default
version		Always 1
storageDriverName	Name of the storage driver	"azure-netapp-files"
backendName	Custom name of the storage backend	Driver name + "_" + random characters
subscriptionID	The subscription ID from your Azure subscription Optional when managed identities is enabled on an AKS cluster.	
tenantID	The tenant ID from an App Registration Optional when managed identities or cloud identity is used on an AKS cluster.	
clientID	The client ID from an App Registration Optional when managed identities or cloud identity is used on an AKS cluster.	
clientSecret	The client secret from an App Registration Optional when managed identities or cloud identity is used on an AKS cluster.	
serviceLevel	One of Standard, Premium, or Ultra	"" (random)

Parameter	Description	Default
location	Name of the Azure location where the new volumes will be created Optional when managed identities is enabled on an AKS cluster.	
resourceGroups	List of resource groups for filtering discovered resources	[] (no filter)
netappAccounts	List of NetApp accounts for filtering discovered resources	[] (no filter)
capacityPools	List of capacity pools for filtering discovered resources	[] (no filter, random)
virtualNetwork	Name of a virtual network with a delegated subnet	""
subnet	Name of a subnet delegated to Microsoft.Netapp/volumes	""
networkFeatures	Set of VNet features for a volume, may be Basic or Standard. Network Features is not available in all regions and might have to be enabled in a subscription. Specifying networkFeatures when the functionality is not enabled causes volume provisioning to fail.	""
nfsMountOptions	Fine-grained control of NFS mount options. Ignored for SMB volumes. To mount volumes using NFS version 4.1, include nfsvers=4 in the comma-delimited mount options list to choose NFS v4.1. Mount options set in a storage class definition override mount options set in backend configuration.	"nfsvers=3"
limitVolumeSize	Fail provisioning if the requested volume size is above this value	"" (not enforced by default)

Parameter	Description	Default
debugTraceFlags	Debug flags to use when troubleshooting. Example, <code>\{"api": false, "method": true, "discovery": true\}</code> . Do not use this unless you are troubleshooting and require a detailed log dump.	null
nasType	Configure NFS or SMB volumes creation. Options are <code>nfs</code> , <code>smb</code> or <code>null</code> . Setting to <code>null</code> defaults to NFS volumes.	<code>nfs</code>
supportedTopologies	Represents a list of regions and zones that are supported by this backend. For more information, refer to Use CSI Topology .	



For more information on Network Features, refer to [Configure network features for an Azure NetApp Files volume](#).

Required permissions and resources

If you receive a “No capacity pools found” error when creating a PVC, it is likely your app registration doesn’t have the required permissions and resources (subnet, virtual network, capacity pool) associated. If debug is enabled, Trident will log the Azure resources discovered when the backend is created. Verify an appropriate role is being used.

The values for `resourceGroups`, `netappAccounts`, `capacityPools`, `virtualNetwork`, and `subnet` can be specified using short or fully-qualified names. Fully-qualified names are recommended in most situations as short names can match multiple resources with the same name.

The `resourceGroups`, `netappAccounts`, and `capacityPools` values are filters that restrict the set of discovered resources to those available to this storage backend and may be specified in any combination. Fully-qualified names follow this format:

Type	Format
Resource group	<code><resource group></code>
NetApp account	<code><resource group>/<netapp account></code>
Capacity pool	<code><resource group>/<netapp account>/<capacity pool></code>
Virtual network	<code><resource group>/<virtual network></code>
Subnet	<code><resource group>/<virtual network>/<subnet></code>

Volume provisioning

You can control default volume provisioning by specifying the following options in a special section of the configuration file. Refer to [Example configurations](#) for details.

Parameter	Description	Default
<code>exportRule</code>	Export rules for new volumes. <code>exportRule</code> must be a comma-separated list of any combination of IPv4 addresses or IPv4 subnets in CIDR notation. Ignored for SMB volumes.	"0.0.0.0/0"
<code>snapshotDir</code>	Controls visibility of the <code>.snapshot</code> directory	"true" for NFSv4 "false" for NFSv3
<code>size</code>	The default size of new volumes	"100G"
<code>unixPermissions</code>	The unix permissions of new volumes (4 octal digits). Ignored for SMB volumes.	"" (preview feature, requires whitelisting in subscription)

Example configurations

The following examples show basic configurations that leave most parameters to default. This is the easiest way to define a backend.

Minimal configuration

This is the absolute minimum backend configuration. With this configuration, Trident discovers all of your NetApp accounts, capacity pools, and subnets delegated to Azure NetApp Files in the configured location, and places new volumes on one of those pools and subnets randomly. Because `nasType` is omitted, the `nfs` default applies and the backend will provision for NFS volumes.

This configuration is ideal when you are just getting started with Azure NetApp Files and trying things out, but in practice you are going to want to provide additional scoping for the volumes you provision.

```
---
apiVersion: trident.netapp.io/v1
kind: TridentBackendConfig
metadata:
  name: backend-tbc-anf-1
  namespace: trident
spec:
  version: 1
  storageDriverName: azure-netapp-files
  subscriptionID: 9f87c765-4774-fake-ae98-a721add45451
  tenantID: 68e4f836-edc1-fake-bff9-b2d865ee56cf
  clientID: dd043f63-bf8e-fake-8076-8de91e5713aa
  clientSecret: SECRET
  location: eastus
```

Managed identities for AKS

This backend configuration omits `subscriptionID`, `tenantID`, `clientID`, and `clientSecret`, which are optional when using managed identities.

```
apiVersion: trident.netapp.io/v1
kind: TridentBackendConfig
metadata:
  name: backend-tbc-anf-1
  namespace: trident
spec:
  version: 1
  storageDriverName: azure-netapp-files
  capacityPools: ["ultra-pool"]
  resourceGroups: ["aks-ami-eastus-rg"]
  netappAccounts: ["smb-na"]
  virtualNetwork: eastus-prod-vnet
  subnet: eastus-anf-subnet
```

Cloud identity for AKS

This backend configuration omits `tenantID`, `clientID`, and `clientSecret`, which are optional when using a cloud identity.

```
apiVersion: trident.netapp.io/v1
kind: TridentBackendConfig
metadata:
  name: backend-tbc-anf-1
  namespace: trident
spec:
  version: 1
  storageDriverName: azure-netapp-files
  capacityPools: ["ultra-pool"]
  resourceGroups: ["aks-ami-eastus-rg"]
  netappAccounts: ["smb-na"]
  virtualNetwork: eastus-prod-vnet
  subnet: eastus-anf-subnet
  location: eastus
  subscriptionID: 9f87c765-4774-fake-ae98-a721add45451
```

Specific service level configuration with capacity pool filters

This backend configuration places volumes in Azure's `eastus` location in an `Ultra` capacity pool. Trident automatically discovers all of the subnets delegated to Azure NetApp Files in that location and places a new volume on one of them randomly.

```
---
version: 1
storageDriverName: azure-netapp-files
subscriptionID: 9f87c765-4774-fake-ae98-a721add45451
tenantID: 68e4f836-edc1-fake-bff9-b2d865ee56cf
clientID: dd043f63-bf8e-fake-8076-8de91e5713aa
clientSecret: SECRET
location: eastus
serviceLevel: Ultra
capacityPools:
- application-group-1/account-1/ultra-1
- application-group-1/account-1/ultra-2
```

Advanced configuration

This backend configuration further reduces the scope of volume placement to a single subnet, and also modifies some volume provisioning defaults.

```
---
version: 1
storageDriverName: azure-netapp-files
subscriptionID: 9f87c765-4774-fake-ae98-a721add45451
tenantID: 68e4f836-edc1-fake-bff9-b2d865ee56cf
clientID: dd043f63-bf8e-fake-8076-8de91e5713aa
clientSecret: SECRET
location: eastus
serviceLevel: Ultra
capacityPools:
- application-group-1/account-1/ultra-1
- application-group-1/account-1/ultra-2
virtualNetwork: my-virtual-network
subnet: my-subnet
networkFeatures: Standard
nfsMountOptions: vers=3,proto=tcp,timeo=600
limitVolumeSize: 500Gi
defaults:
  exportRule: 10.0.0.0/24,10.0.1.0/24,10.0.2.100
  snapshotDir: 'true'
  size: 200Gi
  unixPermissions: '0777'
```

Virtual pool configuration

This backend configuration defines multiple storage pools in a single file. This is useful when you have multiple capacity pools supporting different service levels and you want to create storage classes in Kubernetes that represent those. Virtual pool labels were used to differentiate the pools based on performance.

```
---
version: 1
storageDriverName: azure-netapp-files
subscriptionID: 9f87c765-4774-fake-ae98-a721add45451
tenantID: 68e4f836-edc1-fake-bff9-b2d865ee56cf
clientID: dd043f63-bf8e-fake-8076-8de91e5713aa
clientSecret: SECRET
location: eastus
resourceGroups:
- application-group-1
networkFeatures: Basic
nfsMountOptions: vers=3,proto=tcp,timeo=600
labels:
  cloud: azure
storage:
- labels:
  performance: gold
  serviceLevel: Ultra
  capacityPools:
  - ultra-1
  - ultra-2
  networkFeatures: Standard
- labels:
  performance: silver
  serviceLevel: Premium
  capacityPools:
  - premium-1
- labels:
  performance: bronze
  serviceLevel: Standard
  capacityPools:
  - standard-1
  - standard-2
```

Supported topologies configuration

Trident facilitates provisioning of volumes for workloads based on regions and availability zones. The `supportedTopologies` block in this backend configuration is used to provide a list of regions and zones per backend. The region and zone values specified here must match the region and zone values from the labels on each Kubernetes cluster node. These regions and zones represent the list of permissible values that can be provided in a storage class. For storage classes that contain a subset of the regions and zones provided in a backend, Trident creates volumes in the mentioned region and zone. For more information, refer to [Use CSI Topology](#).

```
---
version: 1
storageDriverName: azure-netapp-files
subscriptionID: 9f87c765-4774-fake-ae98-a721add45451
tenantID: 68e4f836-edc1-fake-bff9-b2d865ee56cf
clientID: dd043f63-bf8e-fake-8076-8de91e5713aa
clientSecret: SECRET
location: eastus
serviceLevel: Ultra
capacityPools:
- application-group-1/account-1/ultra-1
- application-group-1/account-1/ultra-2
supportedTopologies:
- topology.kubernetes.io/region: eastus
  topology.kubernetes.io/zone: eastus-1
- topology.kubernetes.io/region: eastus
  topology.kubernetes.io/zone: eastus-2
```

Storage class definitions

The following `StorageClass` definitions refer to the storage pools above.

Example definitions using `parameter.selector` field

Using `parameter.selector` you can specify for each `StorageClass` the virtual pool that is used to host a volume. The volume will have the aspects defined in the chosen pool.

```

apiVersion: storage.k8s.io/v1
kind: StorageClass
metadata:
  name: gold
provisioner: csi.trident.netapp.io
parameters:
  selector: "performance=gold"
allowVolumeExpansion: true
---
apiVersion: storage.k8s.io/v1
kind: StorageClass
metadata:
  name: silver
provisioner: csi.trident.netapp.io
parameters:
  selector: "performance=silver"
allowVolumeExpansion: true
---
apiVersion: storage.k8s.io/v1
kind: StorageClass
metadata:
  name: bronze
provisioner: csi.trident.netapp.io
parameters:
  selector: "performance=bronze"
allowVolumeExpansion: true

```

Example definitions for SMB volumes

Using `nasType`, `node-stage-secret-name`, and `node-stage-secret-namespace`, you can specify an SMB volume and provide the required Active Directory credentials.

Basic configuration on default namespace

```
apiVersion: storage.k8s.io/v1
kind: StorageClass
metadata:
  name: anf-sc-smb
provisioner: csi.trident.netapp.io
parameters:
  backendType: "azure-netapp-files"
  trident.netapp.io/nasType: "smb"
  csi.storage.k8s.io/node-stage-secret-name: "smbcreds"
  csi.storage.k8s.io/node-stage-secret-namespace: "default"
```

Using different secrets per namespace

```
apiVersion: storage.k8s.io/v1
kind: StorageClass
metadata:
  name: anf-sc-smb
provisioner: csi.trident.netapp.io
parameters:
  backendType: "azure-netapp-files"
  trident.netapp.io/nasType: "smb"
  csi.storage.k8s.io/node-stage-secret-name: "smbcreds"
  csi.storage.k8s.io/node-stage-secret-namespace: ${pvc.namespace}
```

Using different secrets per volume

```
apiVersion: storage.k8s.io/v1
kind: StorageClass
metadata:
  name: anf-sc-smb
provisioner: csi.trident.netapp.io
parameters:
  backendType: "azure-netapp-files"
  trident.netapp.io/nasType: "smb"
  csi.storage.k8s.io/node-stage-secret-name: ${pvc.name}
  csi.storage.k8s.io/node-stage-secret-namespace: ${pvc.namespace}
```




`nasType: smb` filters for pools which support SMB volumes. `nasType: nfs` or `nasType: null` filters for NFS pools.

Create the backend

After you create the backend configuration file, run the following command:

```
tridentctl create backend -f <backend-file>
```

If the backend creation fails, something is wrong with the backend configuration. You can view the logs to determine the cause by running the following command:

```
tridentctl logs
```

After you identify and correct the problem with the configuration file, you can run the create command again.

Google Cloud NetApp Volumes

Configure a Google Cloud NetApp Volumes backend

You can now configure Google Cloud NetApp Volumes as the backend for Trident. You can attach NFS volumes using a Google Cloud NetApp Volumes backend.

Google Cloud NetApp Volumes driver details

Trident provides the `google-cloud-netapp-volumes` driver to communicate with the cluster. Supported access modes are: *ReadWriteOnce* (RWO), *ReadOnlyMany* (ROX), *ReadWriteMany* (RWX), *ReadWriteOncePod* (RWOP).

Driver	Protocol	volumeMode	Access modes supported	File systems supported
<code>google-cloud-netapp-volumes</code>	NFS	Filesystem	RWO, ROX, RWX, RWOP	<code>nfs</code>

Cloud identity for GKE

Cloud identity enables Kubernetes pods to access Google Cloud resources by authenticating as a workload identity instead of by providing explicit Google Cloud credentials.

To take advantage of cloud identity in Google Cloud, you must have:

- A Kubernetes cluster deployed using GKE.
- Workload identity and `oidc-issuer` configured on the GKE cluster.
- Trident installed that includes the `cloudProvider` to specify "GCP" and `cloudIdentity` specifying workload identity.

Trident operator

To install Trident using the Trident operator, edit `tridentorchestrator_cr.yaml` to set `cloudProvider` to "GCP" and set `cloudIdentity` to `iam.gke.io/gcp-service-account: cloudvolumes-admin-sa@mygcpproject.iam.gserviceaccount.com`.

For example:

```
apiVersion: trident.netapp.io/v1
kind: TridentOrchestrator
metadata:
  name: trident
spec:
  debug: true
  namespace: trident
  imagePullPolicy: IfNotPresent
  cloudProvider: "GCP"
  cloudIdentity: 'iam.gke.io/gcp-service-account: cloudvolumes-
admin-sa@mygcpproject.iam.gserviceaccount.com'
```

Helm

Set the values for **cloud-provider (CP)** and **cloud-identity (CI)** flags using the following environment variables:

```
export CP="GCP"
export ANNOTATION="iam.gke.io/gcp-service-account: cloudvolumes-admin-
sa@mygcpproject.iam.gserviceaccount.com"
```

The following example installs Trident and sets `cloudProvider` to GCP using the environment variable `$CP` and sets the `cloudIdentity` using the environment variable `$ANNOTATION`:

```
helm install trident trident-operator-100.2406.0.tgz --set
cloudProvider=$CP --set cloudIdentity="$ANNOTATION"
```

`tridentctl`

Set the values for **cloud provider** and **cloud identity** flags using the following environment variables:

```
export CP="GCP"
export ANNOTATION="iam.gke.io/gcp-service-account: cloudvolumes-admin-
sa@mygcpproject.iam.gserviceaccount.com"
```

The following example installs Trident and sets the `cloud-provider` flag to `$CP`, and `cloud-identity` to `$ANNOTATION`:

```
tridentctl install --cloud-provider=$CP --cloud
-identity="$ANNOTATION" -n trident
```

Prepare to configure a Google Cloud NetApp Volumes backend

Before you can configure your Google Cloud NetApp Volumes backend, you need to ensure the following requirements are met.

Prerequisites for NFS volumes

If you are using Google Cloud NetApp Volumes for the first time or in a new location, some initial configuration is required to set up Google Cloud NetApp Volumes and create an NFS volume. Refer to [Before you begin](#).

Ensure that you have the following before configuring Google Cloud NetApp Volumes backend:

- A Google Cloud account configured with Google Cloud NetApp Volumes service. Refer to [Google Cloud NetApp Volumes](#).
- Project number of your Google Cloud account. Refer to [Identifying projects](#).
- A Google Cloud service account with the NetApp Volumes Admin (`netappcloudvolumes.admin`) role. Refer to [Identity and Access Management roles and permissions](#).
- API key file for your GCNV account. Refer to [Create a service account key](#)
- A storage pool. Refer to [Storage pools overview](#) .

For more information about how to set up access to Google Cloud NetApp Volumes, refer to [Set up access to Google Cloud NetApp Volumes](#).

Google Cloud NetApp Volumes backend configuration options and examples

Learn about NFS backend configuration options for Google Cloud NetApp Volumes and review configuration examples.

Backend configuration options

Each backend provisions volumes in a single Google Cloud region. To create volumes in other regions, you can define additional backends.

Parameter	Description	Default
version		Always 1
storageDriverName	Name of the storage driver	The value of <code>storageDriverName</code> must be specified as "google-cloud-netapp-volumes".
backendName	(Optional) Custom name of the storage backend	Driver name + "_" + part of API key

Parameter	Description	Default
storagePools	Optional parameter used to specify storage pools for volume creation.	
projectNumber	Google Cloud account project number. The value is found on the Google Cloud portal home page.	
location	The Google Cloud location where Trident creates GCNV volumes. When creating cross-region Kubernetes clusters, volumes created in a <code>location</code> can be used in workloads scheduled on nodes across multiple Google Cloud regions. Cross-region traffic incurs an additional cost.	
apiKey	API key for the Google Cloud service account with the <code>netappcloudvolumes.admin</code> role. It includes the JSON-formatted contents of a Google Cloud service account's private key file (copied verbatim into the backend configuration file). The <code>apiKey</code> must include key-value pairs for the following keys: <code>type</code> , <code>project_id</code> , <code>client_email</code> , <code>client_id</code> , <code>auth_uri</code> , <code>token_uri</code> , <code>auth_provider_x509_cert_url</code> , and <code>client_x509_cert_url</code> .	
nfsMountOptions	Fine-grained control of NFS mount options.	"nfsvers=3"
limitVolumeSize	Fail provisioning if the requested volume size is above this value.	"" (not enforced by default)
serviceLevel	The service level of a storage pool and its volumes. The values are <code>flex</code> , <code>standard</code> , <code>premium</code> , or <code>extreme</code> .	
network	Google Cloud network used for GCNV volumes.	
debugTraceFlags	Debug flags to use when troubleshooting. Example, <code>{"api":false, "method":true}</code> . Do not use this unless you are troubleshooting and require a detailed log dump.	null
supportedTopologies	Represents a list of regions and zones that are supported by this backend. For more information, refer to Use CSI Topology . For example: <code>supportedTopologies:</code> <code>- topology.kubernetes.io/region: asia-east1</code> <code>topology.kubernetes.io/zone: asia-east1-a</code>	

Volume provisioning options

You can control default volume provisioning in the `defaults` section of the configuration file.

Parameter	Description	Default
<code>exportRule</code>	The export rules for new volumes. Must be a comma-separated list of any combination of IPv4 addresses.	"0.0.0.0/0"
<code>snapshotDir</code>	Access to the <code>.snapshot</code> directory	"true" for NFSv4 "false" for NFSv3
<code>snapshotReserve</code>	Percentage of volume reserved for snapshots	"" (accept default of 0)
<code>unixPermissions</code>	The unix permissions of new volumes (4 octal digits).	""

Example configurations

The following examples show basic configurations that leave most parameters to default. This is the easiest way to define a backend.


```
XsYg6gyxy4zq70lwWgLwGa==\n
-----END PRIVATE KEY-----\n
```

```
---
```

```
apiVersion: trident.netapp.io/v1
kind: TridentBackendConfig
metadata:
  name: backend-tbc-gcnv
spec:
  version: 1
  storageDriverName: google-cloud-netapp-volumes
  projectNumber: '123455380079'
  location: europe-west6
  serviceLevel: premium
  apiKey:
    type: service_account
    project_id: my-gcnv-project
    client_email: myproject-prod@my-gcnv-
project.iam.gserviceaccount.com
    client_id: '103346282737811234567'
    auth_uri: https://accounts.google.com/o/oauth2/auth
    token_uri: https://oauth2.googleapis.com/token
    auth_provider_x509_cert_url:
https://www.googleapis.com/oauth2/v1/certs
    client_x509_cert_url:
https://www.googleapis.com/robot/v1/metadata/x509/myproject-prod%40my-
gcnv-project.iam.gserviceaccount.com
  credentials:
    name: backend-tbc-gcnv-secret
```



```
version: 1
storageDriverName: google-cloud-netapp-volumes
projectNumber: '123455380079'
location: europe-west6
serviceLevel: premium
storagePools:
- premium-pool1-europe-west6
- premium-pool2-europe-west6
apiKey:
  type: service_account
  project_id: my-gcnv-project
  client_email: myproject-prod@my-gcnv-
project.iam.gserviceaccount.com
  client_id: '103346282737811234567'
  auth_uri: https://accounts.google.com/o/oauth2/auth
  token_uri: https://oauth2.googleapis.com/token
  auth_provider_x509_cert_url:
https://www.googleapis.com/oauth2/v1/certs
  client_x509_cert_url:
https://www.googleapis.com/robot/v1/metadata/x509/myproject-prod%40my-
gcnv-project.iam.gserviceaccount.com
  credentials:
    name: backend-tbc-gcnv-secret
```



```
znHczZsrtrHisIsAbOguSaPIKeyAZNchRAGz1zZE4jK3bl/qp8B4Kws8zX5ojY9m
znHczZsrtrHisIsAbOguSaPIKeyAZNchRAGz1zZE4jK3bl/qp8B4Kws8zX5ojY9m
znHczZsrtrHisIsAbOguSaPIKeyAZNchRAGz1zZE4jK3bl/qp8B4Kws8zX5ojY9m
XsYg6gyxy4zq7OlwWgLwGa==
-----END PRIVATE KEY-----
```

```
apiVersion: trident.netapp.io/v1
kind: TridentBackendConfig
metadata:
  name: backend-tbc-gcnv
spec:
  version: 1
  storageDriverName: google-cloud-netapp-volumes
  projectNumber: '123455380079'
  location: europe-west6
  apiKey:
    type: service_account
    project_id: my-gcnv-project
    client_email: myproject-prod@my-gcnv-
project.iam.gserviceaccount.com
    client_id: '103346282737811234567'
    auth_uri: https://accounts.google.com/o/oauth2/auth
    token_uri: https://oauth2.googleapis.com/token
    auth_provider_x509_cert_url:
https://www.googleapis.com/oauth2/v1/certs
    client_x509_cert_url:
https://www.googleapis.com/robot/v1/metadata/x509/myproject-prod%40my-
gcnv-project.iam.gserviceaccount.com
  credentials:
    name: backend-tbc-gcnv-secret
  defaults:
    snapshotReserve: '10'
    exportRule: 10.0.0.0/24
  storage:
    - labels:
        performance: extreme
        serviceLevel: extreme
      defaults:
        snapshotReserve: '5'
        exportRule: 0.0.0.0/0
    - labels:
        performance: premium
        serviceLevel: premium
    - labels:
```

```
performance: standard
serviceLevel: standard
```

Cloud identity for GKE

```
apiVersion: trident.netapp.io/v1
kind: TridentBackendConfig
metadata:
  name: backend-tbc-gcp-gcnv
spec:
  version: 1
  storageDriverName: google-cloud-netapp-volumes
  projectNumber: '012345678901'
  network: gcnv-network
  location: us-west2
  serviceLevel: Premium
  storagePool: pool-premium1
```

Supported topologies configuration

Trident facilitates provisioning of volumes for workloads based on regions and availability zones. The `supportedTopologies` block in this backend configuration is used to provide a list of regions and zones per backend. The region and zone values specified here must match the region and zone values from the labels on each Kubernetes cluster node. These regions and zones represent the list of permissible values that can be provided in a storage class. For storage classes that contain a subset of the regions and zones provided in a backend, Trident creates volumes in the mentioned region and zone. For more information, refer to [Use CSI Topology](#).

```
---
version: 1
storageDriverName: google-cloud-netapp-volumes
subscriptionID: 9f87c765-4774-fake-ae98-a721add45451
tenantID: 68e4f836-edc1-fake-bff9-b2d865ee56cf
clientID: dd043f63-bf8e-fake-8076-8de91e5713aa
clientSecret: SECRET
location: asia-east1
serviceLevel: flex
supportedTopologies:
- topology.kubernetes.io/region: asia-east1
  topology.kubernetes.io/zone: asia-east1-a
- topology.kubernetes.io/region: asia-east1
  topology.kubernetes.io/zone: asia-east1-b
```

What's next?

After you create the backend configuration file, run the following command:

```
kubectl create -f <backend-file>
```

To verify that the backend is successfully created, run the following command:

```
kubectl get tridentbackendconfig
```

NAME	BACKEND NAME	BACKEND UUID
PHASE	STATUS	
backend-tbc-gcnv	backend-tbc-gcnv	b2fd1ff9-b234-477e-88fd-713913294f65
Bound	Success	

If the backend creation fails, something is wrong with the backend configuration. You can describe the backend using the `kubectl get tridentbackendconfig <backend-name>` command or view the logs to determine the cause by running the following command:

```
tridentctl logs
```

After you identify and correct the problem with the configuration file, you can delete the backend and run the create command again.

More examples

Storage class definition examples

The following is a basic `StorageClass` definition that refers to the backend above.

```
apiVersion: storage.k8s.io/v1
kind: StorageClass
metadata:
  name: gcnv-nfs-sc
provisioner: csi.trident.netapp.io
parameters:
  backendType: "google-cloud-netapp-volumes"
```

Example definitions using the `parameter.selector` field:

Using `parameter.selector` you can specify for each `StorageClass` the [virtual pool](#) that is used to host a volume. The volume will have the aspects defined in the chosen pool.

```

apiVersion: storage.k8s.io/v1
kind: StorageClass
metadata:
  name: extreme-sc
provisioner: csi.trident.netapp.io
parameters:
  selector: "performance=extreme"
  backendType: "google-cloud-netapp-volumes"
---
apiVersion: storage.k8s.io/v1
kind: StorageClass
metadata:
  name: premium-sc
provisioner: csi.trident.netapp.io
parameters:
  selector: "performance=premium"
  backendType: "google-cloud-netapp-volumes"
---
apiVersion: storage.k8s.io/v1
kind: StorageClass
metadata:
  name: standard-sc
provisioner: csi.trident.netapp.io
parameters:
  selector: "performance=standard"
  backendType: "google-cloud-netapp-volumes"

```

For more details on storage classes, refer to [Create a storage class](#).

PVC definition example

```

kind: PersistentVolumeClaim
apiVersion: v1
metadata:
  name: gcnv-nfs-pvc
spec:
  accessModes:
    - ReadWriteMany
  resources:
    requests:
      storage: 100Gi
  storageClassName: gcnv-nfs-sc

```

To verify if the PVC is bound, run the following command:

```
kubectl get pvc gcnv-nfs-pvc
```

```
NAME                STATUS    VOLUME                                     CAPACITY
ACCESS MODES       STORAGECLASS AGE
gcnv-nfs-pvc      Bound    pvc-b00f2414-e229-40e6-9b16-ee03eb79a213 100Gi
RWX                gcnv-nfs-sc 1m
```

Configure a Cloud Volumes Service for Google Cloud backend

Learn how to configure NetApp Cloud Volumes Service for Google Cloud as the backend for your Trident installation using the sample configurations provided.

Google Cloud driver details

Trident provides the `gcp-cvs` driver to communicate with the cluster. Supported access modes are: *ReadWriteOnce* (RWO), *ReadOnlyMany* (ROX), *ReadWriteMany* (RWX), *ReadWriteOncePod* (RWOP).

Driver	Protocol	volumeMode	Access modes supported	File systems supported
<code>gcp-cvs</code>	NFS	Filesystem	RWO, ROX, RWX, RWOP	nfs

Learn about Trident support for Cloud Volumes Service for Google Cloud

Trident can create Cloud Volumes Service volumes in one of two [service types](#):

- **CVS-Performance:** The default Trident service type. This performance-optimized service type is best suited for production workloads that value performance. The CVS-Performance service type is a hardware option supporting volumes with a minimum 100 GiB size. You can choose one of [three service levels](#):
 - `standard`
 - `premium`
 - `extreme`
- **CVS:** The CVS service type provides high zonal availability with limited to moderate performance levels. The CVS service type is a software option that uses storage pools to support volumes as small as 1 GiB. The storage pool can contain up to 50 volumes where all volumes share the capacity and performance of the pool. You can choose one of [two service levels](#):
 - `standardsw`
 - `zoneredundantstandardsw`

What you'll need

To configure and use the [Cloud Volumes Service for Google Cloud](#) backend, you need the following:

- A Google Cloud account configured with NetApp Cloud Volumes Service
- Project number of your Google Cloud account
- Google Cloud service account with the `netappcloudvolumes.admin` role

- API key file for your Cloud Volumes Service account

Backend configuration options

Each backend provisions volumes in a single Google Cloud region. To create volumes in other regions, you can define additional backends.

Parameter	Description	Default
<code>version</code>		Always 1
<code>storageDriverName</code>	Name of the storage driver	"gcp-cvs"
<code>backendName</code>	Custom name of the storage backend	Driver name + "_" + part of API key
<code>storageClass</code>	Optional parameter used to specify the CVS service type. Use <code>software</code> to select the CVS service type. Otherwise, Trident assumes CVS-Performance service type (<code>hardware</code>).	
<code>storagePools</code>	CVS service type only. Optional parameter used to specify storage pools for volume creation.	
<code>projectNumber</code>	Google Cloud account project number. The value is found on the Google Cloud portal home page.	
<code>hostProjectNumber</code>	Required if using a shared VPC network. In this scenario, <code>projectNumber</code> is the service project, and <code>hostProjectNumber</code> is the host project.	
<code>apiRegion</code>	The Google Cloud region where Trident creates Cloud Volumes Service volumes. When creating cross-region Kubernetes clusters, volumes created in an <code>apiRegion</code> can be used in workloads scheduled on nodes across multiple Google Cloud regions. Cross-region traffic incurs an additional cost.	
<code>apiKey</code>	API key for the Google Cloud service account with the <code>netappcloudvolumes.admin</code> role. It includes the JSON-formatted contents of a Google Cloud service account's private key file (copied verbatim into the backend configuration file).	
<code>proxyURL</code>	Proxy URL if proxy server required to connect to CVS account. The proxy server can either be an HTTP proxy or an HTTPS proxy. For an HTTPS proxy, certificate validation is skipped to allow the usage of self-signed certificates in the proxy server. Proxy servers with authentication enabled are not supported.	

Parameter	Description	Default
<code>nfsMountOptions</code>	Fine-grained control of NFS mount options.	"nfsvers=3"
<code>limitVolumeSize</code>	Fail provisioning if the requested volume size is above this value.	"" (not enforced by default)
<code>serviceLevel</code>	<p>The CVS-Performance or CVS service level for new volumes.</p> <p>CVS-Performance values are <code>standard</code>, <code>premium</code>, or <code>extreme</code>.</p> <p>CVS values are <code>standardsw</code> or <code>zoneredundantstandardsw</code>.</p>	<p>CVS-Performance default is "standard".</p> <p>CVS default is "standardsw".</p>
<code>network</code>	Google Cloud network used for Cloud Volumes Service volumes.	"default"
<code>debugTraceFlags</code>	<p>Debug flags to use when troubleshooting. Example, <code>\{"api":false, "method":true\}</code>.</p> <p>Do not use this unless you are troubleshooting and require a detailed log dump.</p>	null
<code>allowedTopologies</code>	<p>To enable cross-region access, your <code>StorageClass</code> definition for <code>allowedTopologies</code> must include all regions.</p> <p>For example:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> - key: <code>topology.kubernetes.io/region</code> values: - <code>us-east1</code> - <code>eu-west1</code> 	

Volume provisioning options

You can control default volume provisioning in the `defaults` section of the configuration file.

Parameter	Description	Default
<code>exportRule</code>	The export rules for new volumes. Must be a comma-separated list of any combination of IPv4 addresses or IPv4 subnets in CIDR notation.	"0.0.0.0/0"
<code>snapshotDir</code>	Access to the <code>.snapshot</code> directory	"false"
<code>snapshotReserve</code>	Percentage of volume reserved for snapshots	"" (accept CVS default of 0)
<code>size</code>	<p>The size of new volumes.</p> <p>CVS-Performance minimum is 100 GiB.</p> <p>CVS minimum is 1 GiB.</p>	<p>CVS-Performance service type defaults to "100GiB".</p> <p>CVS service type does not set a default but requires a 1 GiB minimum.</p>

CVS-Performance service type examples

The following examples provide sample configurations for the CVS-Performance service type.

Example 1: Minimal configuration

This is the minimum backend configuration using default CVS-Performance service type with the default "standard" service level.

```
---
version: 1
storageDriverName: gcp-cvs
projectNumber: '012345678901'
apiRegion: us-west2
apiKey:
  type: service_account
  project_id: my-gcp-project
  private_key_id: "<id_value>"
  private_key: |
    -----BEGIN PRIVATE KEY-----
    <key_value>
    -----END PRIVATE KEY-----
  client_email: cloudvolumes-admin-sa@my-gcp-
project.iam.gserviceaccount.com
  client_id: '123456789012345678901'
  auth_uri: https://accounts.google.com/o/oauth2/auth
  token_uri: https://oauth2.googleapis.com/token
  auth_provider_x509_cert_url:
https://www.googleapis.com/oauth2/v1/certs
  client_x509_cert_url:
https://www.googleapis.com/robot/v1/metadata/x509/cloudvolumes-admin-
sa%40my-gcp-project.iam.gserviceaccount.com
```

Example 2: Service level configuration

This sample illustrates backend configuration options, including service level, and volume defaults.

```
---
version: 1
storageDriverName: gcp-cvs
projectNumber: '012345678901'
apiRegion: us-west2
apiKey:
  type: service_account
  project_id: my-gcp-project
  private_key_id: "<id_value>"
  private_key: |
    -----BEGIN PRIVATE KEY-----
    <key_value>
    -----END PRIVATE KEY-----
  client_email: cloudvolumes-admin-sa@my-gcp-
project.iam.gserviceaccount.com
  client_id: '123456789012345678901'
  auth_uri: https://accounts.google.com/o/oauth2/auth
  token_uri: https://oauth2.googleapis.com/token
  auth_provider_x509_cert_url:
https://www.googleapis.com/oauth2/v1/certs
  client_x509_cert_url:
https://www.googleapis.com/robot/v1/metadata/x509/cloudvolumes-admin-
sa%40my-gcp-project.iam.gserviceaccount.com
proxyURL: http://proxy-server-hostname/
nfsMountOptions: vers=3,proto=tcp,timeo=600
limitVolumeSize: 10Ti
serviceLevel: premium
defaults:
  snapshotDir: 'true'
  snapshotReserve: '5'
  exportRule: 10.0.0.0/24,10.0.1.0/24,10.0.2.100
  size: 5Ti
```

Example 3: Virtual pool configuration

This sample uses `storage` to configure virtual pools and the `StorageClasses` that refer back to them. Refer to [Storage class definitions](#) to see how the storage classes were defined.

Here, specific defaults are set for all virtual pools, which set the `snapshotReserve` at 5% and the `exportRule` to 0.0.0.0/0. The virtual pools are defined in the `storage` section. Each individual virtual pool defines its own `serviceLevel`, and some pools overwrite the default values. Virtual pool labels were used to differentiate the pools based on `performance` and `protection`.

```
---
version: 1
storageDriverName: gcp-cvs
projectNumber: '012345678901'
apiRegion: us-west2
apiKey:
  type: service_account
  project_id: my-gcp-project
  private_key_id: "<id_value>"
  private_key: |
    -----BEGIN PRIVATE KEY-----
    <key_value>
    -----END PRIVATE KEY-----
  client_email: cloudvolumes-admin-sa@my-gcp-
project.iam.gserviceaccount.com
  client_id: '123456789012345678901'
  auth_uri: https://accounts.google.com/o/oauth2/auth
  token_uri: https://oauth2.googleapis.com/token
  auth_provider_x509_cert_url:
https://www.googleapis.com/oauth2/v1/certs
  client_x509_cert_url:
https://www.googleapis.com/robot/v1/metadata/x509/cloudvolumes-admin-
sa%40my-gcp-project.iam.gserviceaccount.com
nfsMountOptions: vers=3,proto=tcp,timeo=600
defaults:
  snapshotReserve: '5'
  exportRule: 0.0.0.0/0
labels:
  cloud: gcp
  region: us-west2
storage:
- labels:
  performance: extreme
  protection: extra
  serviceLevel: extreme
  defaults:
    snapshotDir: 'true'
```

```
    snapshotReserve: '10'
    exportRule: 10.0.0.0/24
- labels:
    performance: extreme
    protection: standard
    serviceLevel: extreme
- labels:
    performance: premium
    protection: extra
    serviceLevel: premium
defaults:
    snapshotDir: 'true'
    snapshotReserve: '10'
- labels:
    performance: premium
    protection: standard
    serviceLevel: premium
- labels:
    performance: standard
    serviceLevel: standard
```

Storage class definitions

The following StorageClass definitions apply to the virtual pool configuration example. Using `parameters.selector`, you can specify for each StorageClass the virtual pool used to host a volume. The volume will have the aspects defined in the chosen pool.

Storage class example

```
apiVersion: storage.k8s.io/v1
kind: StorageClass
metadata:
  name: cvs-extreme-extra-protection
provisioner: csi.trident.netapp.io
parameters:
  selector: "performance=extreme; protection=extra"
allowVolumeExpansion: true
---
apiVersion: storage.k8s.io/v1
kind: StorageClass
metadata:
  name: cvs-extreme-standard-protection
provisioner: csi.trident.netapp.io
parameters:
  selector: "performance=premium; protection=standard"
allowVolumeExpansion: true
---
apiVersion: storage.k8s.io/v1
kind: StorageClass
metadata:
  name: cvs-premium-extra-protection
provisioner: csi.trident.netapp.io
parameters:
  selector: "performance=premium; protection=extra"
allowVolumeExpansion: true
---
apiVersion: storage.k8s.io/v1
kind: StorageClass
metadata:
  name: cvs-premium
provisioner: csi.trident.netapp.io
parameters:
  selector: "performance=premium; protection=standard"
allowVolumeExpansion: true
---
apiVersion: storage.k8s.io/v1
kind: StorageClass
metadata:
  name: cvs-standard
provisioner: csi.trident.netapp.io
parameters:
  selector: "performance=standard"
allowVolumeExpansion: true
```

```
---
apiVersion: storage.k8s.io/v1
kind: StorageClass
metadata:
  name: cvs-extra-protection
provisioner: csi.trident.netapp.io
parameters:
  selector: "protection=extra"
allowVolumeExpansion: true
```

- The first StorageClass (`cvs-extreme-extra-protection`) maps to the first virtual pool. This is the only pool offering extreme performance with a snapshot reserve of 10%.
- The last StorageClass (`cvs-extra-protection`) calls out any storage pool which provides a snapshot reserve of 10%. Trident decides which virtual pool is selected and ensures that the snapshot reserve requirement is met.

CVS service type examples

The following examples provide sample configurations for the CVS service type.

Example 1: Minimum configuration

This is the minimum backend configuration using `storageClass` to specify the CVS service type and default `standardsw` service level.

```
---
version: 1
storageDriverName: gcp-cvs
projectNumber: '012345678901'
storageClass: software
apiRegion: us-east4
apiKey:
  type: service_account
  project_id: my-gcp-project
  private_key_id: "<id_value>"
  private_key: |
    -----BEGIN PRIVATE KEY-----
    <key_value>
    -----END PRIVATE KEY-----
  client_email: cloudvolumes-admin-sa@my-gcp-
project.iam.gserviceaccount.com
  client_id: '123456789012345678901'
  auth_uri: https://accounts.google.com/o/oauth2/auth
  token_uri: https://oauth2.googleapis.com/token
  auth_provider_x509_cert_url:
https://www.googleapis.com/oauth2/v1/certs
  client_x509_cert_url:
https://www.googleapis.com/robot/v1/metadata/x509/cloudvolumes-admin-
sa%40my-gcp-project.iam.gserviceaccount.com
serviceLevel: standardsw
```


Example 2: Storage pool configuration

This sample backend configuration uses `storagePools` to configure a storage pool.

```
---
version: 1
storageDriverName: gcp-cvs
backendName: gcp-std-so-with-pool
projectNumber: '531265380079'
apiRegion: europe-west1
apiKey:
  type: service_account
  project_id: cloud-native-data
  private_key_id: "<id_value>"
  private_key: |-
    -----BEGIN PRIVATE KEY-----
    <key_value>
    -----END PRIVATE KEY-----
  client_email: cloudvolumes-admin-sa@cloud-native-
data.iam.gserviceaccount.com
  client_id: '107071413297115343396'
  auth_uri: https://accounts.google.com/o/oauth2/auth
  token_uri: https://oauth2.googleapis.com/token
  auth_provider_x509_cert_url:
https://www.googleapis.com/oauth2/v1/certs
  client_x509_cert_url:
https://www.googleapis.com/robot/v1/metadata/x509/cloudvolumes-admin-
sa%40cloud-native-data.iam.gserviceaccount.com
storageClass: software
zone: europe-west1-b
network: default
storagePools:
- 1bc7f380-3314-6005-45e9-c7dc8c2d7509
serviceLevel: Standardsw
```

What's next?

After you create the backend configuration file, run the following command:

```
tridentctl create backend -f <backend-file>
```

If the backend creation fails, something is wrong with the backend configuration. You can view the logs to determine the cause by running the following command:

```
tridentctl logs
```

After you identify and correct the problem with the configuration file, you can run the create command again.

Configure a NetApp HCI or SolidFire backend

Learn how to create and use an Element backend with your Trident installation.

Element driver details

Trident provides the `solidfire-san` storage driver to communicate with the cluster. Supported access modes are: *ReadWriteOnce* (RWO), *ReadOnlyMany* (ROX), *ReadWriteMany* (RWX), *ReadWriteOncePod* (RWOP).

The `solidfire-san` storage driver supports *file* and *block* volume modes. For the `Filesystem` volumeMode, Trident creates a volume and creates a filesystem. The filesystem type is specified by the `StorageClass`.

Driver	Protocol	VolumeMode	Access modes supported	File systems supported
<code>solidfire-san</code>	iSCSI	Block	RWO, ROX, RWX, RWOP	No Filesystem. Raw block device.
<code>solidfire-san</code>	iSCSI	Filesystem	RWO, RWOP	<code>xfs</code> , <code>ext3</code> , <code>ext4</code>

Before you begin

You'll need the following before creating an Element backend.

- A supported storage system that runs Element software.
- Credentials to a NetApp HCI/SolidFire cluster admin or tenant user that can manage volumes.
- All of your Kubernetes worker nodes should have the appropriate iSCSI tools installed. Refer to [worker node preparation information](#).

Backend configuration options

See the following table for the backend configuration options:

Parameter	Description	Default
<code>version</code>		Always 1
<code>storageDriverName</code>	Name of the storage driver	Always "solidfire-san"
<code>backendName</code>	Custom name or the storage backend	"solidfire_" + storage (iSCSI) IP address
<code>Endpoint</code>	MVIP for the SolidFire cluster with tenant credentials	

Parameter	Description	Default
SVIP	Storage (iSCSI) IP address and port	
labels	Set of arbitrary JSON-formatted labels to apply on volumes.	""
TenantName	Tenant name to use (created if not found)	
InitiatorIFace	Restrict iSCSI traffic to a specific host interface	"default"
UseCHAP	Use CHAP to authenticate iSCSI. Trident uses CHAP.	true
AccessGroups	List of Access Group IDs to use	Finds the ID of an access group named "trident"
Types	QoS specifications	
limitVolumeSize	Fail provisioning if requested volume size is above this value	"" (not enforced by default)
debugTraceFlags	Debug flags to use when troubleshooting. Example, {"api":false, "method":true}	null



Do not use `debugTraceFlags` unless you are troubleshooting and require a detailed log dump.

Example 1: Backend configuration for `solidfire-san` driver with three volume types

This example shows a backend file using CHAP authentication and modeling three volume types with specific QoS guarantees. Most likely you would then define storage classes to consume each of these using the `IOPS` storage class parameter.

```

---
version: 1
storageDriverName: solidfire-san
Endpoint: https://<user>:<password>@<mvip>/json-rpc/8.0
SVIP: "<svip>:3260"
TenantName: "<tenant>"
labels:
  k8scluster: dev1
  backend: dev1-element-cluster
UseCHAP: true
Types:
- Type: Bronze
  Qos:
    minIOPS: 1000
    maxIOPS: 2000
    burstIOPS: 4000
- Type: Silver
  Qos:
    minIOPS: 4000
    maxIOPS: 6000
    burstIOPS: 8000
- Type: Gold
  Qos:
    minIOPS: 6000
    maxIOPS: 8000
    burstIOPS: 10000

```

Example 2: Backend and storage class configuration for `solidfire-san` driver with virtual pools

This example shows the backend definition file configured with virtual pools along with StorageClasses that refer back to them.

Trident copies labels present on a storage pool to the backend storage LUN at provisioning. For convenience, storage administrators can define labels per virtual pool and group volumes by label.

In the sample backend definition file shown below, specific defaults are set for all storage pools, which set the `type` at `Silver`. The virtual pools are defined in the `storage` section. In this example, some of the storage pools set their own `type`, and some pools override the default values set above.

```

---
version: 1
storageDriverName: solidfire-san
Endpoint: https://<user>:<password>@<mvip>/json-rpc/8.0
SVIP: "<svip>:3260"
TenantName: "<tenant>"
UseCHAP: true

```

```

Types:
- Type: Bronze
  Qos:
    minIOPS: 1000
    maxIOPS: 2000
    burstIOPS: 4000
- Type: Silver
  Qos:
    minIOPS: 4000
    maxIOPS: 6000
    burstIOPS: 8000
- Type: Gold
  Qos:
    minIOPS: 6000
    maxIOPS: 8000
    burstIOPS: 10000
type: Silver
labels:
  store: solidfire
  k8scluster: dev-1-cluster
region: us-east-1
storage:
- labels:
  performance: gold
  cost: '4'
  zone: us-east-1a
  type: Gold
- labels:
  performance: silver
  cost: '3'
  zone: us-east-1b
  type: Silver
- labels:
  performance: bronze
  cost: '2'
  zone: us-east-1c
  type: Bronze
- labels:
  performance: silver
  cost: '1'
  zone: us-east-1d

```

The following StorageClass definitions refer to the above virtual pools. Using the `parameters.selector` field, each StorageClass calls out which virtual pool(s) can be used to host a volume. The volume will have the aspects defined in the chosen virtual pool.

The first StorageClass (`solidfire-gold-four`) will map to the first virtual pool. This is the only pool offering gold performance with a `Volume Type QoS` of Gold. The last StorageClass (`solidfire-silver`) calls out any storage pool which offers a silver performance. Trident will decide which virtual pool is selected and ensures the storage requirement is met.

```

apiVersion: storage.k8s.io/v1
kind: StorageClass
metadata:
  name: solidfire-gold-four
provisioner: csi.trident.netapp.io
parameters:
  selector: "performance=gold; cost=4"
  fsType: "ext4"
---
apiVersion: storage.k8s.io/v1
kind: StorageClass
metadata:
  name: solidfire-silver-three
provisioner: csi.trident.netapp.io
parameters:
  selector: "performance=silver; cost=3"
  fsType: "ext4"
---
apiVersion: storage.k8s.io/v1
kind: StorageClass
metadata:
  name: solidfire-bronze-two
provisioner: csi.trident.netapp.io
parameters:
  selector: "performance=bronze; cost=2"
  fsType: "ext4"
---
apiVersion: storage.k8s.io/v1
kind: StorageClass
metadata:
  name: solidfire-silver-one
provisioner: csi.trident.netapp.io
parameters:
  selector: "performance=silver; cost=1"
  fsType: "ext4"
---
apiVersion: storage.k8s.io/v1
kind: StorageClass
metadata:
  name: solidfire-silver
provisioner: csi.trident.netapp.io
parameters:
  selector: "performance=silver"
  fsType: "ext4"

```

Find more information

- [Volume access groups](#)

ONTAP SAN drivers

ONTAP SAN driver overview

Learn about configuring an ONTAP backend with ONTAP and Cloud Volumes ONTAP SAN drivers.

ONTAP SAN driver details

Trident provides the following SAN storage drivers to communicate with the ONTAP cluster. Supported access modes are: *ReadWriteOnce* (RWO), *ReadOnlyMany* (ROX), *ReadWriteMany* (RWX), *ReadWriteOncePod* (RWOP).

Driver	Protocol	volumeMode	Access modes supported	File systems supported
ontap-san	iSCSI	Block	RWO, ROX, RWX, RWOP	No filesystem; raw block device
ontap-san	iSCSI	Filesystem	RWO, RWOP ROX and RWX are not available in Filesystem volume mode.	xfs, ext3, ext4
ontap-san	NVMe/TCP Refer to Additional considerations for NVMe/TCP.	Block	RWO, ROX, RWX, RWOP	No filesystem; raw block device
ontap-san	NVMe/TCP Refer to Additional considerations for NVMe/TCP.	Filesystem	RWO, RWOP ROX and RWX are not available in Filesystem volume mode.	xfs, ext3, ext4
ontap-san-economy	iSCSI	Block	RWO, ROX, RWX, RWOP	No filesystem; raw block device

Driver	Protocol	volumeMode	Access modes supported	File systems supported
ontap-san-economy	iSCSI	Filesystem	RWO, RWOP ROX and RWX are not available in Filesystem volume mode.	xfss, ext3, ext4



- Use `ontap-san-economy` only if persistent volume usage count is expected to be higher than [supported ONTAP volume limits](#).
- Use `ontap-nas-economy` only if persistent volume usage count is expected to be higher than [supported ONTAP volume limits](#) and the `ontap-san-economy` driver cannot be used.
- Do not use `ontap-nas-economy` if you anticipate the need for data protection, disaster recovery, or mobility.

User permissions

Trident expects to be run as either an ONTAP or SVM administrator, typically using the `admin` cluster user or a `vsadmin` SVM user, or a user with a different name that has the same role. For Amazon FSx for NetApp ONTAP deployments, Trident expects to be run as either an ONTAP or SVM administrator, using the cluster `fsxadmin` user or a `vsadmin` SVM user, or a user with a different name that has the same role. The `fsxadmin` user is a limited replacement for the cluster admin user.



If you use the `limitAggregateUsage` parameter, cluster admin permissions are required. When using Amazon FSx for NetApp ONTAP with Trident, the `limitAggregateUsage` parameter will not work with the `vsadmin` and `fsxadmin` user accounts. The configuration operation will fail if you specify this parameter.

While it is possible to create a more restrictive role within ONTAP that a Trident driver can use, we don't recommend it. Most new releases of Trident will call additional APIs that would have to be accounted for, making upgrades difficult and error-prone.

Additional considerations for NVMe/TCP

Trident supports the non-volatile memory express (NVMe) protocol using the `ontap-san` driver including:

- IPv6
- Snapshots and clones of NVMe volumes
- Resizing an NVMe volume
- Importing an NVMe volume that was created outside of Trident so that its lifecycle can be managed by Trident
- NVMe-native multipathing
- Graceful or ungraceful shutdown of the K8s nodes (24.06)

Trident does not support:

- DH-HMAC-CHAP that is supported natively by NVMe

- Device mapper (DM) multipathing
- LUKS encryption

Prepare to configure backend with ONTAP SAN drivers

Understand the requirements and authentication options for configuring an ONTAP backend with ONTAP SAN drivers.

Requirements

For all ONTAP backends, Trident requires at least one aggregate assigned to the SVM.

Remember that you can also run more than one driver, and create storage classes that point to one or the other. For example, you could configure a `san-dev` class that uses the `ontap-san` driver and a `san-default` class that uses the `ontap-san-economy` one.

All your Kubernetes worker nodes must have the appropriate iSCSI tools installed. Refer to [Prepare the worker node](#) for details.

Authenticate the ONTAP backend

Trident offers two modes of authenticating an ONTAP backend.

- Credential-based: The username and password to an ONTAP user with the required permissions. It is recommended to use a pre-defined security login role, such as `admin` or `vsadmin` to ensure maximum compatibility with ONTAP versions.
- Certificate-based: Trident can also communicate with an ONTAP cluster using a certificate installed on the backend. Here, the backend definition must contain Base64-encoded values of the client certificate, key, and the trusted CA certificate if used (recommended).

You can update existing backends to move between credential-based and certificate-based methods. However, only one authentication method is supported at a time. To switch to a different authentication method, you must remove the existing method from the backend configuration.



If you attempt to provide **both credentials and certificates**, backend creation will fail with an error that more than one authentication method was provided in the configuration file.

Enable credential-based authentication

Trident requires the credentials to an SVM-scoped/cluster-scoped admin to communicate with the ONTAP backend. It is recommended to make use of standard, pre-defined roles such as `admin` or `vsadmin`. This ensures forward compatibility with future ONTAP releases that might expose feature APIs to be used by future Trident releases. A custom security login role can be created and used with Trident, but is not recommended.

A sample backend definition will look like this:

YAML

```
---
version: 1
backendName: ExampleBackend
storageDriverName: ontap-san
managementLIF: 10.0.0.1
svm: svm_nfs
username: vsadmin
password: password
```

JSON

```
{
  "version": 1,
  "backendName": "ExampleBackend",
  "storageDriverName": "ontap-san",
  "managementLIF": "10.0.0.1",
  "svm": "svm_nfs",
  "username": "vsadmin",
  "password": "password"
}
```

Keep in mind that the backend definition is the only place the credentials are stored in plain text. After the backend is created, usernames/passwords are encoded with Base64 and stored as Kubernetes secrets. The creation or update of a backend is the only step that requires knowledge of the credentials. As such, it is an admin-only operation, to be performed by the Kubernetes/storage administrator.

Enable certificate-based authentication

New and existing backends can use a certificate and communicate with the ONTAP backend. Three parameters are required in the backend definition.

- `clientCertificate`: Base64-encoded value of client certificate.
- `clientPrivateKey`: Base64-encoded value of associated private key.
- `trustedCACertificate`: Base64-encoded value of trusted CA certificate. If using a trusted CA, this parameter must be provided. This can be ignored if no trusted CA is used.

A typical workflow involves the following steps.

Steps

1. Generate a client certificate and key. When generating, set Common Name (CN) to the ONTAP user to authenticate as.

```
openssl req -x509 -nodes -days 1095 -newkey rsa:2048 -keyout k8senv.key
-out k8senv.pem -subj "/C=US/ST=NC/L=RTP/O=NetApp/CN=admin"
```

2. Add trusted CA certificate to the ONTAP cluster. This might be already handled by the storage administrator. Ignore if no trusted CA is used.

```
security certificate install -type server -cert-name <trusted-ca-cert-
name> -vserver <vserver-name>
ssl modify -vserver <vserver-name> -server-enabled true -client-enabled
true -common-name <common-name> -serial <SN-from-trusted-CA-cert> -ca
<cert-authority>
```

3. Install the client certificate and key (from step 1) on the ONTAP cluster.

```
security certificate install -type client-ca -cert-name <certificate-
name> -vserver <vserver-name>
security ssl modify -vserver <vserver-name> -client-enabled true
```

4. Confirm the ONTAP security login role supports cert authentication method.

```
security login create -user-or-group-name admin -application ontapi
-authentication-method cert
security login create -user-or-group-name admin -application http
-authentication-method cert
```

5. Test authentication using certificate generated. Replace <ONTAP Management LIF> and <vserver name> with Management LIF IP and SVM name.

```
curl -X POST -Lk https://<ONTAP-Management-
LIF>/servlets/netapp.servlets.admin.XMLrequest_filer --key k8senv.key
--cert ~/k8senv.pem -d '<?xml version="1.0" encoding="UTF-8"?><netapp
xmlns="http://www.netapp.com/filer/admin" version="1.21"
vfiler="<vserver-name>"><vserver-get></vserver-get></netapp>'
```

6. Encode certificate, key and trusted CA certificate with Base64.

```
base64 -w 0 k8senv.pem >> cert_base64
base64 -w 0 k8senv.key >> key_base64
base64 -w 0 trustedca.pem >> trustedca_base64
```

7. Create backend using the values obtained from the previous step.

```

cat cert-backend.json
{
  "version": 1,
  "storageDriverName": "ontap-san",
  "backendName": "SanBackend",
  "managementLIF": "1.2.3.4",
  "svm": "vserver_test",
  "clientCertificate": "Faaaakkkkeeee...Vaaalllluuueeee",
  "clientPrivateKey": "LS0tFaKE...0VaLuES0tLS0K",
  "trustedCACertificate": "QNFinfO...SiqOyN",
  "storagePrefix": "myPrefix_"
}

tridentctl create backend -f cert-backend.json -n trident
+-----+-----+-----+-----+
+-----+-----+
|   NAME   | STORAGE DRIVER |           UUID           |
STATE | VOLUMES |
+-----+-----+-----+-----+
+-----+-----+
| SanBackend | ontap-san      | 586b1cd5-8cf8-428d-a76c-2872713612c1 |
online |         0 |
+-----+-----+-----+-----+
+-----+-----+

```

Update authentication methods or rotate credentials

You can update an existing backend to use a different authentication method or to rotate their credentials. This works both ways: backends that make use of username/password can be updated to use certificates; backends that utilize certificates can be updated to username/password based. To do this, you must remove the existing authentication method and add the new authentication method. Then use the updated backend.json file containing the required parameters to execute `tridentctl backend update`.

```

cat cert-backend-updated.json
{
"version": 1,
"storageDriverName": "ontap-san",
"backendName": "SanBackend",
"managementLIF": "1.2.3.4",
"svm": "vserver_test",
"username": "vsadmin",
"password": "password",
"storagePrefix": "myPrefix_"
}

#Update backend with tridentctl
tridentctl update backend SanBackend -f cert-backend-updated.json -n
trident
+-----+-----+-----+
+-----+-----+
|   NAME   | STORAGE DRIVER |          UUID          |
STATE | VOLUMES |
+-----+-----+-----+
+-----+-----+
| SanBackend | ontap-san      | 586b1cd5-8cf8-428d-a76c-2872713612c1 |
online |      9 |
+-----+-----+-----+
+-----+-----+

```



When rotating passwords, the storage administrator must first update the password for the user on ONTAP. This is followed by a backend update. When rotating certificates, multiple certificates can be added to the user. The backend is then updated to use the new certificate, following which the old certificate can be deleted from the ONTAP cluster.

Updating a backend does not disrupt access to volumes that have already been created, nor impact volume connections made after. A successful backend update indicates that Trident can communicate with the ONTAP backend and handle future volume operations.

Create custom ONTAP role for Trident

You can create an ONTAP cluster role with minimum privileges so that you do not have to use the ONTAP admin role to perform operations in Trident. When you include the username in a Trident backend configuration, Trident uses the ONTAP cluster role you created to perform the operations.

Refer to [Trident custom-role generator](#) for more information about creating Trident custom roles.

Using ONTAP CLI

1. Create a new role using the following command:

```
security login role create <role_name\> -cmddirname "command" -access all  
-vserver <svm_name\>
```

2. Create a username for the Trident user:

```
security login create -username <user_name\> -application ontapi  
-authmethod <password\> -role <name_of_role_in_step_1\> -vserver  
<svm_name\> -comment "user_description"
```

3. Map the role to the user:

```
security login modify username <user_name\> -vserver <svm_name\> -role  
<role_name\> -application ontapi -application console -authmethod  
<password\>
```

Using System Manager

Perform the following steps in ONTAP System Manager:

1. **Create a custom role:**

- a. To create a custom role at the cluster-level, select **Cluster > Settings**.

(Or) To create a custom role at the SVM level, select **Storage > Storage VMs > required SVM > Settings > Users and Roles**.

- b. Select the arrow icon (→) next to **Users and Roles**.
- c. Select **+Add** under **Roles**.
- d. Define the rules for the role and click **Save**.

2. **Map the role to the Trident user:**

+ Perform the following steps on the **Users and Roles** page:

- a. Select Add icon **+** under **Users**.
- b. Select the required username, and select a role in the drop-down menu for **Role**.
- c. Click **Save**.

Refer to the following pages for more information:

- [Custom roles for administration of ONTAP](#) or [Define custom roles](#)
- [Work with roles and users](#)

Authenticate connections with bidirectional CHAP

Trident can authenticate iSCSI sessions with bidirectional CHAP for the `ontap-san` and `ontap-san-economy` drivers. This requires enabling the `useCHAP` option in your backend definition. When set to `true`, Trident configures the SVM's default initiator security to bidirectional CHAP and set the username and secrets from the backend file. NetApp recommends using bidirectional CHAP to authenticate connections. See the following sample configuration:

```
---
version: 1
storageDriverName: ontap-san
backendName: ontap_san_chap
managementLIF: 192.168.0.135
svm: ontap_iscsi_svm
useCHAP: true
username: vsadmin
password: password
chapInitiatorSecret: cl9qxIm36DKyawxy
chapTargetInitiatorSecret: rqxigXgkesIpwxyz
chapTargetUsername: iJF4heBRT0TCwxyz
chapUsername: uh2aNCLsd6cNwxyz
```



The `useCHAP` parameter is a Boolean option that can be configured only once. It is set to `false` by default. After you set it to `true`, you cannot set it to `false`.

In addition to `useCHAP=true`, the `chapInitiatorSecret`, `chapTargetInitiatorSecret`, `chapTargetUsername`, and `chapUsername` fields must be included in the backend definition. The secrets can be changed after a backend is created by running `tridentctl update`.

How it works

By setting `useCHAP` to `true`, the storage administrator instructs Trident to configure CHAP on the storage backend. This includes the following:

- Setting up CHAP on the SVM:
 - If the SVM's default initiator security type is `none` (set by default) **and** there are no pre-existing LUNs already present in the volume, Trident will set the default security type to `CHAP` and proceed to configuring the CHAP initiator and target username and secrets.
 - If the SVM contains LUNs, Trident will not enable CHAP on the SVM. This ensures that access to LUNs that are already present on the SVM isn't restricted.
- Configuring the CHAP initiator and target username and secrets; these options must be specified in the backend configuration (as shown above).

After the backend is created, Trident creates a corresponding `tridentbackend` CRD and stores the CHAP secrets and usernames as Kubernetes secrets. All PVs that are created by Trident on this backend will be mounted and attached over CHAP.

Rotate credentials and update backends

You can update the CHAP credentials by updating the CHAP parameters in the `backend.json` file. This will require updating the CHAP secrets and using the `tridentctl update` command to reflect these changes.



When updating the CHAP secrets for a backend, you must use `tridentctl` to update the backend. Do not update the credentials on the storage cluster through the CLI/ONTAP UI as Trident will not be able to pick up these changes.


```

cat backend-san.json
{
  "version": 1,
  "storageDriverName": "ontap-san",
  "backendName": "ontap_san_chap",
  "managementLIF": "192.168.0.135",
  "svm": "ontap_iscsi_svm",
  "useCHAP": true,
  "username": "vsadmin",
  "password": "password",
  "chapInitiatorSecret": "cl9qxUpDaTeD",
  "chapTargetInitiatorSecret": "rqxigXgkeUpDaTeD",
  "chapTargetUsername": "iJF4heBRT0TCwxyz",
  "chapUsername": "uh2aNCLsd6cNwxyz",
}

./tridentctl update backend ontap_san_chap -f backend-san.json -n trident
+-----+-----+-----+-----+
+-----+-----+
| NAME          | STORAGE DRIVER |          UUID          |
STATE | VOLUMES |
+-----+-----+-----+-----+
| ontap_san_chap | ontap-san      | aa458f3b-ad2d-4378-8a33-1a472ffbeb5c |
online |      7 |
+-----+-----+-----+-----+
+-----+-----+

```

Existing connections will remain unaffected; they will continue to remain active if the credentials are updated by Trident on the SVM. New connections use the updated credentials and existing connections continue to remain active. Disconnecting and reconnecting old PVs will result in them using the updated credentials.

ONTAP SAN configuration options and examples


Learn how to create and use ONTAP SAN drivers with your Trident installation. This section provides backend configuration examples and details for mapping backends to StorageClasses.

Backend configuration options

See the following table for the backend configuration options:

Parameter	Description	Default
version		Always 1

Parameter	Description	Default
storageDriverName	Name of the storage driver	ontap-nas, ontap-nas-economy, ontap-nas-flexgroup, ontap-san, ontap-san-economy
backendName	Custom name of the storage backend	Driver name + "_" + dataLIF
managementLIF	<p>IP address of a cluster or SVM management LIF.</p> <p>A fully-qualified domain name (FQDN) can be specified.</p> <p>Can be set to use IPv6 addresses if Trident was installed using the IPv6 flag. IPv6 addresses must be defined in square brackets, such as [28e8:d9fb:a825:b7bf:69a8:d02f:9e7b:3555].</p> <p>For seamless MetroCluster switchover, see the [mcc-best].</p>	"10.0.0.1", "[2001:1234:abcd::fefe]"
dataLIF	<p>IP address of protocol LIF.</p> <p>Do not specify for iSCSI. Trident uses ONTAP Selective LUN Map to discover the iSCSI LIFs needed to establish a multi path session. A warning is generated if dataLIF is explicitly defined.</p> <p>Omit for Metrocluster. See the [mcc-best].</p>	Derived by the SVM
svm	<p>Storage virtual machine to use</p> <p>Omit for Metrocluster. See the [mcc-best].</p>	Derived if an SVM managementLIF is specified
useCHAP	<p>Use CHAP to authenticate iSCSI for ONTAP SAN drivers [Boolean].</p> <p>Set to true for Trident to configure and use bidirectional CHAP as the default authentication for the SVM given in the backend. Refer to Prepare to configure backend with ONTAP SAN drivers for details.</p>	false
chapInitiatorSecret	CHAP initiator secret. Required if useCHAP=true	""
labels	Set of arbitrary JSON-formatted labels to apply on volumes	""
chapTargetInitiatorSecret	CHAP target initiator secret. Required if useCHAP=true	""
chapUsername	Inbound username. Required if useCHAP=true	""

Parameter	Description	Default
chapTargetUsername	Target username. Required if <code>useCHAP=true</code>	""
clientCertificate	Base64-encoded value of client certificate. Used for certificate-based auth	""
clientPrivateKey	Base64-encoded value of client private key. Used for certificate-based auth	""
trustedCACertificate	Base64-encoded value of trusted CA certificate. Optional. Used for certificate-based authentication.	""
username	Username needed to communicate with the ONTAP cluster. Used for credential-based authentication.	""
password	Password needed to communicate with the ONTAP cluster. Used for credential-based authentication.	""
svm	Storage virtual machine to use	Derived if an SVM managementLIF is specified
storagePrefix	Prefix used when provisioning new volumes in the SVM. Cannot be modified later. To update this parameter, you will need to create a new backend.	trident
aggregate	Aggregate for provisioning (optional; if set, must be assigned to the SVM). For the <code>ontap-nas-flexgroup</code> driver, this option is ignored. If not assigned, any of the available aggregates can be used to provision a FlexGroup volume. <div style="border: 1px solid #ccc; padding: 10px; margin-top: 10px;">  <p>When the aggregate is updated in SVM, it is updated in Trident automatically by polling SVM without having to restart the Trident Controller. When you have configured a specific aggregate in Trident to provision volumes, if the aggregate is renamed or moved out of the SVM, the backend will move to failed state in Trident while polling the SVM aggregate. You must either change the aggregate to one that is present on the SVM or remove it altogether to bring the backend back online.</p> </div>	""

Parameter	Description	Default
limitAggregateUsage	<p>Fail provisioning if usage is above this percentage.</p> <p>If you are using an Amazon FSx for NetApp ONTAP backend, do not specify <code>limitAggregateUsage</code>. The provided <code>fsxadmin</code> and <code>vsadmin</code> do not contain the permissions required to retrieve aggregate usage and limit it using Trident.</p>	"" (not enforced by default)
limitVolumeSize	<p>Fail provisioning if requested volume size is above this value.</p> <p>Also restricts the maximum size of the volumes it manages for LUNs.</p>	"" (not enforced by default)
lunsPerFlexvol	Maximum LUNs per Flexvol, must be in range [50, 200]	100
debugTraceFlags	<p>Debug flags to use when troubleshooting. Example, <code>{"api":false, "method":true}</code></p> <p>Do not use unless you are troubleshooting and require a detailed log dump.</p>	null
useREST	<p>Boolean parameter to use ONTAP REST APIs.</p> <p><code>useREST</code> When set to <code>true</code>, Trident uses ONTAP REST APIs to communicate with the backend; when set to <code>false</code>, Trident uses ONTAP ZAPI calls to communicate with the backend. This feature requires ONTAP 9.11.1 and later. In addition, the ONTAP login role used must have access to the <code>ontap</code> application. This is satisfied by the pre-defined <code>vsadmin</code> and <code>cluster-admin</code> roles. Beginning with the Trident 24.06 release and ONTAP 9.15.1 or later, <code>useREST</code> is set to <code>true</code> by default; change <code>useREST</code> to <code>false</code> to use ONTAP ZAPI calls.</p> <p><code>useREST</code> is fully qualified for NVMe/TCP.</p>	true for ONTAP 9.15.1 or later, otherwise false.
sanType	<p>Use to select <code>iscsi</code> for iSCSI, <code>nvme</code> for NVMe/TCP or <code>fcp</code> for SCSI over Fibre Channel (FC).</p> <p>'fcp' (SCSI over FC) is a tech preview feature in the Trident 24.10 release.</p>	iscsi if blank

Parameter	Description	Default
formatOptions	Use <code>formatOptions</code> to specify command line arguments for the <code>mkfs</code> command, which will be applied whenever a volume is formatted. This allows you to format the volume according to your preferences. Make sure to specify the <code>formatOptions</code> similar to that of the <code>mkfs</code> command options, excluding the device path. Example: <code>"-E nodiscard"</code> Supported for <code>ontap-san</code> and <code>ontap-san-economy</code> drivers only.	
limitVolumePoolSize	Maximum requestable FlexVol size when using LUNs in <code>ontap-san-economy</code> backend.	"" (not enforced by default)
denyNewVolumePools	Restricts <code>ontap-san-economy</code> backends from creating new FlexVol volumes to contain their LUNs. Only preexisting Flexvols are used for provisioning new PVs.	

Recommendations for using `formatOptions`

Trident recommends the following option to expedite the formatting process:

-E nodiscard:

- Keep, do not attempt to discard blocks at `mkfs` time (discarding blocks initially is useful on solid state devices and sparse / thin-provisioned storage). This replaces the deprecated option `"-K"` and it is applicable to all the file systems (`xfs`, `ext3`, and `ext4`).

Backend configuration options for provisioning volumes

You can control default provisioning using these options in the `defaults` section of the configuration. For an example, see the configuration examples below.

Parameter	Description	Default
spaceAllocation	Space-allocation for LUNs	"true"
spaceReserve	Space reservation mode; "none" (thin) or "volume" (thick)	"none"
snapshotPolicy	Snapshot policy to use	"none"

Parameter	Description	Default
qosPolicy	QoS policy group to assign for volumes created. Choose one of qosPolicy or adaptiveQosPolicy per storage pool/backend. Using QoS policy groups with Trident requires ONTAP 9.8 or later. You should use a non-shared QoS policy group and ensuring the policy group is applied to each constituent individually. A shared QoS policy group enforces the ceiling for the total throughput of all workloads.	""
adaptiveQosPolicy	Adaptive QoS policy group to assign for volumes created. Choose one of qosPolicy or adaptiveQosPolicy per storage pool/backend	""
snapshotReserve	Percentage of volume reserved for snapshots	"0" if snapshotPolicy is "none", otherwise ""
splitOnClone	Split a clone from its parent upon creation	"false"
encryption	Enable NetApp Volume Encryption (NVE) on the new volume; defaults to <code>false</code> . NVE must be licensed and enabled on the cluster to use this option. If NAE is enabled on the backend, any volume provisioned in Trident will be NAE enabled. For more information, refer to: How Trident works with NVE and NAE .	"false"
luksEncryption	Enable LUKS encryption. Refer to Use Linux Unified Key Setup (LUKS) . LUKS encryption is not supported for NVMe/TCP.	""
securityStyle	Security style for new volumes	unix
tieringPolicy	Tiering policy to use "none"	"snapshot-only" for pre-ONTAP 9.5 SVM-DR configuration
nameTemplate	Template to create custom volume names.	""

Volume provisioning examples

Here's an example with defaults defined:

```

---
version: 1
storageDriverName: ontap-san
managementLIF: 10.0.0.1
svm: trident_svm
username: admin
password: <password>
labels:
  k8scluster: dev2
  backend: dev2-sanbackend
storagePrefix: alternate-trident
debugTraceFlags:
  api: false
  method: true
defaults:
  spaceReserve: volume
  qosPolicy: standard
  spaceAllocation: 'false'
  snapshotPolicy: default
  snapshotReserve: '10'

```



For all volumes created using the `ontap-san` driver, Trident adds an extra 10 percent capacity to the FlexVol to accommodate the LUN metadata. The LUN will be provisioned with the exact size that the user requests in the PVC. Trident adds 10 percent to the FlexVol (shows as Available size in ONTAP). Users will now get the amount of usable capacity they requested. This change also prevents LUNs from becoming read-only unless the available space is fully utilized. This does not apply to `ontap-san-economy`.

For backends that define `snapshotReserve`, Trident calculates the size of volumes as follows:

$$\text{Total volume size} = [(\text{PVC requested size}) / (1 - (\text{snapshotReserve percentage} / 100))] * 1.1$$

The 1.1 is the extra 10 percent Trident adds to the FlexVol to accommodate the LUN metadata. For `snapshotReserve = 5%`, and `PVC request = 5GiB`, the total volume size is 5.79GiB and the available size is 5.5GiB. The `volume show` command should show results similar to this example:

Vserver	Volume	Aggregate	State	Type	Size	Available	Used%
		_pvc_89f1c156_3801_4de4_9f9d_034d54c395f4	online	RW	10GB	5.00GB	0%
		_pvc_e42ec6fe_3baa_4af6_996d_134adbbb8e6d	online	RW	5.79GB	5.50GB	0%
		_pvc_e8372153_9ad9_474a_951a_08ae15e1c0ba	online	RW	1GB	511.8MB	0%

3 entries were displayed.

Currently, resizing is the only way to use the new calculation for an existing volume.

Minimal configuration examples

The following examples show basic configurations that leave most parameters to default. This is the easiest way to define a backend.



If you are using Amazon FSx on NetApp ONTAP with Trident, we recommend you specify DNS names for LIFs instead of IP addresses.

ONTAP SAN example

This is a basic configuration using the `ontap-san` driver.

```
---
version: 1
storageDriverName: ontap-san
managementLIF: 10.0.0.1
svm: svm_iscsi
labels:
  k8scluster: test-cluster-1
  backend: testcluster1-sanbackend
username: vsadmin
password: <password>
```

ONTAP SAN economy example

```
---
version: 1
storageDriverName: ontap-san-economy
managementLIF: 10.0.0.1
svm: svm_iscsi_eco
username: vsadmin
password: <password>
```

1. example

You can configure the backend to avoid having to manually update the backend definition after switchover and switchback during [SVM replication and recovery](#).

For seamless switchover and switchback, specify the SVM using `managementLIF` and omit the `dataLIF` and `svm` parameters. For example:

```
---
version: 1
storageDriverName: ontap-san
managementLIF: 192.168.1.66
username: vsadmin
password: password
```

Certificate-based authentication example

In this basic configuration example `clientCertificate`, `clientPrivateKey`, and `trustedCACertificate` (optional, if using trusted CA) are populated in `backend.json` and take the base64-encoded values of the client certificate, private key, and trusted CA certificate, respectively.

```
---
version: 1
storageDriverName: ontap-san
backendName: DefaultSANBackend
managementLIF: 10.0.0.1
svm: svm_iscsi
useCHAP: true
chapInitiatorSecret: cl9qxIm36DKyawxy
chapTargetInitiatorSecret: rqxigXgkesIpwxyz
chapTargetUsername: iJF4heBRT0TCwxyz
chapUsername: uh2aNCLSD6cNwxyz
clientCertificate: ZXR0ZXJwYXB...ICMgJ3BhcGVyc2
clientPrivateKey: vciwKIyAgZG...0cnksIGRlc2NyaX
trustedCACertificate: zcyBbaG...b3Igb3duIGNsYXNz
```

Bidirectional CHAP examples

These examples create a backend with `useCHAP` set to `true`.

ONTAP SAN CHAP example

```
---
version: 1
storageDriverName: ontap-san
managementLIF: 10.0.0.1
svm: svm_iscsi
labels:
  k8scluster: test-cluster-1
  backend: testcluster1-sanbackend
useCHAP: true
chapInitiatorSecret: cl9qxIm36DKyawxy
chapTargetInitiatorSecret: rqxigXgkesIpwxyz
chapTargetUsername: iJF4heBRT0TCwxyz
chapUsername: uh2aNCLSD6cNwxyz
username: vsadmin
password: <password>
```

ONTAP SAN economy CHAP example

```
---
version: 1
storageDriverName: ontap-san-economy
managementLIF: 10.0.0.1
svm: svm_iscsi_eco
useCHAP: true
chapInitiatorSecret: cl9qxIm36DKyawxy
chapTargetInitiatorSecret: rqxigXgkesIpwxyz
chapTargetUsername: iJF4heBRT0TCwxyz
chapUsername: uh2aNCLSD6cNwxyz
username: vsadmin
password: <password>
```

NVMe/TCP example

You must have an SVM configured with NVMe on your ONTAP backend. This is a basic backend configuration for NVMe/TCP.

```
---
version: 1
backendName: NVMeBackend
storageDriverName: ontap-san
managementLIF: 10.0.0.1
svm: svm_nvme
username: vsadmin
password: password
sanType: nvme
useREST: true
```

Backend configuration example with nameTemplate

```
---
version: 1
storageDriverName: ontap-san
backendName: ontap-san-backend
managementLIF: <ip address>
svm: svm0
username: <admin>
password: <password>
defaults: {
  "nameTemplate":
    "{{.volume.Name}}_{{.labels.cluster}}_{{.volume.Namespace}}_{{.volume.RequestName}}"
},
"labels": {"cluster": "ClusterA", "PVC":
  "{{.volume.Namespace}}_{{.volume.RequestName}}"}
}
```

formatOptions example for ontap-san-economy driver

```
version: 1
storageDriverName: ontap-san-economy
managementLIF: ''
svm: svm1
username: ''
password: "!"
storagePrefix: whelk_
debugTraceFlags:
  method: true
  api: true
defaults:
  formatOptions: "-E nodiscard"
```

Examples of backends with virtual pools

In these sample backend definition files, specific defaults are set for all storage pools, such as `spaceReserve` at `none`, `spaceAllocation` at `false`, and `encryption` at `false`. The virtual pools are defined in the `storage` section.

Trident sets provisioning labels in the "Comments" field. Comments are set on the FlexVol. Trident copies all labels present on a virtual pool to the storage volume at provisioning. For convenience, storage administrators can define labels per virtual pool and group volumes by label.

In these examples, some of the storage pools set their own `spaceReserve`, `spaceAllocation`, and `encryption` values, and some pools override the default values.

ONTAP SAN example



```
---
version: 1
storageDriverName: ontap-san
managementLIF: 10.0.0.1
svm: svm_iscsi
useCHAP: true
chapInitiatorSecret: cl9qxIm36DKyawxy
chapTargetInitiatorSecret: rqxigXgkesIpwxyz
chapTargetUsername: iJF4heBRT0TCwxyz
chapUsername: uh2aNCLSD6cNwxyz
username: vsadmin
password: <password>
defaults:
  spaceAllocation: 'false'
  encryption: 'false'
  qosPolicy: standard
labels:
  store: san_store
  kubernetes-cluster: prod-cluster-1
region: us_east_1
storage:
- labels:
  protection: gold
  creditpoints: '40000'
  zone: us_east_1a
  defaults:
    spaceAllocation: 'true'
    encryption: 'true'
    adaptiveQosPolicy: adaptive-extreme
- labels:
  protection: silver
  creditpoints: '20000'
  zone: us_east_1b
  defaults:
    spaceAllocation: 'false'
    encryption: 'true'
    qosPolicy: premium
- labels:
  protection: bronze
  creditpoints: '5000'
  zone: us_east_1c
  defaults:
    spaceAllocation: 'true'
    encryption: 'false'
```

ONTAP SAN economy example

```
---
version: 1
storageDriverName: ontap-san-economy
managementLIF: 10.0.0.1
svm: svm_iscsi_eco
useCHAP: true
chapInitiatorSecret: cl9qxIm36DKyawxy
chapTargetInitiatorSecret: rqxigXgkesIpwxyz
chapTargetUsername: iJF4heBRT0TCwxyz
chapUsername: uh2aNCLSD6cNwxyz
username: vsadmin
password: <password>
defaults:
  spaceAllocation: 'false'
  encryption: 'false'
labels:
  store: san_economy_store
region: us_east_1
storage:
- labels:
  app: oracledb
  cost: '30'
  zone: us_east_1a
  defaults:
    spaceAllocation: 'true'
    encryption: 'true'
- labels:
  app: postgresdb
  cost: '20'
  zone: us_east_1b
  defaults:
    spaceAllocation: 'false'
    encryption: 'true'
- labels:
  app: mysqldb
  cost: '10'
  zone: us_east_1c
  defaults:
    spaceAllocation: 'true'
    encryption: 'false'
- labels:
  department: legal
  creditpoints: '5000'
  zone: us_east_1c
```

```
defaults:
  spaceAllocation: 'true'
  encryption: 'false'
```

NVMe/TCP example

```
---
version: 1
storageDriverName: ontap-san
sanType: nvme
managementLIF: 10.0.0.1
svm: nvme_svm
username: vsadmin
password: <password>
useREST: true
defaults:
  spaceAllocation: 'false'
  encryption: 'true'
storage:
- labels:
  app: testApp
  cost: '20'
  defaults:
    spaceAllocation: 'false'
    encryption: 'false'
```

Map backends to StorageClasses

The following StorageClass definitions refer to the [Examples of backends with virtual pools](#). Using the `parameters.selector` field, each StorageClass calls out which virtual pools can be used to host a volume. The volume will have the aspects defined in the chosen virtual pool.

- The `protection-gold` StorageClass will map to the first virtual pool in the `ontap-san` backend. This is the only pool offering gold-level protection.

```
apiVersion: storage.k8s.io/v1
kind: StorageClass
metadata:
  name: protection-gold
provisioner: csi.trident.netapp.io
parameters:
  selector: "protection=gold"
  fsType: "ext4"
```


- The `protection-not-gold` StorageClass will map to the second and third virtual pool in `ontap-san` backend. These are the only pools offering a protection level other than gold.

```
apiVersion: storage.k8s.io/v1
kind: StorageClass
metadata:
  name: protection-not-gold
provisioner: csi.trident.netapp.io
parameters:
  selector: "protection!=gold"
  fsType: "ext4"
```

- The `app-mysqldb` StorageClass will map to the third virtual pool in `ontap-san-economy` backend. This is the only pool offering storage pool configuration for the `mysqldb` type app.

```
apiVersion: storage.k8s.io/v1
kind: StorageClass
metadata:
  name: app-mysqldb
provisioner: csi.trident.netapp.io
parameters:
  selector: "app=mysqldb"
  fsType: "ext4"
```

- The `protection-silver-creditpoints-20k` StorageClass will map to the second virtual pool in `ontap-san` backend. This is the only pool offering silver-level protection and 20000 creditpoints.

```
apiVersion: storage.k8s.io/v1
kind: StorageClass
metadata:
  name: protection-silver-creditpoints-20k
provisioner: csi.trident.netapp.io
parameters:
  selector: "protection=silver; creditpoints=20000"
  fsType: "ext4"
```

- The `creditpoints-5k` StorageClass will map to the third virtual pool in `ontap-san` backend and the fourth virtual pool in the `ontap-san-economy` backend. These are the only pool offerings with 5000 creditpoints.

```

apiVersion: storage.k8s.io/v1
kind: StorageClass
metadata:
  name: creditpoints-5k
provisioner: csi.trident.netapp.io
parameters:
  selector: "creditpoints=5000"
  fsType: "ext4"

```

- The my-test-app-sc StorageClass will map to the testAPP virtual pool in the ontap-san driver with sanType: nvme. This is the only pool offering testApp.

```

---
apiVersion: storage.k8s.io/v1
kind: StorageClass
metadata:
  name: my-test-app-sc
provisioner: csi.trident.netapp.io
parameters:
  selector: "app=testApp"
  fsType: "ext4"

```

Trident will decide which virtual pool is selected and ensures the storage requirement is met.

ONTAP NAS drivers

ONTAP NAS driver overview

Learn about configuring an ONTAP backend with ONTAP and Cloud Volumes ONTAP NAS drivers.

ONTAP NAS driver details

Trident provides the following NAS storage drivers to communicate with the ONTAP cluster. Supported access modes are: *ReadWriteOnce* (RWO), *ReadOnlyMany* (ROX), *ReadWriteMany* (RWX), *ReadWriteOncePod* (RWOP).

Driver	Protocol	volumeMode	Access modes supported	File systems supported
ontap-nas	NFS SMB	Filesystem	RWO, ROX, RWX, RWOP	"", nfs, smb
ontap-nas-economy	NFS SMB	Filesystem	RWO, ROX, RWX, RWOP	"", nfs, smb

Driver	Protocol	volumeMode	Access modes supported	File systems supported
ontap-nas-flexgroup	NFS SMB	Filesystem	RWO, ROX, RWX, RWOP	"" , nfs, smb



- Use `ontap-san-economy` only if persistent volume usage count is expected to be higher than [supported ONTAP volume limits](#).
- Use `ontap-nas-economy` only if persistent volume usage count is expected to be higher than [supported ONTAP volume limits](#) and the `ontap-san-economy` driver cannot be used.
- Do not use `ontap-nas-economy` if you anticipate the need for data protection, disaster recovery, or mobility.

User permissions

Trident expects to be run as either an ONTAP or SVM administrator, typically using the `admin` cluster user or a `vsadmin` SVM user, or a user with a different name that has the same role.

For Amazon FSx for NetApp ONTAP deployments, Trident expects to be run as either an ONTAP or SVM administrator, using the cluster `fsxadmin` user or a `vsadmin` SVM user, or a user with a different name that has the same role. The `fsxadmin` user is a limited replacement for the cluster admin user.



If you use the `limitAggregateUsage` parameter, cluster admin permissions are required. When using Amazon FSx for NetApp ONTAP with Trident, the `limitAggregateUsage` parameter will not work with the `vsadmin` and `fsxadmin` user accounts. The configuration operation will fail if you specify this parameter.

While it is possible to create a more restrictive role within ONTAP that a Trident driver can use, we don't recommend it. Most new releases of Trident will call additional APIs that would have to be accounted for, making upgrades difficult and error-prone.

Prepare to configure a backend with ONTAP NAS drivers

Understand the requirements, authentication options, and export policies for configuring an ONTAP backend with ONTAP NAS drivers.

Requirements

- For all ONTAP backends, Trident requires at least one aggregate assigned to the SVM.
- You can run more than one driver, and create storage classes that point to one or the other. For example, you could configure a Gold class that uses the `ontap-nas` driver and a Bronze class that uses the `ontap-nas-economy` one.
- All your Kubernetes worker nodes must have the appropriate NFS tools installed. Refer to [here](#) for more details.
- Trident supports SMB volumes mounted to pods running on Windows nodes only. Refer to [Prepare to provision SMB volumes](#) for details.

Authenticate the ONTAP backend

Trident offers two modes of authenticating an ONTAP backend.

- **Credential-based:** This mode requires sufficient permissions to the ONTAP backend. It is recommended to use an account associated with a pre-defined security login role, such as `admin` or `vsadmin` to ensure maximum compatibility with ONTAP versions.
- **Certificate-based:** This mode requires a certificate installed on the backend for Trident to communicate with an ONTAP cluster. Here, the backend definition must contain Base64-encoded values of the client certificate, key, and the trusted CA certificate if used (recommended).

You can update existing backends to move between credential-based and certificate-based methods. However, only one authentication method is supported at a time. To switch to a different authentication method, you must remove the existing method from the backend configuration.



If you attempt to provide **both credentials and certificates**, backend creation will fail with an error that more than one authentication method was provided in the configuration file.

Enable credential-based authentication

Trident requires the credentials to an SVM-scoped/cluster-scoped admin to communicate with the ONTAP backend. It is recommended to make use of standard, pre-defined roles such as `admin` or `vsadmin`. This ensures forward compatibility with future ONTAP releases that might expose feature APIs to be used by future Trident releases. A custom security login role can be created and used with Trident, but is not recommended.

A sample backend definition will look like this:

YAML

```
---
version: 1
backendName: ExampleBackend
storageDriverName: ontap-nas
managementLIF: 10.0.0.1
dataLIF: 10.0.0.2
svm: svm_nfs
username: vsadmin
password: password
```

JSON

```
{
  "version": 1,
  "backendName": "ExampleBackend",
  "storageDriverName": "ontap-nas",
  "managementLIF": "10.0.0.1",
  "dataLIF": "10.0.0.2",
  "svm": "svm_nfs",
  "username": "vsadmin",
  "password": "password"
}
```

Keep in mind that the backend definition is the only place the credentials are stored in plain text. After the backend is created, usernames/passwords are encoded with Base64 and stored as Kubernetes secrets. The creation/updation of a backend is the only step that requires knowledge of the credentials. As such, it is an admin-only operation, to be performed by the Kubernetes/storage administrator.

Enable certificate-based Authentication

New and existing backends can use a certificate and communicate with the ONTAP backend. Three parameters are required in the backend definition.

- `clientCertificate`: Base64-encoded value of client certificate.
- `clientPrivateKey`: Base64-encoded value of associated private key.
- `trustedCACertificate`: Base64-encoded value of trusted CA certificate. If using a trusted CA, this parameter must be provided. This can be ignored if no trusted CA is used.

A typical workflow involves the following steps.

Steps

1. Generate a client certificate and key. When generating, set Common Name (CN) to the ONTAP user to authenticate as.

```
openssl req -x509 -nodes -days 1095 -newkey rsa:2048 -keyout k8senv.key
-out k8senv.pem -subj "/C=US/ST=NC/L=RTP/O=NetApp/CN=vsadmin"
```

2. Add trusted CA certificate to the ONTAP cluster. This might be already handled by the storage administrator. Ignore if no trusted CA is used.

```
security certificate install -type server -cert-name <trusted-ca-cert-
name> -vserver <vserver-name>
ssl modify -vserver <vserver-name> -server-enabled true -client-enabled
true -common-name <common-name> -serial <SN-from-trusted-CA-cert> -ca
<cert-authority>
```

3. Install the client certificate and key (from step 1) on the ONTAP cluster.

```
security certificate install -type client-ca -cert-name <certificate-
name> -vserver <vserver-name>
security ssl modify -vserver <vserver-name> -client-enabled true
```

4. Confirm the ONTAP security login role supports cert authentication method.

```
security login create -user-or-group-name vsadmin -application ontapi
-authentication-method cert -vserver <vserver-name>
security login create -user-or-group-name vsadmin -application http
-authentication-method cert -vserver <vserver-name>
```

5. Test authentication using certificate generated. Replace <ONTAP Management LIF> and <vserver name> with Management LIF IP and SVM name. You must ensure the LIF has its service policy set to default-data-management.

```
curl -X POST -Lk https://<ONTAP-Management-
LIF>/servlets/netapp.servlets.admin.XMLrequest_filer --key k8senv.key
--cert ~/k8senv.pem -d '<?xml version="1.0" encoding="UTF-8"?><netapp
xmlns="http://www.netapp.com/filer/admin" version="1.21"
vfiler="<vserver-name>"><vserver-get></vserver-get></netapp>'
```

6. Encode certificate, key and trusted CA certificate with Base64.

```
base64 -w 0 k8senv.pem >> cert_base64
base64 -w 0 k8senv.key >> key_base64
base64 -w 0 trustedca.pem >> trustedca_base64
```

7. Create backend using the values obtained from the previous step.

```
cat cert-backend-updated.json
{
  "version": 1,
  "storageDriverName": "ontap-nas",
  "backendName": "NasBackend",
  "managementLIF": "1.2.3.4",
  "dataLIF": "1.2.3.8",
  "svm": "vserver_test",
  "clientCertificate": "Faaaakkkkeeee...Vaaalllluueeee",
  "clientPrivateKey": "LS0tFaKE...0VaLuES0tLS0K",
  "storagePrefix": "myPrefix_"
}

#Update backend with tridentctl
tridentctl update backend NasBackend -f cert-backend-updated.json -n
trident
+-----+-----+-----+-----+
+-----+-----+
|   NAME   | STORAGE DRIVER |           UUID           |
STATE | VOLUMES |
+-----+-----+-----+-----+
+-----+-----+
| NasBackend | ontap-nas      | 98e19b74-aec7-4a3d-8dcf-128e5033b214 |
online |          9 |
+-----+-----+-----+-----+
+-----+-----+
```

Update authentication methods or rotate credentials

You can update an existing backend to use a different authentication method or to rotate their credentials. This works both ways: backends that make use of username/password can be updated to use certificates; backends that utilize certificates can be updated to username/password based. To do this, you must remove the existing authentication method and add the new authentication method. Then use the updated backend.json file containing the required parameters to execute `tridentctl update backend`.

```

cat cert-backend-updated.json
{
"version": 1,
"storageDriverName": "ontap-nas",
"backendName": "NasBackend",
"managementLIF": "1.2.3.4",
"dataLIF": "1.2.3.8",
"svm": "vserver_test",
"username": "vsadmin",
"password": "password",
"storagePrefix": "myPrefix_"
}

#Update backend with tridentctl
tridentctl update backend NasBackend -f cert-backend-updated.json -n
trident
+-----+-----+-----+-----+
+-----+-----+
|   NAME   | STORAGE DRIVER |           UUID           |
STATE | VOLUMES |
+-----+-----+-----+-----+
+-----+-----+
| NasBackend | ontap-nas      | 98e19b74-aec7-4a3d-8dcf-128e5033b214 |
online |      9 |
+-----+-----+-----+-----+
+-----+-----+

```



When rotating passwords, the storage administrator must first update the password for the user on ONTAP. This is followed by a backend update. When rotating certificates, multiple certificates can be added to the user. The backend is then updated to use the new certificate, following which the old certificate can be deleted from the ONTAP cluster.

Updating a backend does not disrupt access to volumes that have already been created, nor impact volume connections made after. A successful backend update indicates that Trident can communicate with the ONTAP backend and handle future volume operations.

Create custom ONTAP role for Trident

You can create an ONTAP cluster role with minimum privileges so that you do not have to use the ONTAP admin role to perform operations in Trident. When you include the username in a Trident backend configuration, Trident uses the ONTAP cluster role you created to perform the operations.

Refer to [Trident custom-role generator](#) for more information about creating Trident custom roles.

Using ONTAP CLI

1. Create a new role using the following command:

```
security login role create <role_name\> -cmddirname "command" -access all  
-vserver <svm_name\>
```

2. Create a username for the Trident user:

```
security login create -username <user_name\> -application ontapi  
-authmethod <password\> -role <name_of_role_in_step_1\> -vserver  
<svm_name\> -comment "user_description"
```

3. Map the role to the user:

```
security login modify username <user_name\> -vserver <svm_name\> -role  
<role_name\> -application ontapi -application console -authmethod  
<password\>
```

Using System Manager

Perform the following steps in ONTAP System Manager:

1. **Create a custom role:**

- a. To create a custom role at the cluster-level, select **Cluster > Settings**.

(Or) To create a custom role at the SVM level, select **Storage > Storage VMs > required SVM > Settings > Users and Roles**.

- b. Select the arrow icon (→) next to **Users and Roles**.
- c. Select **+Add** under **Roles**.
- d. Define the rules for the role and click **Save**.

2. **Map the role to the Trident user:**

+ Perform the following steps on the **Users and Roles** page:

- a. Select Add icon **+** under **Users**.
- b. Select the required username, and select a role in the drop-down menu for **Role**.
- c. Click **Save**.

Refer to the following pages for more information:

- [Custom roles for administration of ONTAP](#) or [Define custom roles](#)
- [Work with roles and users](#)

Manage NFS export policies

Trident uses NFS export policies to control access to the volumes that it provisions.

Trident provides two options when working with export policies:

- Trident can dynamically manage the export policy itself; in this mode of operation, the storage administrator

specifies a list of CIDR blocks that represent admissible IP addresses. Trident adds applicable node IPs that fall in these ranges to the export policy automatically at publish time. Alternatively, when no CIDRs are specified, all global-scoped unicast IPs found on the node that the volume being published to will be added to the export policy.

- Storage administrators can create an export policy and add rules manually. Trident uses the default export policy unless a different export policy name is specified in the configuration.

Dynamically manage export policies

Trident provides the ability to dynamically manage export policies for ONTAP backends. This provides the storage administrator the ability to specify a permissible address space for worker node IPs, rather than defining explicit rules manually. It greatly simplifies export policy management; modifications to the export policy no longer require manual intervention on the storage cluster. Moreover, this helps restrict access to the storage cluster only to worker nodes that are mounting volumes and have IPs in the range specified, supporting a fine-grained and automated management.



Do not use Network Address Translation (NAT) when using dynamic export policies. With NAT, the storage controller sees the frontend NAT address and not the actual IP host address, so access will be denied when no match is found in the export rules.



In Trident 24.10, `ontap-nas` storage driver will continue to work as in the earlier releases; no change has been made for `ontap-nas` driver. Only the `ontap-nas-economy` storage driver will have volume based granular access control in Trident 24.10.

Example

There are two configuration options that must be used. Here's an example backend definition:

```
---
version: 1
storageDriverName: ontap-nas-economy
backendName: ontap_nas_auto_export
managementLIF: 192.168.0.135
svm: svm1
username: vsadmin
password: password
autoExportCIDRs:
- 192.168.0.0/24
autoExportPolicy: true
```



When using this feature, you must ensure that the root junction in your SVM has a previously created export policy with an export rule that permits the node CIDR block (such as the default export policy). Always follow NetApp recommended best practice to dedicate an SVM for Trident.

Here is an explanation of how this feature works using the example above:

- `autoExportPolicy` is set to `true`. This indicates that Trident creates an export policy for each volume provisioned with this backend for the `svm1` SVM and handle the addition and deletion of rules using

`autoexportCIDRs` address blocks. Until a volume is attached to a node, the volume uses an empty export policy with no rules to prevent unwanted access to that volume. When a volume is published to a node Trident creates an export policy with the same name as the underlying qtree containing the node IP within the specified CIDR block. These IPs will also be added to the export policy used by the parent FlexVol.

- For example:

- backend UUID 403b5326-8482-40db-96d0-d83fb3f4daec
- `autoExportPolicy` set to `true`
- storage prefix `trident`
- PVC UUID a79bcf5f-7b6d-4a40-9876-e2551f159c1c
- qtree named `trident_pvc_a79bcf5f_7b6d_4a40_9876_e2551f159c1c` creates an export policy for the FlexVol named `trident-403b5326-8482-40db96d0-d83fb3f4daec`, an export policy for the qtree named `trident_pvc_a79bcf5f_7b6d_4a40_9876_e2551f159c1c`, and an empty export policy named `trident_empty` on the SVM. The rules for the FlexVol export policy will be a superset of any rules contained in the qtree export policies. The empty export policy will be reused by any volumes that are not attached.

- `autoExportCIDRs` contains a list of address blocks. This field is optional and it defaults to `["0.0.0.0/0", "::/0"]`. If not defined, Trident adds all globally-scoped unicast addresses found on the worker nodes with publications.

In this example, the `192.168.0.0/24` address space is provided. This indicates that Kubernetes node IPs that fall within this address range with publications will be added to the export policy that Trident creates. When Trident registers a node it runs on, it retrieves the IP addresses of the node and checks them against the address blocks provided in `autoExportCIDRs`. At publish time, after filtering the IPs, Trident creates the export policy rules for the client IPs for the node it is publishing to.

You can update `autoExportPolicy` and `autoExportCIDRs` for backends after you create them. You can append new CIDRs for a backend that is automatically managed or delete existing CIDRs. Exercise care when deleting CIDRs to ensure that existing connections are not dropped. You can also choose to disable `autoExportPolicy` for a backend and fall back to a manually created export policy. This will require setting the `exportPolicy` parameter in your backend config.

After Trident creates or updates a backend, you can check the backend using `tridentctl` or the corresponding `tridentbackend` CRD:

```

./tridentctl get backends ontap_nas_auto_export -n trident -o yaml
items:
- backendUUID: 403b5326-8482-40db-96d0-d83fb3f4daec
  config:
    aggregate: ""
    autoExportCIDRs:
    - 192.168.0.0/24
    autoExportPolicy: true
    backendName: ontap_nas_auto_export
    chapInitiatorSecret: ""
    chapTargetInitiatorSecret: ""
    chapTargetUsername: ""
    chapUsername: ""
    dataLIF: 192.168.0.135
    debug: false
    debugTraceFlags: null
    defaults:
      encryption: "false"
      exportPolicy: <automatic>
      fileType: ext4

```

When a node is removed, Trident checks all export policies to remove the access rules corresponding to the node. By removing this node IP from the export policies of managed backends, Trident prevents rogue mounts, unless this IP is reused by a new node in the cluster.

For previously existing backends, updating the backend with `tridentctl update backend` ensures that Trident manages the export policies automatically. This creates two new export policies named after the backend's UUID and qtree name when they are needed. Volumes that are present on the backend will use the newly created export policies after they are unmounted and mounted again.



Deleting a backend with auto-managed export policies will delete the dynamically created export policy. If the backend is re-created, it is treated as a new backend and will result in the creation of a new export policy.

If the IP address of a live node is updated, you must restart the Trident pod on the node. Trident will then update the export policy for backends it manages to reflect this IP change.

Prepare to provision SMB volumes

With a little additional preparation, you can provision SMB volumes using `ontap-nas` drivers.



You must configure both NFS and SMB/CIFS protocols on the SVM to create an `ontap-nas-economy` SMB volume for ONTAP on-premises. Failure to configure either of these protocols will cause SMB volume creation to fail.



`autoExportPolicy` is not supported for SMB volumes.

Before you begin

Before you can provision SMB volumes, you must have the following.

- A Kubernetes cluster with a Linux controller node and at least one Windows worker node running Windows Server 2022. Trident supports SMB volumes mounted to pods running on Windows nodes only.
- At least one Trident secret containing your Active Directory credentials. To generate secret `smbcreds`:

```
kubectl create secret generic smbcreds --from-literal username=user
--from-literal password='password'
```

- A CSI proxy configured as a Windows service. To configure a `csi-proxy`, refer to [GitHub: CSI Proxy](#) or [GitHub: CSI Proxy for Windows](#) for Kubernetes nodes running on Windows.

Steps

1. For on-premises ONTAP, you can optionally create an SMB share or Trident can create one for you.



SMB shares are required for Amazon FSx for ONTAP.

You can create the SMB admin shares in one of two ways either using the [Microsoft Management Console Shared Folders snap-in](#) or using the ONTAP CLI. To create the SMB shares using the ONTAP CLI:

- a. If necessary, create the directory path structure for the share.

The `vserver cifs share create` command checks the path specified in the `-path` option during share creation. If the specified path does not exist, the command fails.

- b. Create an SMB share associated with the specified SVM:

```
vserver cifs share create -vserver vserver_name -share-name
share_name -path path [-share-properties share_properties,...]
[other_attributes] [-comment text]
```

- c. Verify that the share was created:

```
vserver cifs share show -share-name share_name
```



Refer to [Create an SMB share](#) for full details.

2. When creating the backend, you must configure the following to specify SMB volumes. For all FSx for ONTAP backend configuration options, refer to [FSx for ONTAP configuration options and examples](#).

Parameter	Description	Example
smbShare	You can specify one of the following: the name of an SMB share created using the Microsoft Management Console or ONTAP CLI; a name to allow Trident to create the SMB share; or you can leave the parameter blank to prevent common share access to volumes. This parameter is optional for on-premises ONTAP. This parameter is required for Amazon FSx for ONTAP backends and cannot be blank.	smb-share
nasType	Must set to smb. If null, defaults to nfs.	smb
securityStyle	Security style for new volumes. Must be set to ntfs or mixed for SMB volumes.	ntfs or mixed for SMB volumes
unixPermissions	Mode for new volumes. Must be left empty for SMB volumes.	""

ONTAP NAS configuration options and examples



Learn to create and use ONTAP NAS drivers with your Trident installation. This section provides backend configuration examples and details for mapping backends to StorageClasses.


Backend configuration options

See the following table for the backend configuration options:

Parameter	Description	Default
version		Always 1
storageDriverName	Name of the storage driver	"ontap-nas", "ontap-nas-economy", "ontap-nas-flexgroup", "ontap-san", "ontap-san-economy"
backendName	Custom name or the storage backend	Driver name + "_" + dataLIF

Parameter	Description	Default
managementLIF	<p>IP address of a cluster or SVM management LIF</p> <p>A fully-qualified domain name (FQDN) can be specified.</p> <p>Can be set to use IPv6 addresses if Trident was installed using the IPv6 flag. IPv6 addresses must be defined in square brackets, such as [28e8:d9fb:a825:b7bf:69a8:d02f:9e7b:3555].</p> <p>For seamless MetroCluster switchover, see the [mcc-best].</p>	"10.0.0.1", "[2001:1234:abcd::fefe]"
dataLIF	<p>IP address of protocol LIF.</p> <p>We recommend specifying dataLIF. If not provided, Trident fetches data LIFs from the SVM. You can specify a fully-qualified domain name (FQDN) to be used for the NFS mount operations, allowing you to create a round-robin DNS to load-balance across multiple data LIFs.</p> <p>Can be changed after initial setting. Refer to Update dataLIF after initial configuration.</p> <p>Can be set to use IPv6 addresses if Trident was installed using the IPv6 flag. IPv6 addresses must be defined in square brackets, such as [28e8:d9fb:a825:b7bf:69a8:d02f:9e7b:3555].</p> <p>Omit for Metrocluster. See the [mcc-best].</p>	Specified address or derived from SVM, if not specified (not recommended)
svm	<p>Storage virtual machine to use</p> <p>Omit for Metrocluster. See the [mcc-best].</p>	Derived if an SVM managementLIF is specified
autoExportPolicy	<p>Enable automatic export policy creation and updating [Boolean].</p> <p>Using the autoExportPolicy and autoExportCIDRs options, Trident can manage export policies automatically.</p>	false
autoExportCIDRs	<p>List of CIDRs to filter Kubernetes' node IPs against when autoExportPolicy is enabled.</p> <p>Using the autoExportPolicy and autoExportCIDRs options, Trident can manage export policies automatically.</p>	["0.0.0.0/0", ":::0"]

Parameter	Description	Default
labels	Set of arbitrary JSON-formatted labels to apply on volumes	""
clientCertificate	Base64-encoded value of client certificate. Used for certificate-based auth	""
clientPrivateKey	Base64-encoded value of client private key. Used for certificate-based auth	""
trustedCACertificate	Base64-encoded value of trusted CA certificate. Optional. Used for certificate-based auth	""
username	Username to connect to the cluster/SVM. Used for credential-based auth	
password	Password to connect to the cluster/SVM. Used for credential-based auth	
storagePrefix	<p>Prefix used when provisioning new volumes in the SVM. Cannot be updated after you set it</p> <div style="border: 1px solid #ccc; padding: 5px; margin-top: 10px;">  <p>When using <code>ontap-nas-economy</code> and a <code>storagePrefix</code> that is 24 or more characters, the <code>qtrees</code> will not have the storage prefix embedded, though it will be in the volume name.</p> </div>	"trident"
aggregate	<p>Aggregate for provisioning (optional; if set, must be assigned to the SVM). For the <code>ontap-nas-flexgroup</code> driver, this option is ignored. If not assigned, any of the available aggregates can be used to provision a FlexGroup volume.</p> <div style="border: 1px solid #ccc; padding: 5px; margin-top: 10px;">  <p>When the aggregate is updated in SVM, it is updated in Trident automatically by polling SVM without having to restart the Trident Controller. When you have configured a specific aggregate in Trident to provision volumes, if the aggregate is renamed or moved out of the SVM, the backend will move to failed state in Trident while polling the SVM aggregate. You must either change the aggregate to one that is present on the SVM or remove it altogether to bring the backend back online.</p> </div>	""
limitAggregateUsage	<p>Fail provisioning if usage is above this percentage.</p> <p>Does not apply to Amazon FSx for ONTAP</p>	"" (not enforced by default)

Parameter	Description	Default
flexgroupAggregateList	<p>List of aggregates for provisioning (optional; if set, must be assigned to the SVM). All aggregates assigned to the SVM are used to provision a FlexGroup volume. Supported for the ontap-nas-flexgroup storage driver.</p> <div style="border: 1px solid #ccc; padding: 10px; margin-top: 10px;">  <p>When the aggregate list is updated in SVM, the list is updated in Trident automatically by polling SVM without having to restart the Trident Controller. When you have configured a specific aggregate list in Trident to provision volumes, if the aggregate list is renamed or moved out of SVM, the backend will move to failed state in Trident while polling the SVM aggregate. You must either change the aggregate list to one that is present on the SVM or remove it altogether to bring the backend back online.</p> </div>	""
limitVolumeSize	<p>Fail provisioning if requested volume size is above this value.</p> <p>Also restricts the maximum size of the volumes it manages for qtrees, and the <code>qtreesPerFlexvol</code> option allows customizing the maximum number of qtrees per FlexVol.</p>	"" (not enforced by default)
debugTraceFlags	<p>Debug flags to use when troubleshooting. Example, <code>{"api":false, "method":true}</code></p> <p>Do not use <code>debugTraceFlags</code> unless you are troubleshooting and require a detailed log dump.</p>	null
nasType	<p>Configure NFS or SMB volumes creation.</p> <p>Options are <code>nfs</code>, <code>smb</code> or <code>null</code>. Setting to <code>null</code> defaults to NFS volumes.</p>	<code>nfs</code>
nfsMountOptions	<p>Comma-separated list of NFS mount options.</p> <p>The mount options for Kubernetes-persistent volumes are normally specified in storage classes, but if no mount options are specified in a storage class, Trident will fall back to using the mount options specified in the storage backend's configuration file.</p> <p>If no mount options are specified in the storage class or the configuration file, Trident will not set any mount options on an associated persistent volume.</p>	""

Parameter	Description	Default
qtreesPerFlexvol	Maximum Qtrees per FlexVol, must be in range [50, 300]	"200"
smbShare	You can specify one of the following: the name of an SMB share created using the Microsoft Management Console or ONTAP CLI; a name to allow Trident to create the SMB share; or you can leave the parameter blank to prevent common share access to volumes. This parameter is optional for on-premises ONTAP. This parameter is required for Amazon FSx for ONTAP backends and cannot be blank.	smb-share
useREST	Boolean parameter to use ONTAP REST APIs. useREST When set to <code>true</code> , Trident uses ONTAP REST APIs to communicate with the backend; when set to <code>false</code> , Trident uses ONTAP ZAPI calls to communicate with the backend. This feature requires ONTAP 9.11.1 and later. In addition, the ONTAP login role used must have access to the <code>ontap</code> application. This is satisfied by the pre-defined <code>vsadmin</code> and <code>cluster-admin</code> roles. Beginning with the Trident 24.06 release and ONTAP 9.15.1 or later, <code>useREST</code> is set to <code>true</code> by default; change <code>useREST</code> to <code>false</code> to use ONTAP ZAPI calls.	<code>true</code> for ONTAP 9.15.1 or later, otherwise <code>false</code> .
limitVolumePoolSize	Maximum requestable FlexVol size when using Qtrees in <code>ontap-nas-economy</code> backend.	"" (not enforced by default)
denyNewVolumePools	Restricts <code>ontap-nas-economy</code> backends from creating new FlexVol volumes to contain their Qtrees. Only preexisting Flexvols are used for provisioning new PVs.	

Backend configuration options for provisioning volumes

You can control default provisioning using these options in the `defaults` section of the configuration. For an example, see the configuration examples below.

Parameter	Description	Default
spaceAllocation	Space-allocation for Qtrees	"true"
spaceReserve	Space reservation mode; "none" (thin) or "volume" (thick)	"none"
snapshotPolicy	Snapshot policy to use	"none"

Parameter	Description	Default
qosPolicy	QoS policy group to assign for volumes created. Choose one of qosPolicy or adaptiveQosPolicy per storage pool/backend	""
adaptiveQosPolicy	Adaptive QoS policy group to assign for volumes created. Choose one of qosPolicy or adaptiveQosPolicy per storage pool/backend. Not supported by ontap-nas-economy.	""
snapshotReserve	Percentage of volume reserved for snapshots	"0" if snapshotPolicy is "none", otherwise ""
splitOnClone	Split a clone from its parent upon creation	"false"
encryption	Enable NetApp Volume Encryption (NVE) on the new volume; defaults to <code>false</code> . NVE must be licensed and enabled on the cluster to use this option. If NAE is enabled on the backend, any volume provisioned in Trident will be NAE enabled. For more information, refer to: How Trident works with NVE and NAE .	"false"
tieringPolicy	Tiering policy to use "none"	"snapshot-only" for pre-ONTAP 9.5 SVM-DR configuration
unixPermissions	Mode for new volumes	"777" for NFS volumes; empty (not applicable) for SMB volumes
snapshotDir	Controls access to the <code>.snapshot</code> directory	"true" for NFSv4 "false" for NFSv3
exportPolicy	Export policy to use	"default"
securityStyle	Security style for new volumes. NFS supports <code>mixed</code> and <code>unix</code> security styles. SMB supports <code>mixed</code> and <code>ntfs</code> security styles.	NFS default is <code>unix</code> . SMB default is <code>ntfs</code> .
nameTemplate	Template to create custom volume names.	""



Using QoS policy groups with Trident requires ONTAP 9.8 or later. You should use a non-shared QoS policy group and ensure the policy group is applied to each constituent individually. A shared QoS policy group enforces the ceiling for the total throughput of all workloads.

Volume provisioning examples

Here's an example with defaults defined:

```

---
version: 1
storageDriverName: ontap-nas
backendName: customBackendName
managementLIF: 10.0.0.1
dataLIF: 10.0.0.2
labels:
  k8scluster: dev1
  backend: dev1-nasbackend
svm: trident_svm
username: cluster-admin
password: <password>
limitAggregateUsage: 80%
limitVolumeSize: 50Gi
nfsMountOptions: nfsvers=4
debugTraceFlags:
  api: false
  method: true
defaults:
  spaceReserve: volume
  qosPolicy: premium
  exportPolicy: myk8scluster
  snapshotPolicy: default
  snapshotReserve: '10'

```

For `ontap-nas` and `ontap-nas-flexgroups`, Trident now uses a new calculation to ensure that the FlexVol is sized correctly with the `snapshotReserve` percentage and PVC. When the user requests a PVC, Trident creates the original FlexVol with more space by using the new calculation. This calculation ensures that the user receives the writable space they requested for in the PVC, and not lesser space than what they requested. Before v21.07, when the user requests a PVC (for example, 5GiB), with the `snapshotReserve` to 50 percent, they get only 2.5GiB of writeable space. This is because what the user requested for is the whole volume and `snapshotReserve` is a percentage of that. With Trident 21.07, what the user requests for is the writeable space and Trident defines the `snapshotReserve` number as the percentage of the whole volume. This does not apply to `ontap-nas-economy`. See the following example to see how this works:

The calculation is as follows:

```

Total volume size = (PVC requested size) / (1 - (snapshotReserve
percentage) / 100)

```

For `snapshotReserve = 50%`, and `PVC request = 5GiB`, the total volume size is $2/5 = 10\text{GiB}$ and the available size is 5GiB, which is what the user requested in the PVC request. The `volume show` command should show results similar to this example:

Vserver	Volume	Aggregate	State	Type	Size	Available	Used%
	_pvc_89f1c156_3801_4de4_9f9d_034d54c395f4		online	RW	10GB	5.00GB	0%
	_pvc_e8372153_9ad9_474a_951a_08ae15e1c0ba		online	RW	1GB	511.8MB	0%

2 entries were displayed.

Existing backends from previous installs will provision volumes as explained above when upgrading Trident. For volumes that you created before upgrading, you should resize their volumes for the change to be observed. For example, a 2GiB PVC with `snapshotReserve=50` earlier resulted in a volume that provides 1GiB of writable space. Resizing the volume to 3GiB, for example, provides the application with 3GiB of writable space on a 6 GiB volume.

Minimal configuration examples

The following examples show basic configurations that leave most parameters to default. This is the easiest way to define a backend.



If you are using Amazon FSx on NetApp ONTAP with Trident, the recommendation is to specify DNS names for LIFs instead of IP addresses.

ONTAP NAS economy example

```
---
version: 1
storageDriverName: ontap-nas-economy
managementLIF: 10.0.0.1
dataLIF: 10.0.0.2
svm: svm_nfs
username: vsadmin
password: password
```

ONTAP NAS Flexgroup example

```
---
version: 1
storageDriverName: ontap-nas-flexgroup
managementLIF: 10.0.0.1
dataLIF: 10.0.0.2
svm: svm_nfs
username: vsadmin
password: password
```

MetroCluster example

You can configure the backend to avoid having to manually update the backend definition after switchover and switchback during [SVM replication and recovery](#).

For seamless switchover and switchback, specify the SVM using `managementLIF` and omit the `dataLIF` and `svm` parameters. For example:

```
---  
version: 1  
storageDriverName: ontap-nas  
managementLIF: 192.168.1.66  
username: vsadmin  
password: password
```

SMB volumes example

```
---  
version: 1  
backendName: ExampleBackend  
storageDriverName: ontap-nas  
managementLIF: 10.0.0.1  
nasType: smb  
securityStyle: ntfs  
unixPermissions: ""  
dataLIF: 10.0.0.2  
svm: svm_nfs  
username: vsadmin  
password: password
```

Certificate-based authentication example

This is a minimal backend configuration example. `clientCertificate`, `clientPrivateKey`, and `trustedCACertificate` (optional, if using trusted CA) are populated in `backend.json` and take the base64-encoded values of the client certificate, private key, and trusted CA certificate, respectively.

```
---
version: 1
backendName: DefaultNASBackend
storageDriverName: ontap-nas
managementLIF: 10.0.0.1
dataLIF: 10.0.0.15
svm: nfs_svm
clientCertificate: ZXR0ZXJwYXB...ICMgJ3BhcGVyc2
clientPrivateKey: vciwKIyAgZG...0cnksIGRlc2NyaX
trustedCACertificate: zcyBbaG...b3Igb3duIGNsYXNz
storagePrefix: myPrefix_
```

Auto export policy example

This example shows you how you can instruct Trident to use dynamic export policies to create and manage the export policy automatically. This works the same for the `ontap-nas-economy` and `ontap-nas-flexgroup` drivers.

```
---
version: 1
storageDriverName: ontap-nas
managementLIF: 10.0.0.1
dataLIF: 10.0.0.2
svm: svm_nfs
labels:
  k8scluster: test-cluster-east-1a
  backend: test1-nasbackend
autoExportPolicy: true
autoExportCIDRs:
- 10.0.0.0/24
username: admin
password: password
nfsMountOptions: nfsvers=4
```

IPv6 addresses example

This example shows managementLIF using an IPv6 address.

```
---
version: 1
storageDriverName: ontap-nas
backendName: nas_ipv6_backend
managementLIF: "[5c5d:5edf:8f:7657:bef8:109b:1b41:d491]"
labels:
  k8scluster: test-cluster-east-1a
  backend: test1-ontap-ipv6
svm: nas_ipv6_svm
username: vsadmin
password: password
```

Amazon FSx for ONTAP using SMB volumes example

The smbShare parameter is required for FSx for ONTAP using SMB volumes.

```
---
version: 1
backendName: SMBBackend
storageDriverName: ontap-nas
managementLIF: example.mgmt.fqdn.aws.com
nasType: smb
dataLIF: 10.0.0.15
svm: nfs_svm
smbShare: smb-share
clientCertificate: ZXR0ZXJwYXB...ICMgJ3BhcGVyc2
clientPrivateKey: vciwKIyAgZG...0cnksIGRlc2NyaX
trustedCACertificate: zcyBbaG...b3Igb3duIGNsYXNz
storagePrefix: myPrefix_
```


Backend configuration example with nameTemplate

```
---
version: 1
storageDriverName: ontap-nas
backendName: ontap-nas-backend
managementLIF: <ip address>
svm: svm0
username: <admin>
password: <password>
defaults: {
  "nameTemplate":
  "{{.volume.Name}}_{{.labels.cluster}}_{{.volume.Namespace}}_{{.volume.R
  equestName}}"
},
"labels": {"cluster": "ClusterA", "PVC":
  "{{.volume.Namespace}}_{{.volume.RequestName}}"}
}
```

Examples of backends with virtual pools

In the sample backend definition files shown below, specific defaults are set for all storage pools, such as `spaceReserve` at `none`, `spaceAllocation` at `false`, and `encryption` at `false`. The virtual pools are defined in the `storage` section.

Trident sets provisioning labels in the "Comments" field. Comments are set on FlexVol for `ontap-nas` or FlexGroup for `ontap-nas-flexgroup`. Trident copies all labels present on a virtual pool to the storage volume at provisioning. For convenience, storage administrators can define labels per virtual pool and group volumes by label.

In these examples, some of the storage pools set their own `spaceReserve`, `spaceAllocation`, and `encryption` values, and some pools override the default values.

ONTAP NAS example

```
---
version: 1
storageDriverName: ontap-nas
managementLIF: 10.0.0.1
svm: svm_nfs
username: admin
password: <password>
nfsMountOptions: nfsvers=4
defaults:
  spaceReserve: none
  encryption: 'false'
  qosPolicy: standard
labels:
  store: nas_store
  k8scluster: prod-cluster-1
region: us_east_1
storage:
- labels:
  app: msoffice
  cost: '100'
  zone: us_east_1a
  defaults:
    spaceReserve: volume
    encryption: 'true'
    unixPermissions: '0755'
    adaptiveQosPolicy: adaptive-premium
- labels:
  app: slack
  cost: '75'
  zone: us_east_1b
  defaults:
    spaceReserve: none
    encryption: 'true'
    unixPermissions: '0755'
- labels:
  department: legal
  creditpoints: '5000'
  zone: us_east_1b
  defaults:
    spaceReserve: none
    encryption: 'true'
    unixPermissions: '0755'
- labels:
  app: wordpress
```

```
    cost: '50'  
    zone: us_east_1c  
    defaults:  
      spaceReserve: none  
      encryption: 'true'  
      unixPermissions: '0775'  
- labels:  
  app: mysqldb  
  cost: '25'  
  zone: us_east_1d  
  defaults:  
    spaceReserve: volume  
    encryption: 'false'  
    unixPermissions: '0775'
```

ONTAP NAS FlexGroup example

```
---
version: 1
storageDriverName: ontap-nas-flexgroup
managementLIF: 10.0.0.1
svm: svm_nfs
username: vsadmin
password: <password>
defaults:
  spaceReserve: none
  encryption: 'false'
labels:
  store: flexgroup_store
  k8scluster: prod-cluster-1
region: us_east_1
storage:
- labels:
  protection: gold
  creditpoints: '50000'
  zone: us_east_1a
  defaults:
    spaceReserve: volume
    encryption: 'true'
    unixPermissions: '0755'
- labels:
  protection: gold
  creditpoints: '30000'
  zone: us_east_1b
  defaults:
    spaceReserve: none
    encryption: 'true'
    unixPermissions: '0755'
- labels:
  protection: silver
  creditpoints: '20000'
  zone: us_east_1c
  defaults:
    spaceReserve: none
    encryption: 'true'
    unixPermissions: '0775'
- labels:
  protection: bronze
  creditpoints: '10000'
  zone: us_east_1d
  defaults:
```

```
spaceReserve: volume  
encryption: 'false'  
unixPermissions: '0775'
```

ONTAP NAS economy example

```
---
version: 1
storageDriverName: ontap-nas-economy
managementLIF: 10.0.0.1
svm: svm_nfs
username: vsadmin
password: <password>
defaults:
  spaceReserve: none
  encryption: 'false'
labels:
  store: nas_economy_store
  region: us_east_1
storage:
- labels:
  department: finance
  creditpoints: '6000'
  zone: us_east_1a
  defaults:
    spaceReserve: volume
    encryption: 'true'
    unixPermissions: '0755'
- labels:
  protection: bronze
  creditpoints: '5000'
  zone: us_east_1b
  defaults:
    spaceReserve: none
    encryption: 'true'
    unixPermissions: '0755'
- labels:
  department: engineering
  creditpoints: '3000'
  zone: us_east_1c
  defaults:
    spaceReserve: none
    encryption: 'true'
    unixPermissions: '0775'
- labels:
  department: humanresource
  creditpoints: '2000'
  zone: us_east_1d
  defaults:
    spaceReserve: volume
```

```
encryption: 'false'  
unixPermissions: '0775'
```

Map backends to StorageClasses

The following StorageClass definitions refer to [Examples of backends with virtual pools](#). Using the `parameters.selector` field, each StorageClass calls out which virtual pools can be used to host a volume. The volume will have the aspects defined in the chosen virtual pool.

- The `protection-gold` StorageClass will map to the first and second virtual pool in the `ontap-nas-flexgroup` backend. These are the only pools offering gold level protection.

```
apiVersion: storage.k8s.io/v1  
kind: StorageClass  
metadata:  
  name: protection-gold  
provisioner: csi.trident.netapp.io  
parameters:  
  selector: "protection=gold"  
  fsType: "ext4"
```

- The `protection-not-gold` StorageClass will map to the third and fourth virtual pool in the `ontap-nas-flexgroup` backend. These are the only pools offering protection level other than gold.

```
apiVersion: storage.k8s.io/v1  
kind: StorageClass  
metadata:  
  name: protection-not-gold  
provisioner: csi.trident.netapp.io  
parameters:  
  selector: "protection!=gold"  
  fsType: "ext4"
```

- The `app-mysqldb` StorageClass will map to the fourth virtual pool in the `ontap-nas` backend. This is the only pool offering storage pool configuration for `mysqldb` type app.

```

apiVersion: storage.k8s.io/v1
kind: StorageClass
metadata:
  name: app-mysqldb
provisioner: csi.trident.netapp.io
parameters:
  selector: "app=mysqldb"
  fsType: "ext4"

```

- The protection-silver-creditpoints-20k StorageClass will map to the third virtual pool in the ontap-nas-flexgroup backend. This is the only pool offering silver-level protection and 20000 creditpoints.

```

apiVersion: storage.k8s.io/v1
kind: StorageClass
metadata:
  name: protection-silver-creditpoints-20k
provisioner: csi.trident.netapp.io
parameters:
  selector: "protection=silver; creditpoints=20000"
  fsType: "ext4"

```

- The creditpoints-5k StorageClass will map to the third virtual pool in the ontap-nas backend and the second virtual pool in the ontap-nas-economy backend. These are the only pool offerings with 5000 creditpoints.

```

apiVersion: storage.k8s.io/v1
kind: StorageClass
metadata:
  name: creditpoints-5k
provisioner: csi.trident.netapp.io
parameters:
  selector: "creditpoints=5000"
  fsType: "ext4"

```

Trident will decide which virtual pool is selected and ensures the storage requirement is met.

Update dataLIF after initial configuration

You can change the data LIF after initial configuration by running the following command to provide the new backend JSON file with updated data LIF.


```
tridentctl update backend <backend-name> -f <path-to-backend-json-file-  
with-updated-dataLIF>
```



If PVCs are attached to one or multiple pods, you must bring down all corresponding pods and then bring them back up in order for the new data LIF to take effect.

Amazon FSx for NetApp ONTAP

Use Trident with Amazon FSx for NetApp ONTAP

[Amazon FSx for NetApp ONTAP](#) is a fully managed AWS service that enables customers to launch and run file systems powered by the NetApp ONTAP storage operating system. FSx for ONTAP enables you to leverage NetApp features, performance, and administrative capabilities you are familiar with, while taking advantage of the simplicity, agility, security, and scalability of storing data on AWS. FSx for ONTAP supports ONTAP file system features and administration APIs.

You can integrate your Amazon FSx for NetApp ONTAP file system with Trident to ensure Kubernetes clusters running in Amazon Elastic Kubernetes Service (EKS) can provision block and file persistent volumes backed by ONTAP.

A file system is the primary resource in Amazon FSx, analogous to an ONTAP cluster on premises. Within each SVM you can create one or multiple volumes, which are data containers that store the files and folders in your file system. With Amazon FSx for NetApp ONTAP, Data ONTAP will be provided as a managed file system in the cloud. The new file system type is called **NetApp ONTAP**.

Using Trident with Amazon FSx for NetApp ONTAP, you can ensure Kubernetes clusters running in Amazon Elastic Kubernetes Service (EKS) can provision block and file persistent volumes backed by ONTAP.

Requirements

In addition to [Trident requirements](#), to integrate FSx for ONTAP with Trident, you need:

- An existing Amazon EKS cluster or self-managed Kubernetes cluster with `kubectl` installed.
- An existing Amazon FSx for NetApp ONTAP file system and storage virtual machine (SVM) that is reachable from your cluster's worker nodes.
- Worker nodes that are prepared for [NFS or iSCSI](#).



Ensure you follow the node preparation steps required for Amazon Linux and Ubuntu [Amazon Machine Images](#) (AMIs) depending on your EKS AMI type.

Considerations

- SMB volumes:
 - SMB volumes are supported using the `ontap-nas` driver only.
 - SMB volumes are not supported with Trident EKS add-on.
 - Trident supports SMB volumes mounted to pods running on Windows nodes only. Refer to [Prepare to](#)

[provision SMB volumes](#) for details.

- Prior to Trident 24.02, volumes created on Amazon FSx file systems that have automatic backups enabled, could not be deleted by Trident. To prevent this issue in Trident 24.02 or later, specify the `fsxFileSystemID`, `AWS apiRegion`, `AWS apikey`, and `AWS secretKey` in the backend configuration file for AWS FSx for ONTAP.



If you are specifying an IAM role to Trident, then you can omit specifying the `apiRegion`, `apiKey`, and `secretKey` fields to Trident explicitly. For more information, refer to [FSx for ONTAP configuration options and examples](#).

Authentication

Trident offers two modes of authentication.

- Credential-based(Recommended): Stores credentials securely in AWS Secrets Manager. You can use the `fsxadmin` user for your file system or the `vsadmin` user configured for your SVM.



Trident expects to be run as a `vsadmin` SVM user or as a user with a different name that has the same role. Amazon FSx for NetApp ONTAP has an `fsxadmin` user that is a limited replacement of the ONTAP `admin` cluster user. We strongly recommend using `vsadmin` with Trident.

- Certificate-based: Trident will communicate with the SVM on your FSx file system using a certificate installed on your SVM.

For details on enabling authentication, refer to the authentication for your driver type:

- [ONTAP NAS authentication](#)
- [ONTAP SAN authentication](#)

Find more information

- [Amazon FSx for NetApp ONTAP documentation](#)
- [Blog post on Amazon FSx for NetApp ONTAP](#)

Create an IAM role and AWS Secret

You can configure Kubernetes pods to access AWS resources by authenticating as an AWS IAM role instead of by providing explicit AWS credentials.



To authenticate using an AWS IAM role, you must have a Kubernetes cluster deployed using EKS.

Create AWS Secret Manager secret

This example creates an AWS Secret Manager secret to store Trident CSI credentials:

```
aws secretsmanager create-secret --name trident-secret --description "Trident CSI credentials" --secret-string '{"user":"vsadmin","password":"<svmpassword>"}
```

Create IAM Policy

The following examples creates an IAM policy using the AWS CLI:

```
aws iam create-policy --policy-name AmazonFSxNCSIDriverPolicy --policy-document
file://policy.json --description "This policy grants access to Trident CSI to
FSxN and Secret manager"
```

Policy JSON file:

```
policy.json:
{
  "Statement": [
    {
      "Action": [
        "fsx:DescribeFileSystems",
        "fsx:DescribeVolumes",
        "fsx:CreateVolume",
        "fsx:RestoreVolumeFromSnapshot",
        "fsx:DescribeStorageVirtualMachines",
        "fsx:UntagResource",
        "fsx:UpdateVolume",
        "fsx:TagResource",
        "fsx>DeleteVolume"
      ],
      "Effect": "Allow",
      "Resource": "*"
    },
    {
      "Action": "secretsmanager:GetSecretValue",
      "Effect": "Allow",
      "Resource": "arn:aws:secretsmanager:<aws-region>:<aws-account-
id>:secret:<aws-secret-manager-name>"
    }
  ],
  "Version": "2012-10-17"
}
```

Create and IAM role for the service account

The following example creates an IAM role for service account in EKS:

```
eksctl create iamserviceaccount --name trident-controller --namespace trident
--cluster <my-cluster> --role-name <AmazonEKS_FSxN_CSI_DriverRole> --role-only
--attach-policy-arn arn:aws:iam::aws:policy/service-
role/AmazonFSxNCSIDriverPolicy --approve
```

Install Astra Trident

Astra Trident streamlines Amazon FSx for NetApp ONTAP storage management in Kubernetes to enable your developers and administrators focus on application deployment.

You can install Astra Trident using one of the following methods:

- Helm
- EKS add-on

```
If you want to make use of the snapshot functionality, install the CSI
snapshot controller add-on. Refer to
https://docs.aws.amazon.com/eks/latest/userguide/csi-snapshot-
controller.html.
```

Install Astra Trident via helm

1. Download the Astra Trident installer package

The Astra Trident installer package contains everything you need to deploy the Trident operator and install Astra Trident. Download and extract the latest version of the Astra Trident installer from the Assets section on GitHub.

```
wget https://github.com/NetApp/trident/releases/download/v24.10.0/trident-
installer-24.10.0.tar.gz
tar -xf trident-installer-24.10.0.tar.gz
cd trident-installer
```

2. Set the values for **cloud provider** and **cloud identity** flags using the following environment variables:

```
export CP="AWS"
export CI="'eks.amazonaws.com/role-arn:
arn:aws:iam::<accountID>:role/<AmazonEKS_FSxN_CSI_DriverRole>'"
```

The following example installs Astra Trident and sets the `cloud-provider` flag to `$CP`, and `cloud-identity` to `$CI`:

```
helm install trident trident-operator-100.2410.0.tgz --set
cloudProvider=$CP --set cloudIdentity=$CI --namespace trident
```

You can use the `helm list` command to review installation details such as name, namespace, chart, status, app version, and revision number.

```
helm list -n trident
```

NAME	NAMESPACE	REVISION	UPDATED
STATUS	CHART		APP VERSION
trident-operator	trident	1	2024-10-14 14:31:22.463122
+0300 IDT	deployed	trident-operator-100.2410.0	24.10.0

Install Astra Trident via the EKS add-on

The Astra Trident EKS add-on includes the latest security patches, bug fixes, and is validated by AWS to work with Amazon EKS. The EKS add-on enables you to consistently ensure that your Amazon EKS clusters are secure and stable and reduce the amount of work that you need to do in order to install, configure, and update add-ons.

Prerequisites

Ensure that you have the following before configuring the Astra Trident add-on for AWS EKS:

- An Amazon EKS cluster account with add-on subscription
- AWS permissions to the AWS marketplace:
 - "aws-marketplace:ViewSubscriptions",
 - "aws-marketplace:Subscribe",
 - "aws-marketplace:Unsubscribe"
- AMI type: Amazon Linux 2 (AL2_x86_64) or Amazon Linux 2 Arm(AL2_ARM_64)
- Node type: AMD or ARM
- An existing Amazon FSx for NetApp ONTAP file system

Enable the Astra Trident add-on for AWS

EKS cluster

The following example commands install the Astra Trident EKS add-on:

```
eksctl create addon --cluster clusterName --name netapp_trident-operator  
--version v24.6.1-eksbuild  
eksctl create addon --cluster clusterName --name netapp_trident-operator  
--version v24.6.1-eksbuild.1 (with a dedicated version)
```



When you configure the optional parameter `cloudIdentity`, ensure that you specify `cloudProvider` while installing Trident using the EKS add-on.

Management console

1. Open the Amazon EKS console at <https://console.aws.amazon.com/eks/home#/clusters>.
2. On the left navigation pane, click **Clusters**.
3. Click the name of the cluster that you want to configure the NetApp Trident CSI add-on for.
4. Click **Add-ons** and then click **Get more add-ons**.
5. On the **Select add-ons** page, do the following:
 - a. In the AWS Marketplace EKS-addons section, select the **Astra Trident by NetApp** check box.
 - b. Click **Next**.
6. On the **Configure selected add-ons** settings page, do the following:
 - a. Select the **Version** you would like to use.
 - b. For **Select IAM role**, leave at **Not set**.
 - c. Expand the **Optional configuration settings**, follow the **Add-on configuration schema** and set the `configurationValues` parameter on the **Configuration values** section to the role-arn you created on the previous step (value should be in the following format:
`eks.amazonaws.com/role-arn:
arn:aws:iam::464262061435:role/AmazonEKS_FSXN_CSI_DriverRole`). If you select **Override** for the Conflict resolution method, one or more of the settings for the existing add-on can be overwritten with the Amazon EKS add-on settings. If you don't enable this option and there's a conflict with your existing settings, the operation fails. You can use the resulting error message to troubleshoot the conflict. Before selecting this option, make sure that the Amazon EKS add-on doesn't manage settings that you need to self-manage.



When you configure the optional parameter `cloudIdentity`, ensure that you specify `cloudProvider` while installing Trident using the EKS add-on.

7. Choose **Next**.
8. On the **Review and add** page, choose **Create**.

After the add-on installation is complete, you see your installed add-on.

AWS CLI

1. Create the `add-on.json` file:

```
add-on.json
{
  "clusterName": "<eks-cluster>",
  "addonName": "netapp_trident-operator",
  "addonVersion": "v24.6.1-eksbuild.1",
  "serviceAccountRoleArn": "arn:aws:iam::123456:role/astratrident-
role",
  "configurationValues": "{\"cloudIdentity\":
'eks.amazonaws.com/role-arn: arn:aws:iam::123456:role/astratrident-
role'"},
  "cloudProvider": "AWS"}
}
```



When you configure the optional parameter `cloudIdentity`, ensure that you specify `AWS` as the `cloudProvider` while installing Trident using the EKS add-on.

2. Install the Astra Trident EKS add-on

```
aws eks create-addon --cli-input-json file://add-on.json
```

Update the Astra Trident EKS add-on

EKS cluster

- Check the current version of your FSxN Trident CSI add-on. Replace `my-cluster` with your cluster name.

```
eksctl get addon --name netapp_trident-operator --cluster my-cluster
```

Example output:

```
NAME                                VERSION                                STATUS  ISSUES
IAMROLE  UPDATE AVAILABLE  CONFIGURATION VALUES
netapp_trident-operator  v24.6.1-eksbuild.1  ACTIVE  0
{"cloudIdentity":"'eks.amazonaws.com/role-arn:
arn:aws:iam::139763910815:role/AmazonEKS_FSXN_CSI_DriverRole'"}

```

- Update the add-on to the version returned under `UPDATE AVAILABLE` in the output of the previous step.

```
eksctl update addon --name netapp_trident-operator --version v24.6.1-
eksbuild.1 --cluster my-cluster --force
```

If you remove the `--force` option and any of the Amazon EKS add-on settings conflict with your existing settings, then updating the Amazon EKS add-on fails; you receive an error message to help you resolve the conflict. Before specifying this option, make sure that the Amazon EKS add-on does not manage settings that you need to manage, because those settings are overwritten with this option.

For more information about other options for this setting, see [Addons](#).

For more information about Amazon EKS Kubernetes field management, see [Kubernetes field management](#).

Management console

1. Open the Amazon EKS console <https://console.aws.amazon.com/eks/home#/clusters>.
2. On the left navigation pane, click **Clusters**.
3. Click the name of the cluster that you want to update the NetApp Trident CSI add-on for.
4. Click the **Add-ons** tab.
5. Click **Astra Trident by NetApp** and then click **Edit**.
6. On the **Configure Astra Trident by NetApp** page, do the following:
 - a. Select the **Version** you would like to use.
 - b. (Optional) You can expand the **Optional configuration settings** and modify as needed.
 - c. Click **Save changes**.

AWS CLI

The following example updates the EKS add-on:

```
aws eks update-addon --cluster-name my-cluster netapp_trident-operator vpc-cni
--addon-version v24.6.1-eksbuild.1 \
--service-account-role-arn arn:aws:iam::111122223333:role/role-name
--configuration-values '{} ' --resolve-conflicts --preserve
```


Uninstall/remove the Astra Trident EKS add-on

You have two options for removing an Amazon EKS add-on:

- **Preserve add-on software on your cluster** – This option removes Amazon EKS management of any settings. It also removes the ability for Amazon EKS to notify you of updates and automatically update the Amazon EKS add-on after you initiate an update. However, it preserves the add-on software on your cluster. This option makes the add-on a self-managed installation, rather than an Amazon EKS add-on. With this option, there's no downtime for the add-on. Retain the `--preserve` option in the command to preserve the add-on.
- **Remove add-on software entirely from your cluster** – We recommend that you remove the Amazon EKS add-on from your cluster only if there are no resources on your cluster that are dependent on it. Remove the `--preserve` option from the `delete` command to remove the add-on.



If the add-on has an IAM account associated with it, the IAM account is not removed.

EKS cluster

The following command uninstalls the Astra Trident EKS add-on:

```
eksctl delete addon --cluster K8s-arm --name netapp_trident-operator
```

Management console

1. Open the Amazon EKS console at <https://console.aws.amazon.com/eks/home#/clusters>.
2. In the left navigation pane, click **Clusters**.
3. Click the name of the cluster that you want to remove the NetApp Trident CSI add-on for.
4. Click the **Add-ons** tab and then click **Astra Trident by NetApp**.*
5. Click **Remove**.
6. In the **Remove netapp_trident-operator confirmation** dialog, do the following:
 - a. If you want Amazon EKS to stop managing settings for the add-on, select **Preserve on cluster**. Do this if you want to retain the add-on software on your cluster so that you can manage all of the settings of the add-on on your own.
 - b. Enter **netapp_trident-operator**.
 - c. Click **Remove**.

AWS CLI

Replace `my-cluster` with the name of your cluster, and then run the following command.

```
aws eks delete-addon --cluster-name my-cluster --addon-name netapp_trident-operator --preserve
```

Configure the Storage Backend

ONTAP SAN and NAS driver integration

You can create a backend file using the SVM credentials (username and password) stored in AWS Secret Manager as shown in this example:

YAML

```
apiVersion: trident.netapp.io/v1
kind: TridentBackendConfig
metadata:
  name: backend-tbc-ontap-nas
spec:
  version: 1
  storageDriverName: ontap-nas
  backendName: tbc-ontap-nas
  svm: svm-name
  aws:
    fsxFileSystemID: fs-xxxxxxxxxx
  credentials:
    name: "arn:aws:secretsmanager:us-west-2:xxxxxxx:secret:secret-
name"
    type: awsarn
```

JSON

```
{
  "apiVersion": "trident.netapp.io/v1",
  "kind": "TridentBackendConfig",
  "metadata": {
    "name": "backend-tbc-ontap-nas"
  },
  "spec": {
    "version": 1,
    "storageDriverName": "ontap-nas",
    "backendName": "tbc-ontap-nas",
    "svm": "svm-name",
    "aws": {
      "fsxFileSystemID": "fs-xxxxxxxxxx"
    },
    "managementLIF": null,
    "credentials": {
      "name": "arn:aws:secretsmanager:us-west-2:xxxxxxx:secret:secret-
name",
      "type": "awsarn"
    }
  }
}
```

For information about creating backends, refer to these pages:

- [Configure a backend with ONTAP NAS drivers](#)
- [Configure a backend with ONTAP SAN drivers](#)

FSx for ONTAP driver details

You can integrate Trident with Amazon FSx for NetApp ONTAP using the following drivers:

- `ontap-san`: Each PV provisioned is a LUN within its own Amazon FSx for NetApp ONTAP volume. Recommended for block storage.
- `ontap-nas`: Each PV provisioned is a full Amazon FSx for NetApp ONTAP volume. Recommended for NFS and SMB.
- `ontap-san-economy`: Each PV provisioned is a LUN with a configurable number of LUNs per Amazon FSx for NetApp ONTAP volume.
- `ontap-nas-economy`: Each PV provisioned is a qtree, with a configurable number of qtrees per Amazon FSx for NetApp ONTAP volume.
- `ontap-nas-flexgroup`: Each PV provisioned is a full Amazon FSx for NetApp ONTAP FlexGroup volume.

For driver details, refer to [NAS drivers](#) and [SAN drivers](#).

Example configurations

Configuration for AWS FSx for ONTAP with secret manager

```
apiVersion: trident.netapp.io/v1
kind: TridentBackendConfig
metadata:
  name: backend-tbc-ontap-nas
spec:
  version: 1
  storageDriverName: ontap-nas
  backendName: tbc-ontap-nas
  svm: svm-name
  aws:
    fsxFilesystemID: fs-xxxxxxxxxx
  managementLIF:
  credentials:
    name: "arn:aws:secretsmanager:us-west-2:xxxxxxx:secret:secret-
name"
  type: awsarn
```

Configuration of storage class for SMB volumes

Using `nasType`, `node-stage-secret-name`, and `node-stage-secret-namespace`, you can specify an SMB volume and provide the required Active Directory credentials. SMB volumes are supported using the `ontap-nas` driver only.

```
apiVersion: storage.k8s.io/v1
kind: StorageClass
metadata:
  name: nas-smb-sc
provisioner: csi.trident.netapp.io
parameters:
  backendType: "ontap-nas"
  trident.netapp.io/nasType: "smb"
  csi.storage.k8s.io/node-stage-secret-name: "smbcreds"
  csi.storage.k8s.io/node-stage-secret-namespace: "default"
```

Backend advanced configuration and examples

See the following table for the backend configuration options:

Parameter	Description	Example
<code>version</code>		Always 1
<code>storageDriverName</code>	Name of the storage driver	<code>ontap-nas</code> , <code>ontap-nas-economy</code> , <code>ontap-nas-flexgroup</code> , <code>ontap-san</code> , <code>ontap-san-economy</code>
<code>backendName</code>	Custom name or the storage backend	Driver name + “_” + <code>dataLIF</code>

Parameter	Description	Example
managementLIF	<p>IP address of a cluster or SVM management LIF</p> <p>A fully-qualified domain name (FQDN) can be specified.</p> <p>Can be set to use IPv6 addresses if Trident was installed using the IPv6 flag. IPv6 addresses must be defined in square brackets, such as [28e8:d9fb:a825:b7bf:69a8:d02f:9e7b:3555].</p> <p>If you provide the <code>fsxFileSystemID</code> under the <code>aws</code> field, you need not to provide the <code>managementLIF</code> because Trident retrieves the SVM <code>managementLIF</code> information from AWS. So, you must provide credentials for a user under the SVM (For example: <code>vsadmin</code>) and the user must have the <code>vsadmin</code> role.</p>	<p>"10.0.0.1", "[2001:1234:abcd::fefe]"</p>

Parameter	Description	Example
dataLIF	<p>IP address of protocol LIF.</p> <p>ONTAP NAS drivers: We recommend specifying dataLIF. If not provided, Trident fetches data LIFs from the SVM. You can specify a fully-qualified domain name (FQDN) to be used for the NFS mount operations, allowing you to create a round-robin DNS to load-balance across multiple data LIFs. Can be changed after initial setting. Refer to Update dataLIF after initial configuration.</p> <p>ONTAP SAN drivers: Do not specify for iSCSI. Trident uses ONTAP Selective LUN Map to discover the iSCSI LIFs needed to establish a multi path session. A warning is generated if dataLIF is explicitly defined.</p> <p>Can be set to use IPv6 addresses if Trident was installed using the IPv6 flag. IPv6 addresses must be defined in square brackets, such as [28e8:d9fb:a825:b7bf:69a8:d02f:9e7b:3555].</p>	
autoExportPolicy	<p>Enable automatic export policy creation and updating [Boolean].</p> <p>Using the autoExportPolicy and autoExportCIDRs options, Trident can manage export policies automatically.</p>	false
autoExportCIDRs	<p>List of CIDRs to filter Kubernetes' node IPs against when autoExportPolicy is enabled.</p> <p>Using the autoExportPolicy and autoExportCIDRs options, Trident can manage export policies automatically.</p>	"["0.0.0.0/0", "::/0"]"
labels	Set of arbitrary JSON-formatted labels to apply on volumes	""
clientCertificate	Base64-encoded value of client certificate. Used for certificate-based auth	""

Parameter	Description	Example
clientPrivateKey	Base64-encoded value of client private key. Used for certificate-based auth	""
trustedCACertificate	Base64-encoded value of trusted CA certificate. Optional. Used for certificate-based authentication.	""
username	Username to connect to the cluster or SVM. Used for credential-based authentication. For example, vsadmin.	
password	Password to connect to the cluster or SVM. Used for credential-based authentication.	
svm	Storage virtual machine to use	Derived if an SVM managementLIF is specified.
storagePrefix	Prefix used when provisioning new volumes in the SVM. Cannot be modified after creation. To update this parameter, you will need to create a new backend.	trident
limitAggregateUsage	Do not specify for Amazon FSx for NetApp ONTAP. The provided fsxadmin and vsadmin do not contain the permissions required to retrieve aggregate usage and limit it using Trident.	Do not use.
limitVolumeSize	Fail provisioning if requested volume size is above this value. Also restricts the maximum size of the volumes it manages for qtrees and LUNs, and the qtreesPerFlexvol option allows customizing the maximum number of qtrees per FlexVol.	"" (not enforced by default)
lunsPerFlexvol	Maximum LUNs per Flexvol, must be in range [50, 200]. SAN only.	"100"

Parameter	Description	Example
debugTraceFlags	<p>Debug flags to use when troubleshooting. Example, {"api":false, "method":true}</p> <p>Do not use debugTraceFlags unless you are troubleshooting and require a detailed log dump.</p>	null
nfsMountOptions	<p>Comma-separated list of NFS mount options.</p> <p>The mount options for Kubernetes-persistent volumes are normally specified in storage classes, but if no mount options are specified in a storage class, Trident will fall back to using the mount options specified in the storage backend's configuration file.</p> <p>If no mount options are specified in the storage class or the configuration file, Trident will not set any mount options on an associated persistent volume.</p>	""
nasType	<p>Configure NFS or SMB volumes creation.</p> <p>Options are <code>nfs</code>, <code>smb</code>, or <code>null</code>.</p> <p>Must set to <code>smb</code> for SMB volumes. Setting to <code>null</code> defaults to NFS volumes.</p>	<code>nfs</code>
qtreesPerFlexvol	Maximum Qtrees per FlexVol, must be in range [50, 300]	"200"
smbShare	<p>You can specify one of the following: the name of an SMB share created using the Microsoft Management Console or ONTAP CLI or a name to allow Trident to create the SMB share.</p> <p>This parameter is required for Amazon FSx for ONTAP backends.</p>	<code>smb-share</code>

Parameter	Description	Example
useREST	<p>Boolean parameter to use ONTAP REST APIs. Tech preview</p> <p>useREST is provided as a tech preview that is recommended for test environments and not for production workloads. When set to <code>true</code>, Trident will use ONTAP REST APIs to communicate with the backend.</p> <p>This feature requires ONTAP 9.11.1 and later. In addition, the ONTAP login role used must have access to the <code>ontap</code> application. This is satisfied by the pre-defined <code>vsadmin</code> and <code>cluster-admin</code> roles.</p>	<code>false</code>
aws	<p>You can specify the following in the configuration file for AWS FSx for ONTAP:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> - <code>fsxFileSystemID</code>: Specify the ID of the AWS FSx file system. - <code>apiRegion</code>: AWS API region name. - <code>apiKey</code>: AWS API key. - <code>secretKey</code>: AWS secret key. 	<pre>"" "" ""</pre>
credentials	<p>Specify the FSx SVM credentials to store in AWS Secret Manager.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> - <code>name</code>: Amazon Resource Name (ARN) of the secret, which contains the credentials of SVM. - <code>type</code>: Set to <code>awsarn</code>. <p>Refer to Create an AWS Secrets Manager secret for more information.</p>	

Backend configuration options for provisioning volumes

You can control default provisioning using these options in the `defaults` section of the configuration. For an example, see the configuration examples below.

Parameter	Description	Default
<code>spaceAllocation</code>	Space-allocation for LUNs	<code>true</code>
<code>spaceReserve</code>	Space reservation mode; "none" (thin) or "volume" (thick)	<code>none</code>
<code>snapshotPolicy</code>	Snapshot policy to use	<code>none</code>

Parameter	Description	Default
qosPolicy	<p>QoS policy group to assign for volumes created. Choose one of qosPolicy or adaptiveQosPolicy per storage pool or backend.</p> <p>Using QoS policy groups with Trident requires ONTAP 9.8 or later.</p> <p>You should use a non-shared QoS policy group and ensuring the policy group is applied to each constituent individually. A shared QoS policy group enforces the ceiling for the total throughput of all workloads.</p>	""
adaptiveQosPolicy	<p>Adaptive QoS policy group to assign for volumes created. Choose one of qosPolicy or adaptiveQosPolicy per storage pool or backend.</p> <p>Not supported by ontap-nas-economy.</p>	""
snapshotReserve	Percentage of volume reserved for snapshots "0"	If snapshotPolicy is none, else ""
splitOnClone	Split a clone from its parent upon creation	false
encryption	<p>Enable NetApp Volume Encryption (NVE) on the new volume; defaults to false. NVE must be licensed and enabled on the cluster to use this option.</p> <p>If NAE is enabled on the backend, any volume provisioned in Trident will be NAE enabled.</p> <p>For more information, refer to: How Trident works with NVE and NAE.</p>	false
luksEncryption	<p>Enable LUKS encryption. Refer to Use Linux Unified Key Setup (LUKS).</p> <p>SAN only.</p>	""
tieringPolicy	Tiering policy to use none	snapshot-only for pre-ONTAP 9.5 SVM-DR configuration

Parameter	Description	Default
unixPermissions	Mode for new volumes. Leave empty for SMB volumes.	""
securityStyle	Security style for new volumes. NFS supports <code>mixed</code> and <code>unix</code> security styles. SMB supports <code>mixed</code> and <code>ntfs</code> security styles.	NFS default is <code>unix</code> . SMB default is <code>ntfs</code> .

Prepare to provision SMB volumes

You can provision SMB volumes using the `ontap-nas` driver. Before you complete [ONTAP SAN and NAS driver integration](#) complete the following steps.

Before you begin

Before you can provision SMB volumes using the `ontap-nas` driver, you must have the following.

- A Kubernetes cluster with a Linux controller node and at least one Windows worker node running Windows Server 2019. Trident supports SMB volumes mounted to pods running on Windows nodes only.
- At least one Trident secret containing your Active Directory credentials. To generate secret `smbcreds`:

```
kubectl create secret generic smbcreds --from-literal username=user
--from-literal password='password'
```

- A CSI proxy configured as a Windows service. To configure a `csi-proxy`, refer to [GitHub: CSI Proxy](#) or [GitHub: CSI Proxy for Windows](#) for Kubernetes nodes running on Windows.

Steps

1. Create SMB shares. You can create the SMB admin shares in one of two ways either using the [Microsoft Management Console](#) Shared Folders snap-in or using the ONTAP CLI. To create the SMB shares using the ONTAP CLI:

- a. If necessary, create the directory path structure for the share.

The `vserver cifs share create` command checks the path specified in the `-path` option during share creation. If the specified path does not exist, the command fails.

- b. Create an SMB share associated with the specified SVM:

```
vserver cifs share create -vserver vserver_name -share-name
share_name -path path [-share-properties share_properties,...]
[other_attributes] [-comment text]
```

- c. Verify that the share was created:

```
vserver cifs share show -share-name share_name
```



Refer to [Create an SMB share](#) for full details.

- When creating the backend, you must configure the following to specify SMB volumes. For all FSx for ONTAP backend configuration options, refer to [FSx for ONTAP configuration options and examples](#).

Parameter	Description	Example
smbShare	You can specify one of the following: the name of an SMB share created using the Microsoft Management Console or ONTAP CLI or a name to allow Trident to create the SMB share. This parameter is required for Amazon FSx for ONTAP backends.	smb-share
nasType	Must set to smb. If null, defaults to <code>nfs</code> .	smb
securityStyle	Security style for new volumes. Must be set to ntfs or mixed for SMB volumes.	ntfs or mixed for SMB volumes
unixPermissions	Mode for new volumes. Must be left empty for SMB volumes.	""

Configure a storage class and PVC

Configure a Kubernetes StorageClass object and create the storage class to instruct Trident how to provision volumes. Create a PersistentVolume (PV) and a PersistentVolumeClaim (PVC) that uses the configured Kubernetes StorageClass to request access to the PV. You can then mount the PV to a pod.

Create a storage class

Configure a Kubernetes StorageClass object

The [Kubernetes StorageClass object](#) identifies Trident as the provisioner that is used for that class instructs Trident how to provision a volume. For example:

```
apiVersion: storage.k8s.io/v1
kind: StorageClass
metadata:
  name: ontap-gold
provisioner: csi.trident.netapp.io
parameters:
  backendType: "ontap-nas"
  media: "ssd"
  provisioningType: "thin"
  snapshots: "true"
```

Refer to [Kubernetes and Trident objects](#) for details on how storage classes interact with the PersistentVolumeClaim and parameters for controlling how Trident provisions volumes.

Create a storage class

Steps

1. This is a Kubernetes object, so use `kubectl` to create it in Kubernetes.

```
kubectl create -f storage-class-ontapnas.yaml
```

2. You should now see a **basic-csi** storage class in both Kubernetes and Trident, and Trident should have discovered the pools on the backend.

```
kubectl get sc basic-csi
NAME          PROVISIONER          AGE
basic-csi    csi.trident.netapp.io 15h
```

Create the PV and PVC

A [PersistentVolume](#) (PV) is a physical storage resource provisioned by the cluster administrator on a Kubernetes cluster. The [PersistentVolumeClaim](#) (PVC) is a request for access to the PersistentVolume on the cluster.

The PVC can be configured to request storage of a certain size or access mode. Using the associated StorageClass, the cluster administrator can control more than PersistentVolume size and access mode—such as performance or service level.

After you create the PV and PVC, you can mount the volume in a pod.

Sample manifests

PersistentVolume sample manifest

This sample manifest shows a basic PV of 10Gi that is associated with StorageClass `basic-csi`.

```
apiVersion: v1
kind: PersistentVolume
metadata:
  name: pv-storage
  labels:
    type: local
spec:
  storageClassName: basic-csi
  capacity:
    storage: 10Gi
  accessModes:
    - ReadWriteMany
  hostPath:
    path: "/my/host/path"
```

PersistentVolumeClaim sample manifests

These examples show basic PVC configuration options.

PVC with RWO access

This example shows a basic PVC with RWX access that is associated with a StorageClass named `basic-csi`.

```
kind: PersistentVolumeClaim
apiVersion: v1
metadata:
  name: pvc-storage
spec:
  accessModes:
    - ReadWriteMany
  resources:
    requests:
      storage: 1Gi
  storageClassName: basic-csi
```

PVC with NVMe/TCP

This example shows a basic PVC for NVMe/TCP with RWO access that is associated with a StorageClass named `protection-gold`.

```
---
kind: PersistentVolumeClaim
apiVersion: v1
metadata:
  name: pvc-san-nvme
spec:
  accessModes:
    - ReadWriteOnce
  resources:
    requests:
      storage: 300Mi
  storageClassName: protection-gold
```

Create the PV and PVC

Steps

1. Create the PV.

```
kubectl create -f pv.yaml
```

2. Verify the PV status.

```
kubectl get pv
NAME          CAPACITY  ACCESS MODES  RECLAIM POLICY  STATUS  CLAIM
STORAGECLASS  REASON    AGE
pv-storage    4Gi       RWO           Retain          Available
7s
```

3. Create the PVC.

```
kubectl create -f pvc.yaml
```

4. Verify the PVC status.

```
kubectl get pvc
NAME          STATUS  VOLUME          CAPACITY  ACCESS MODES  STORAGECLASS  AGE
pvc-storage  Bound   pv-name         2Gi       RWO           solidfire-sa  5m
```

Refer to [Kubernetes and Trident objects](#) for details on how storage classes interact with the PersistentVolumeClaim and parameters for controlling how Trident provisions volumes.

Trident attributes

These parameters determine which Trident-managed storage pools should be utilized to provision volumes of a given type.

Attribute	Type	Values	Offer	Request	Supported by
media ¹	string	hdd, hybrid, ssd	Pool contains media of this type; hybrid means both	Media type specified	ontap-nas, ontap-nas-economy, ontap-nas-flexgroup, ontap-san, solidfire-san
provisioningType	string	thin, thick	Pool supports this provisioning method	Provisioning method specified	thick: all ontap; thin: all ontap & solidfire-san

Attribute	Type	Values	Offer	Request	Supported by
backendType	string	ontap-nas, ontap-nas-economy, ontap-nas-flexgroup, ontap-san, solidfire-san, gcp-cvs, azure-netapp-files, ontap-san-economy	Pool belongs to this type of backend	Backend specified	All drivers
snapshots	bool	true, false	Pool supports volumes with snapshots	Volume with snapshots enabled	ontap-nas, ontap-san, solidfire-san, gcp-cvs
clones	bool	true, false	Pool supports cloning volumes	Volume with clones enabled	ontap-nas, ontap-san, solidfire-san, gcp-cvs
encryption	bool	true, false	Pool supports encrypted volumes	Volume with encryption enabled	ontap-nas, ontap-nas-economy, ontap-nas-flexgroups, ontap-san
IOPS	int	positive integer	Pool is capable of guaranteeing IOPS in this range	Volume guaranteed these IOPS	solidfire-san

1: Not supported by ONTAP Select systems

Deploy sample application

Deploy sample application.

Steps

1. Mount the volume in a pod.

```
kubectl create -f pv-pod.yaml
```

These examples show basic configurations to attach the PVC to a pod:

Basic configuration:

```

kind: Pod
apiVersion: v1
metadata:
  name: pv-pod
spec:
  volumes:
    - name: pv-storage
      persistentVolumeClaim:
        claimName: basic
  containers:
    - name: pv-container
      image: nginx
      ports:
        - containerPort: 80
          name: "http-server"
      volumeMounts:
        - mountPath: "/my/mount/path"
          name: pv-storage

```



You can monitor the progress using `kubectl get pod --watch`.

2. Verify that the volume is mounted on `/my/mount/path`.

```
kubectl exec -it task-pv-pod -- df -h /my/mount/path
```

```

Filesystem                                                    Size
Used Avail Use% Mounted on
192.168.188.78:/trident_pvc_ae45ed05_3ace_4e7c_9080_d2a83ae03d06 1.1G
320K 1.0G 1% /my/mount/path

```

1. You can now delete the Pod. The Pod application will no longer exist, but the volume will remain.

```
kubectl delete pod task-pv-pod
```

Configure the Astra Trident EKS add-on on an EKS cluster

Astra Trident streamlines Amazon FSx for NetApp ONTAP storage management in Kubernetes to enable your developers and administrators focus on application deployment. The Astra Trident EKS add-on includes the latest security patches, bug fixes, and is validated by AWS to work with Amazon EKS. The EKS add-on enables you to consistently ensure that your Amazon EKS clusters are secure and stable and reduce

the amount of work that you need to do in order to install, configure, and update add-ons.

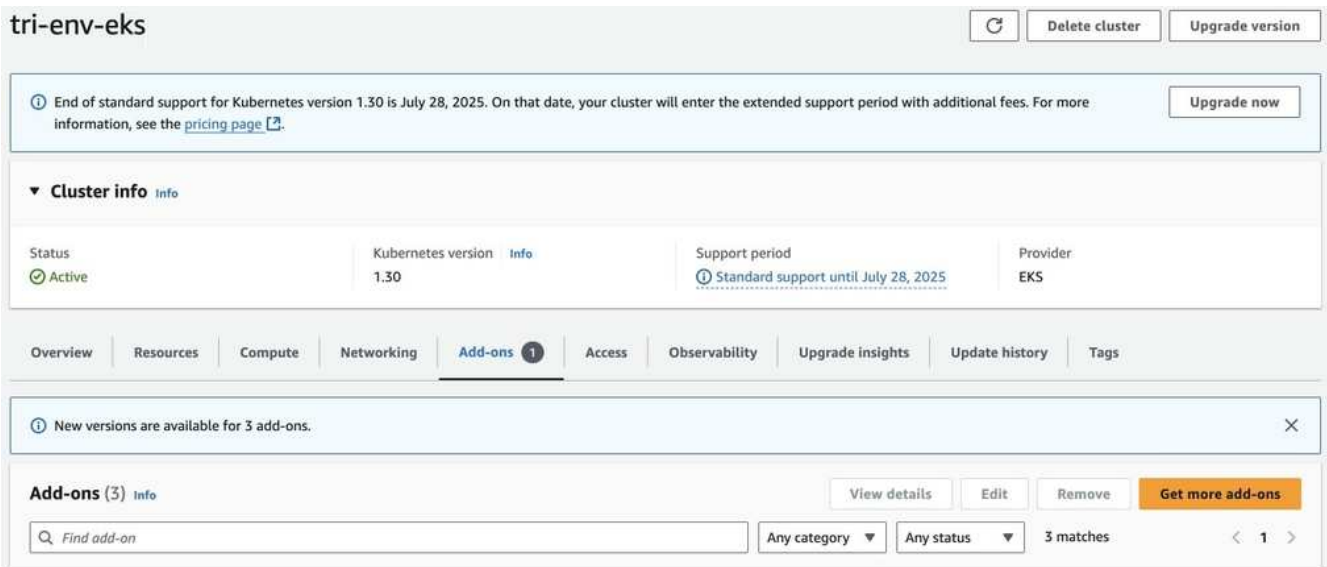
Prerequisites

Ensure that you have the following before configuring the Astra Trident add-on for AWS EKS:

- An Amazon EKS cluster account with add-on subscription
- AWS permissions to the AWS marketplace:
"aws-marketplace:ViewSubscriptions",
"aws-marketplace:Subscribe",
"aws-marketplace:Unsubscribe
- AMI type: Amazon Linux 2 (AL2_x86_64) or Amazon Linux 2 Arm(AL2_ARM_64)
- Node type: AMD or ARM
- An existing Amazon FSx for NetApp ONTAP file system

Steps

1. On your your EKS Kubernetes cluster, navigate to the **Add-ons** tab.



2. Go to **AWS Marketplace add-ons** and choose the *storage* category.

AWS Marketplace add-ons (1) ↻

Discover, subscribe to and configure EKS add-ons to enhance your EKS clusters.

Filtering options

Any category ▾ NetApp, Inc. ▾ Any pricing model ▾ Clear filters

NetApp, Inc. ✕ < 1 >

NetApp **NetApp Trident** ☐

NetApp Trident streamlines Amazon FSx for NetApp ONTAP storage management in Kubernetes to let your developers and administrators focus on application deployment. FSx for ONTAP flexibility, scalability, and integration capabilities make it the ideal choice for organizations seeking efficient containerized storage workflows. [Product details](#)

Standard Contract

Category storage	Listed by NetApp, Inc.	Supported versions 1.30, 1.29, 1.28, 1.27, 1.26, 1.25, 1.24, 1.23	Pricing starting at View pricing details
---------------------	---	--	---

Cancel **Next**

3. Locate **NetApp Trident** and select the checkbox for the Astra Trident add-on.
4. Choose the desired version of the add-on.

NetApp Trident Remove add-on

Listed by NetApp	Category storage	Status ✔ Ready to install
----------------------------	---------------------	------------------------------

You're subscribed to this software
You can view the terms and pricing details for this product or choose another offer if one is available. View subscription ×

Version
Select the version for this add-on.
v24.6.1-eksbuild.1

Select IAM role
Select an IAM role to use with this add-on. To create a new custom role, follow the instructions in the [Amazon EKS User Guide](#).
Not set ↻

▶ **Optional configuration settings**

Cancel Previous Next

5. Select the IAM role option to inherit from the node.

Review and add

Step 1: Select add-ons

Edit

Selected add-ons (1)

Find add-on

< 1 >

Add-on name



Type



Status

netapp_trident-operator

storage

Ready to install

Step 2: Configure selected add-ons settings

Edit

Selected add-ons version (1)

< 1 >

Add-on name



Version



IAM role for service account (IRSA)

netapp_trident-operator

v24.6.1-eksbuild.1

Not set

Cancel

Previous

Create

6. (Optional) Configure any Optional configuration settings as required and select **Next**.

Follow the **Add-on configuration schema** and set the configurationValues parameter on the **Configuration values** section to the role-arn you created on the previous step (value should be in the following format: `eks.amazonaws.com/role-arn:arn:aws:iam::464262061435:role/AmazonEKS_FSXN_CSI_DriverRole`). If you select **Override** for the Conflict resolution method, one or more of the settings for the existing add-on can be overwritten with the Amazon EKS add-on settings. If you don't enable this option and there's a conflict with your existing settings, the operation fails. You can use the resulting error message to troubleshoot the conflict. Before selecting this option, make sure that the Amazon EKS add-on doesn't manage settings that you need to self-manage.



When you configure the optional parameter `cloudIdentity`, ensure that you specify `AWS` as the `cloudProvider` while installing Trident using the EKS add-on.

Select IAM role
 Select an IAM role to use with this add-on. To create a new custom role, follow the instructions in the [Amazon EKS User Guide](#).

Not set ▼ ↻

Optional configuration settings

Add-on configuration schema
 Refer to the JSON schema below. The configuration values entered in the code editor will be validated against this schema.

```
{
  "$id": "http://example.com/example.json",
  "$schema": "https://json-schema.org/draft/2019-09/schema",
  "default": {},
  "examples": [
    {
      "cloudIdentity": ""
    }
  ],
  "properties": {
    "cloudIdentity": {
      "default": "",
      "examples": [

```

Configuration values [Info](#)
 Specify any additional JSON or YAML configurations that should be applied to the add-on.

```
1 {
2   "cloudIdentity": "'eks.amazonaws.com/role-arn: arn:aws
3     :iam::139763910815:role
4     /AmazonEKS_FSXN_CSI_DriverRole'",
5   "cloudProvider": "AWS"
6 }
```

7. Select **Create**.
8. Verify that the status of the add-on is *Active*.

Add-ons (1) [Info](#) View details Edit Remove Get more add-ons

netapp × Any category Any status 1 match < 1 >

NetApp **Astra Trident by NetApp** ○

Astra Trident streamlines Amazon FSx for NetApp ONTAP storage management in Kubernetes to let your developers and administrators focus on application deployment. FSx for ONTAP flexibility, scalability, and integration capabilities make it the ideal choice for organizations seeking efficient containerized storage workflows. [Product details](#)

Category	Status	Version	IAM role for service account (IRSA)	Listed by
storage	✔ Active	v24.6.1-eksbuild.1	Not set	NetApp, Inc.

View subscription

Install/uninstall the Astra Trident EKS add-on using CLI

Install the Astra Trident EKS add-on using CLI:

The following example command installs the Astra Trident EKS add-on:

```
eksctl create addon --cluster K8s-arm --name netapp_trident-operator --version v24.6.1-eksbuild
```

```
eksctl create addon --cluster clusterName --name netapp_trident-operator
--version v24.6.1-eksbuild.1 (with a dedicated version)
```



When you configure the optional parameter `cloudIdentity`, ensure that you specify `cloudProvider` while installing Trident using the EKS add-on.

Uninstall the Astra Trident EKS add-on using CLI:

The following command uninstalls the Astra Trident EKS add-on:

```
eksctl delete addon --cluster K8s-arm --name netapp_trident-operator
```

Create backends with kubectl

A backend defines the relationship between Trident and a storage system. It tells Trident how to communicate with that storage system and how Trident should provision volumes from it. After Trident is installed, the next step is to create a backend. The `TridentBackendConfig` Custom Resource Definition (CRD) enables you to create and manage Trident backends directly through the Kubernetes interface. You can do this by using `kubectl` or the equivalent CLI tool for your Kubernetes distribution.

`TridentBackendConfig`

`TridentBackendConfig` (`tbc`, `tbconfig`, `tbackendconfig`) is a frontend, namespaced CRD that enables you to manage Trident backends using `kubectl`. Kubernetes and storage admins can now create and manage backends directly through the Kubernetes CLI without requiring a dedicated command-line utility (`tridentctl`).

Upon the creation of a `TridentBackendConfig` object, the following happens:

- A backend is created automatically by Trident based on the configuration you provide. This is represented internally as a `TridentBackend` (`tbe`, `tridentbackend`) CR.
- The `TridentBackendConfig` is uniquely bound to a `TridentBackend` that was created by Trident.

Each `TridentBackendConfig` maintains a one-to-one mapping with a `TridentBackend`. The former is the interface provided to the user to design and configure backends; the latter is how Trident represents the actual backend object.



`TridentBackend` CRs are created automatically by Trident. You **should not** modify them. If you want to make updates to backends, do this by modifying the `TridentBackendConfig` object.

See the following example for the format of the `TridentBackendConfig` CR:


```

apiVersion: trident.netapp.io/v1
kind: TridentBackendConfig
metadata:
  name: backend-tbc-ontap-san
spec:
  version: 1
  backendName: ontap-san-backend
  storageDriverName: ontap-san
  managementLIF: 10.0.0.1
  dataLIF: 10.0.0.2
  svm: trident_svm
  credentials:
    name: backend-tbc-ontap-san-secret

```

You can also take a look at the examples in the [trident-installer](#) directory for sample configurations for the desired storage platform/service.

The `spec` takes backend-specific configuration parameters. In this example, the backend uses the `ontap-san` storage driver and uses the configuration parameters that are tabulated here. For the list of configuration options for your desired storage driver, refer to the [backend configuration information for your storage driver](#).

The `spec` section also includes `credentials` and `deletionPolicy` fields, which are newly introduced in the `TridentBackendConfig` CR:

- `credentials`: This parameter is a required field and contains the credentials used to authenticate with the storage system/service. This is set to a user-created Kubernetes Secret. The credentials cannot be passed in plain text and will result in an error.
- `deletionPolicy`: This field defines what should happen when the `TridentBackendConfig` is deleted. It can take one of two possible values:
 - `delete`: This results in the deletion of both `TridentBackendConfig` CR and the associated backend. This is the default value.
 - `retain`: When a `TridentBackendConfig` CR is deleted, the backend definition will still be present and can be managed with `tridentctl`. Setting the deletion policy to `retain` lets users downgrade to an earlier release (pre-21.04) and retain the created backends. The value for this field can be updated after a `TridentBackendConfig` is created.



The name of a backend is set using `spec.backendName`. If unspecified, the name of the backend is set to the name of the `TridentBackendConfig` object (`metadata.name`). It is recommended to explicitly set backend names using `spec.backendName`.



Backends that were created with `tridentctl` do not have an associated `TridentBackendConfig` object. You can choose to manage such backends with `kubectl` by creating a `TridentBackendConfig` CR. Care must be taken to specify identical config parameters (such as `spec.backendName`, `spec.storagePrefix`, `spec.storageDriverName`, and so on). Trident will automatically bind the newly-created `TridentBackendConfig` with the pre-existing backend.

Steps overview

To create a new backend by using `kubectl`, you should do the following:

1. Create a [Kubernetes Secret](#). The secret contains the credentials Trident needs to communicate with the storage cluster/service.
2. Create a `TridentBackendConfig` object. This contains specifics about the storage cluster/service and references the secret created in the previous step.

After you create a backend, you can observe its status by using `kubectl get tbc <tbc-name> -n <trident-namespace>` and gather additional details.

Step 1: Create a Kubernetes Secret

Create a Secret that contains the access credentials for the backend. This is unique to each storage service/platform. Here's an example:

```
kubectl -n trident create -f backend-tbc-ontap-san-secret.yaml
apiVersion: v1
kind: Secret
metadata:
  name: backend-tbc-ontap-san-secret
type: Opaque
stringData:
  username: cluster-admin
  password: t@Ax@7q(>
```

This table summarizes the fields that must be included in the Secret for each storage platform:

Storage platform Secret Fields description	Secret	Fields description
Azure NetApp Files	clientID	The client ID from an app registration
Cloud Volumes Service for GCP	private_key_id	ID of the private key. Part of API key for GCP Service Account with CVS admin role
Cloud Volumes Service for GCP	private_key	Private key. Part of API key for GCP Service Account with CVS admin role
Element (NetApp HCI/SolidFire)	Endpoint	MVIP for the SolidFire cluster with tenant credentials

Storage platform Secret Fields description	Secret	Fields description
ONTAP	username	Username to connect to the cluster/SVM. Used for credential-based authentication
ONTAP	password	Password to connect to the cluster/SVM. Used for credential-based authentication
ONTAP	clientPrivateKey	Base64-encoded value of client private key. Used for certificate-based authentication
ONTAP	chapUsername	Inbound username. Required if useCHAP=true. For <code>ontap-san</code> and <code>ontap-san-economy</code>
ONTAP	chapInitiatorSecret	CHAP initiator secret. Required if useCHAP=true. For <code>ontap-san</code> and <code>ontap-san-economy</code>
ONTAP	chapTargetUsername	Target username. Required if useCHAP=true. For <code>ontap-san</code> and <code>ontap-san-economy</code>
ONTAP	chapTargetInitiatorSecret	CHAP target initiator secret. Required if useCHAP=true. For <code>ontap-san</code> and <code>ontap-san-economy</code>

The Secret created in this step will be referenced in the `spec.credentials` field of the `TridentBackendConfig` object that is created in the next step.

Step 2: Create the `TridentBackendConfig` CR

You are now ready to create your `TridentBackendConfig` CR. In this example, a backend that uses the `ontap-san` driver is created by using the `TridentBackendConfig` object shown below:

```
kubectl -n trident create -f backend-tbc-ontap-san.yaml
```

```

apiVersion: trident.netapp.io/v1
kind: TridentBackendConfig
metadata:
  name: backend-tbc-ontap-san
spec:
  version: 1
  backendName: ontap-san-backend
  storageDriverName: ontap-san
  managementLIF: 10.0.0.1
  dataLIF: 10.0.0.2
  svm: trident_svm
  credentials:
    name: backend-tbc-ontap-san-secret

```

Step 3: Verify the status of the TridentBackendConfig CR

Now that you created the TridentBackendConfig CR, you can verify the status. See the following example:

```

kubectl -n trident get tbc backend-tbc-ontap-san

```

NAME	PHASE	STATUS	BACKEND NAME	BACKEND UUID
backend-tbc-ontap-san		Bound	ontap-san-backend	8d24fce7-6f60-4d4a-8ef6-bab2699e6ab8
		Success		

A backend was successfully created and bound to the TridentBackendConfig CR.

Phase can take one of the following values:

- **Bound:** The TridentBackendConfig CR is associated with a backend, and that backend contains configRef set to the TridentBackendConfig CR's uid.
- **Unbound:** Represented using "". The TridentBackendConfig object is not bound to a backend. All newly created TridentBackendConfig CRs are in this phase by default. After the phase changes, it cannot revert to Unbound again.
- **Deleting:** The TridentBackendConfig CR's deletionPolicy was set to delete. When the TridentBackendConfig CR is deleted, it transitions to the Deleting state.
 - If no persistent volume claims (PVCs) exist on the backend, deleting the TridentBackendConfig will result in Trident deleting the backend as well as the TridentBackendConfig CR.
 - If one or more PVCs are present on the backend, it goes to a deleting state. The TridentBackendConfig CR subsequently also enters deleting phase. The backend and TridentBackendConfig are deleted only after all PVCs are deleted.
- **Lost:** The backend associated with the TridentBackendConfig CR was accidentally or deliberately deleted and the TridentBackendConfig CR still has a reference to the deleted backend. The TridentBackendConfig CR can still be deleted irrespective of the deletionPolicy value.

- Unknown: Trident is unable to determine the state or existence of the backend associated with the `TridentBackendConfig` CR. For example, if the API server is not responding or if the `tridentbackends.trident.netapp.io` CRD is missing. This might require intervention.

At this stage, a backend is successfully created! There are several operations that can additionally be handled, such as [backend updates](#) and [backend deletions](#).

(Optional) Step 4: Get more details

You can run the following command to get more information about your backend:

```
kubectl -n trident get tbc backend-tbc-ontap-san -o wide
```

NAME	BACKEND NAME	BACKEND UUID		
PHASE	STATUS	STORAGE DRIVER	DELETION POLICY	
backend-tbc-ontap-san	ontap-san-backend	8d24fce7-6f60-4d4a-8ef6-		
bab2699e6ab8	Bound	Success	ontap-san	delete

In addition, you can also obtain a YAML/JSON dump of `TridentBackendConfig`.

```
kubectl -n trident get tbc backend-tbc-ontap-san -o yaml
```

```

apiVersion: trident.netapp.io/v1
kind: TridentBackendConfig
metadata:
  creationTimestamp: "2021-04-21T20:45:11Z"
  finalizers:
  - trident.netapp.io
  generation: 1
  name: backend-tbc-ontap-san
  namespace: trident
  resourceVersion: "947143"
  uid: 35b9d777-109f-43d5-8077-c74a4559d09c
spec:
  backendName: ontap-san-backend
  credentials:
    name: backend-tbc-ontap-san-secret
  managementLIF: 10.0.0.1
  dataLIF: 10.0.0.2
  storageDriverName: ontap-san
  svm: trident_svm
  version: 1
status:
  backendInfo:
    backendName: ontap-san-backend
    backendUUID: 8d24fce7-6f60-4d4a-8ef6-bab2699e6ab8
  deletionPolicy: delete
  lastOperationStatus: Success
  message: Backend 'ontap-san-backend' created
  phase: Bound

```

`backendInfo` contains the `backendName` and the `backendUUID` of the backend that got created in response to the `TridentBackendConfig` CR. The `lastOperationStatus` field represents the status of the last operation of the `TridentBackendConfig` CR, which can be user-triggered (for example, user changed something in `spec`) or triggered by Trident (for example, during Trident restarts). It can either be `Success` or `Failed`. `phase` represents the status of the relation between the `TridentBackendConfig` CR and the backend. In the example above, `phase` has the value `Bound`, which means that the `TridentBackendConfig` CR is associated with the backend.

You can run the `kubectl -n trident describe tbc <tbc-cr-name>` command to get details of the event logs.



You cannot update or delete a backend which contains an associated `TridentBackendConfig` object using `tridentctl`. To understand the steps involved in switching between `tridentctl` and `TridentBackendConfig`, [see here](#).

Manage backends

Perform backend management with kubectl

Learn about how to perform backend management operations by using `kubectl`.

Delete a backend

By deleting a `TridentBackendConfig`, you instruct Trident to delete/retain backends (based on `deletionPolicy`). To delete a backend, ensure that `deletionPolicy` is set to `delete`. To delete just the `TridentBackendConfig`, ensure that `deletionPolicy` is set to `retain`. This ensures the backend is still present and can be managed by using `tridentctl`.

Run the following command:

```
kubectl delete tbc <tbc-name> -n trident
```

Trident does not delete the Kubernetes Secrets that were in use by `TridentBackendConfig`. The Kubernetes user is responsible for cleaning up secrets. Care must be taken when deleting secrets. You should delete secrets only if they are not in use by the backends.

View the existing backends

Run the following command:

```
kubectl get tbc -n trident
```

You can also run `tridentctl get backend -n trident` or `tridentctl get backend -o yaml -n trident` to obtain a list of all backends that exist. This list will also include backends that were created with `tridentctl`.

Update a backend

There can be multiple reasons to update a backend:

- Credentials to the storage system have changed. To update credentials, the Kubernetes Secret that is used in the `TridentBackendConfig` object must be updated. Trident will automatically update the backend with the latest credentials provided. Run the following command to update the Kubernetes Secret:

```
kubectl apply -f <updated-secret-file.yaml> -n trident
```

- Parameters (such as the name of the ONTAP SVM being used) need to be updated.
 - You can update `TridentBackendConfig` objects directly through Kubernetes using the following command:

```
kubectl apply -f <updated-backend-file.yaml>
```

- Alternatively, you can make changes to the existing `TridentBackendConfig` CR using the following command:

```
kubectl edit tbc <tbc-name> -n trident
```



- If a backend update fails, the backend continues to remain in its last known configuration. You can view the logs to determine the cause by running `kubectl get tbc <tbc-name> -o yaml -n trident` or `kubectl describe tbc <tbc-name> -n trident`.
- After you identify and correct the problem with the configuration file, you can re-run the update command.

Perform backend management with `tridentctl`

Learn about how to perform backend management operations by using `tridentctl`.

Create a backend

After you create a [backend configuration file](#), run the following command:

```
tridentctl create backend -f <backend-file> -n trident
```

If backend creation fails, something was wrong with the backend configuration. You can view the logs to determine the cause by running the following command:

```
tridentctl logs -n trident
```

After you identify and correct the problem with the configuration file, you can simply run the `create` command again.

Delete a backend

To delete a backend from Trident, do the following:

1. Retrieve the backend name:

```
tridentctl get backend -n trident
```

2. Delete the backend:

```
tridentctl delete backend <backend-name> -n trident
```




If Trident has provisioned volumes and snapshots from this backend that still exist, deleting the backend prevents new volumes from being provisioned by it. The backend will continue to exist in a “Deleting” state and Trident will continue to manage those volumes and snapshots until they are deleted.

View the existing backends

To view the backends that Trident knows about, do the following:

- To get a summary, run the following command:

```
tridentctl get backend -n trident
```

- To get all the details, run the following command:

```
tridentctl get backend -o json -n trident
```

Update a backend

After you create a new backend configuration file, run the following command:

```
tridentctl update backend <backend-name> -f <backend-file> -n trident
```

If backend update fails, something was wrong with the backend configuration or you attempted an invalid update. You can view the logs to determine the cause by running the following command:

```
tridentctl logs -n trident
```

After you identify and correct the problem with the configuration file, you can simply run the `update` command again.

Identify the storage classes that use a backend

This is an example of the kind of questions you can answer with the JSON that `tridentctl` outputs for backend objects. This uses the `jq` utility, which you need to install.

```
tridentctl get backend -o json | jq '[.items[] | {backend: .name, storageClasses: [.storage[].storageClasses]|unique}]'
```

This also applies for backends that were created by using `TridentBackendConfig`.

Move between backend management options

Learn about the different ways of managing backends in Trident.

Options for managing backends

With the introduction of `TridentBackendConfig`, administrators now have two unique ways of managing backends. This poses the following questions:

- Can backends created using `tridentctl` be managed with `TridentBackendConfig`?
- Can backends created using `TridentBackendConfig` be managed using `tridentctl`?

Manage `tridentctl` backends using `TridentBackendConfig`

This section covers the steps required to manage backends that were created using `tridentctl` directly through the Kubernetes interface by creating `TridentBackendConfig` objects.

This will apply to the following scenarios:

- Pre-existing backends, that don't have a `TridentBackendConfig` because they were created with `tridentctl`.
- New backends that were created with `tridentctl`, while other `TridentBackendConfig` objects exist.

In both scenarios, backends will continue to be present, with Trident scheduling volumes and operating on them. Administrators have one of two choices here:

- Continue using `tridentctl` to manage backends that were created using it.
- Bind backends created using `tridentctl` to a new `TridentBackendConfig` object. Doing so would mean the backends will be managed using `kubectl` and not `tridentctl`.

To manage a pre-existing backend using `kubectl`, you will need to create a `TridentBackendConfig` that binds to the existing backend. Here is an overview of how that works:

1. Create a Kubernetes Secret. The secret contains the credentials Trident needs to communicate with the storage cluster/service.
2. Create a `TridentBackendConfig` object. This contains specifics about the storage cluster/service and references the secret created in the previous step. Care must be taken to specify identical config parameters (such as `spec.backendName`, `spec.storagePrefix`, `spec.storageDriverName`, and so on). `spec.backendName` must be set to the name of the existing backend.

Step 0: Identify the backend

To create a `TridentBackendConfig` that binds to an existing backend, you will need to obtain the backend configuration. In this example, let us assume a backend was created using the following JSON definition:

```
tridentctl get backend ontap-nas-backend -n trident
+-----+-----+
+-----+-----+-----+-----+
|          NAME          | STORAGE DRIVER |          UUID          |
| STATE  | VOLUMES  |          |          |
+-----+-----+-----+-----+
+-----+-----+-----+-----+
| ontap-nas-backend    | ontap-nas      | 52f2eb10-e4c6-4160-99fc-
```

```

96b3be5ab5d7 | online |      25 |
+-----+-----+
+-----+-----+-----+

cat ontap-nas-backend.json

{
  "version": 1,
  "storageDriverName": "ontap-nas",
  "managementLIF": "10.10.10.1",
  "dataLIF": "10.10.10.2",
  "backendName": "ontap-nas-backend",
  "svm": "trident_svm",
  "username": "cluster-admin",
  "password": "admin-password",

  "defaults": {
    "spaceReserve": "none",
    "encryption": "false"
  },
  "labels":{"store":"nas_store"},
  "region": "us_east_1",
  "storage": [
    {
      "labels":{"app":"msoffice", "cost":"100"},
      "zone":"us_east_1a",
      "defaults": {
        "spaceReserve": "volume",
        "encryption": "true",
        "unixPermissions": "0755"
      }
    },
    {
      "labels":{"app":"mysqldb", "cost":"25"},
      "zone":"us_east_1d",
      "defaults": {
        "spaceReserve": "volume",
        "encryption": "false",
        "unixPermissions": "0775"
      }
    }
  ]
}

```

Step 1: Create a Kubernetes Secret

Create a Secret that contains the credentials for the backend, as shown in this example:

```
cat tbc-ontap-nas-backend-secret.yaml

apiVersion: v1
kind: Secret
metadata:
  name: ontap-nas-backend-secret
type: Opaque
stringData:
  username: cluster-admin
  password: admin-password

kubectl create -f tbc-ontap-nas-backend-secret.yaml -n trident
secret/backend-tbc-ontap-san-secret created
```

Step 2: Create a TridentBackendConfig CR

The next step is to create a `TridentBackendConfig` CR that will automatically bind to the pre-existing `ontap-nas-backend` (as in this example). Ensure the following requirements are met:

- The same backend name is defined in `spec.backendName`.
- Configuration parameters are identical to the original backend.
- Virtual pools (if present) must retain the same order as in the original backend.
- Credentials are provided through a Kubernetes Secret and not in plain text.

In this case, the `TridentBackendConfig` will look like this:

```

cat backend-tbc-ontap-nas.yaml
apiVersion: trident.netapp.io/v1
kind: TridentBackendConfig
metadata:
  name: tbc-ontap-nas-backend
spec:
  version: 1
  storageDriverName: ontap-nas
  managementLIF: 10.10.10.1
  dataLIF: 10.10.10.2
  backendName: ontap-nas-backend
  svm: trident_svm
  credentials:
    name: mysecret
  defaults:
    spaceReserve: none
    encryption: 'false'
  labels:
    store: nas_store
  region: us_east_1
  storage:
  - labels:
    app: msoffice
    cost: '100'
    zone: us_east_1a
    defaults:
      spaceReserve: volume
      encryption: 'true'
      unixPermissions: '0755'
  - labels:
    app: mysqldb
    cost: '25'
    zone: us_east_1d
    defaults:
      spaceReserve: volume
      encryption: 'false'
      unixPermissions: '0775'

kubectl create -f backend-tbc-ontap-nas.yaml -n trident
tridentbackendconfig.trident.netapp.io/tbc-ontap-nas-backend created

```

Step 3: Verify the status of the TridentBackendConfig CR

After the TridentBackendConfig has been created, its phase must be Bound. It should also reflect the same backend name and UUID as that of the existing backend.

```

kubect1 get tbc tbc-ontap-nas-backend -n trident
NAME                                BACKEND NAME                BACKEND UUID
PHASE    STATUS
tbc-ontap-nas-backend  ontap-nas-backend          52f2eb10-e4c6-4160-99fc-
96b3be5ab5d7    Bound    Success

#confirm that no new backends were created (i.e., TridentBackendConfig did
not end up creating a new backend)
tridentctl get backend -n trident
+-----+-----+
+-----+-----+-----+-----+
|          NAME          | STORAGE DRIVER |          UUID
| STATE  | VOLUMES |
+-----+-----+-----+-----+
| ontap-nas-backend    | ontap-nas      | 52f2eb10-e4c6-4160-99fc-
96b3be5ab5d7 | online |          25 |
+-----+-----+-----+-----+
+-----+-----+-----+-----+

```

The backend will now be completely managed using the `tbc-ontap-nas-backend TridentBackendConfig` object.

Manage `TridentBackendConfig` backends using `tridentctl`

`tridentctl` can be used to list backends that were created using `TridentBackendConfig`. In addition, administrators can also choose to completely manage such backends through `tridentctl` by deleting `TridentBackendConfig` and making sure `spec.deletionPolicy` is set to `retain`.

Step 0: Identify the backend

For example, let us assume the following backend was created using `TridentBackendConfig`:

```
kubectl get tbc backend-tbc-ontap-san -n trident -o wide
NAME                                BACKEND NAME                BACKEND UUID
PHASE  STATUS    STORAGE DRIVER  DELETION POLICY
backend-tbc-ontap-san  ontap-san-backend  81abcb27-ea63-49bb-b606-
0a5315ac5f82  Bound  Success  ontap-san  delete

tridentctl get backend ontap-san-backend -n trident
+-----+-----+
+-----+-----+-----+-----+
|      NAME      | STORAGE DRIVER |                               UUID
| STATE  | VOLUMES |
+-----+-----+-----+-----+
| ontap-san-backend | ontap-san      | 81abcb27-ea63-49bb-b606-
0a5315ac5f82 | online |      33 |
+-----+-----+-----+-----+
+-----+-----+-----+-----+
```

From the output, it is seen that `TridentBackendConfig` was created successfully and is bound to a backend [observe the backend's UUID].

Step 1: Confirm `deletionPolicy` is set to `retain`

Let us take a look at the value of `deletionPolicy`. This needs to be set to `retain`. This ensures that when a `TridentBackendConfig` CR is deleted, the backend definition will still be present and can be managed with `tridentctl`.

```
kubectl get tbc backend-tbc-ontap-san -n trident -o wide
NAME                                BACKEND NAME                BACKEND UUID
PHASE  STATUS    STORAGE DRIVER  DELETION POLICY
backend-tbc-ontap-san  ontap-san-backend  81abcb27-ea63-49bb-b606-
0a5315ac5f82  Bound  Success  ontap-san  delete

# Patch value of deletionPolicy to retain
kubectl patch tbc backend-tbc-ontap-san --type=merge -p
'{"spec":{"deletionPolicy":"retain"}}' -n trident
tridentbackendconfig.trident.netapp.io/backend-tbc-ontap-san patched

#Confirm the value of deletionPolicy
kubectl get tbc backend-tbc-ontap-san -n trident -o wide
NAME                                BACKEND NAME                BACKEND UUID
PHASE  STATUS    STORAGE DRIVER  DELETION POLICY
backend-tbc-ontap-san  ontap-san-backend  81abcb27-ea63-49bb-b606-
0a5315ac5f82  Bound  Success  ontap-san  retain
```



Do not proceed to the next step unless `deletionPolicy` is set to `retain`.

Step 2: Delete the `TridentBackendConfig` CR

The final step is to delete the `TridentBackendConfig` CR. After confirming the `deletionPolicy` is set to `retain`, you can go ahead with the deletion:

```
kubectl delete tbc backend-tbc-ontap-san -n trident
tridentbackendconfig.trident.netapp.io "backend-tbc-ontap-san" deleted

tridentctl get backend ontap-san-backend -n trident
+-----+-----+
+-----+-----+-----+
|          NAME          | STORAGE DRIVER |                UUID
| STATE  | VOLUMES |
+-----+-----+-----+
+-----+-----+-----+
| ontap-san-backend | ontap-san      | 81abcb27-ea63-49bb-b606-
0a5315ac5f82 | online |      33 |
+-----+-----+-----+
+-----+-----+-----+
```

Upon the deletion of the `TridentBackendConfig` object, Trident simply removes it without actually deleting the backend itself.

Create and manage storage classes

Create a storage class

Configure a Kubernetes `StorageClass` object and create the storage class to instruct Trident how to provision volumes.

Configure a Kubernetes `StorageClass` object

The [Kubernetes `StorageClass` object](#) identifies Trident as the provisioner that is used for that class and instructs Trident how to provision a volume. For example:


```
apiVersion: storage.k8s.io/v1
kind: StorageClass
metadata:
  name: <Name>
provisioner: csi.trident.netapp.io
mountOptions: <Mount Options>
parameters:
  <Trident Parameters>
allowVolumeExpansion: true
volumeBindingMode: Immediate
```

Refer to [Kubernetes and Trident objects](#) for details on how storage classes interact with the PersistentVolumeClaim and parameters for controlling how Trident provisions volumes.

Create a storage class

After you create the StorageClass object, you can create the storage class. [Storage class samples](#) provides some basic samples you can use or modify.

Steps

1. This is a Kubernetes object, so use `kubectl` to create it in Kubernetes.

```
kubectl create -f sample-input/storage-class-basic-csi.yaml
```

2. You should now see a **basic-csi** storage class in both Kubernetes and Trident, and Trident should have discovered the pools on the backend.

```

kubect1 get sc basic-csi
NAME          PROVISIONER          AGE
basic-csi     csi.trident.netapp.io 15h

./tridentctl -n trident get storageclass basic-csi -o json
{
  "items": [
    {
      "Config": {
        "version": "1",
        "name": "basic-csi",
        "attributes": {
          "backendType": "ontap-nas"
        },
        "storagePools": null,
        "additionalStoragePools": null
      },
      "storage": {
        "ontapnas_10.0.0.1": [
          "aggr1",
          "aggr2",
          "aggr3",
          "aggr4"
        ]
      }
    }
  ]
}

```

Storage class samples

Trident provides [simple storage class definitions for specific backends](#).

Alternatively, you can edit `sample-input/storage-class-csi.yaml.template` file that comes with the installer and replace `BACKEND_TYPE` with the storage driver name.

```

./tridentctl -n trident get backend
+-----+-----+-----+-----+
+-----+-----+
|   NAME   | STORAGE DRIVER |           UUID           |
STATE | VOLUMES |
+-----+-----+-----+-----+
+-----+-----+
| nas-backend | ontap-nas      | 98e19b74-aec7-4a3d-8dcf-128e5033b214 |
online |         0 |
+-----+-----+-----+-----+
+-----+-----+

cp sample-input/storage-class-csi.yaml.templ sample-input/storage-class-
basic-csi.yaml

# Modify __BACKEND_TYPE__ with the storage driver field above (e.g.,
ontap-nas)
vi sample-input/storage-class-basic-csi.yaml

```

Manage storage classes

You can view existing storage classes, set a default storage class, identify the storage class backend, and delete storage classes.

View the existing storage classes

- To view existing Kubernetes storage classes, run the following command:

```
kubectl get storageclass
```

- To view Kubernetes storage class detail, run the following command:

```
kubectl get storageclass <storage-class> -o json
```

- To view Trident's synchronized storage classes, run the following command:

```
tridentctl get storageclass
```

- To view Trident's synchronized storage class detail, run the following command:

```
tridentctl get storageclass <storage-class> -o json
```

Set a default storage class

Kubernetes 1.6 added the ability to set a default storage class. This is the storage class that will be used to provision a Persistent Volume if a user does not specify one in a Persistent Volume Claim (PVC).

- Define a default storage class by setting the annotation `storageclass.kubernetes.io/is-default-class` to true in the storage class definition. According to the specification, any other value or absence of the annotation is interpreted as false.
- You can configure an existing storage class to be the default storage class by using the following command:

```
kubectl patch storageclass <storage-class-name> -p '{"metadata": {"annotations":{"storageclass.kubernetes.io/is-default-class":"true"}}}'
```

- Similarly, you can remove the default storage class annotation by using the following command:

```
kubectl patch storageclass <storage-class-name> -p '{"metadata": {"annotations":{"storageclass.kubernetes.io/is-default-class":"false"}}}'
```

There are also examples in the Trident installer bundle that include this annotation.



There should be only one default storage class in your cluster at a time. Kubernetes does not technically prevent you from having more than one, but it will behave as if there is no default storage class at all.

Identify the backend for a storage class

This is an example of the kind of questions you can answer with the JSON that `tridentctl` outputs for Trident backend objects. This uses the `jq` utility, which you may need to install first.

```
tridentctl get storageclass -o json | jq '[.items[] | {storageClass: .Config.name, backends: [.storage]|unique}]'
```

Delete a storage class

To delete a storage class from Kubernetes, run the following command:

```
kubectl delete storageclass <storage-class>
```

`<storage-class>` should be replaced with your storage class.

Any persistent volumes that were created through this storage class will remain untouched, and Trident will continue to manage them.



Trident enforces a blank `fsType` for the volumes it creates. For iSCSI backends, it is recommended to enforce `parameters.fsType` in the StorageClass. You should delete existing StorageClasses and re-create them with `parameters.fsType` specified.

Provision and manage volumes

Provision a volume

Create a PersistentVolume (PV) and a PersistentVolumeClaim (PVC) that uses the configured Kubernetes StorageClass to request access to the PV. You can then mount the PV to a pod.

Overview

A [PersistentVolume](#) (PV) is a physical storage resource provisioned by the cluster administrator on a Kubernetes cluster. The [PersistentVolumeClaim](#) (PVC) is a request for access to the PersistentVolume on the cluster.

The PVC can be configured to request storage of a certain size or access mode. Using the associated StorageClass, the cluster administrator can control more than PersistentVolume size and access mode—such as performance or service level.

After you create the PV and PVC, you can mount the volume in a pod.

Sample manifests

PersistentVolume sample manifest

This sample manifest shows a basic PV of 10Gi that is associated with StorageClass `basic-csi`.

```
apiVersion: v1
kind: PersistentVolume
metadata:
  name: pv-storage
  labels:
    type: local
spec:
  storageClassName: basic-csi
  capacity:
    storage: 10Gi
  accessModes:
    - ReadWriteOnce
  hostPath:
    path: "/my/host/path"
```

PersistentVolumeClaim sample manifests

These examples show basic PVC configuration options.

PVC with RWO access

This example shows a basic PVC with RWO access that is associated with a StorageClass named `basic-csi`.

```
kind: PersistentVolumeClaim
apiVersion: v1
metadata:
  name: pvc-storage
spec:
  accessModes:
    - ReadWriteOnce
  resources:
    requests:
      storage: 1Gi
  storageClassName: basic-csi
```

PVC with NVMe/TCP

This example shows a basic PVC for NVMe/TCP with RWO access that is associated with a StorageClass named `protection-gold`.

```
---
kind: PersistentVolumeClaim
apiVersion: v1
metadata:
  name: pvc-san-nvme
spec:
  accessModes:
    - ReadWriteOnce
  resources:
    requests:
      storage: 300Mi
  storageClassName: protection-gold
```

Pod manifest samples

These examples show basic configurations to attach the PVC to a pod.

Basic configuration

```
kind: Pod
apiVersion: v1
metadata:
  name: pv-pod
spec:
  volumes:
    - name: pv-storage
      persistentVolumeClaim:
        claimName: basic
  containers:
    - name: pv-container
      image: nginx
      ports:
        - containerPort: 80
          name: "http-server"
      volumeMounts:
        - mountPath: "/my/mount/path"
          name: pv-storage
```

Basic NVMe/TCP configuration

```
---
apiVersion: v1
kind: Pod
metadata:
  creationTimestamp: null
  labels:
    run: nginx
    name: nginx
spec:
  containers:
  - image: nginx
    name: nginx
    resources: {}
    volumeMounts:
    - mountPath: "/usr/share/nginx/html"
      name: task-pv-storage
  dnsPolicy: ClusterFirst
  restartPolicy: Always
  volumes:
  - name: task-pv-storage
    persistentVolumeClaim:
      claimName: pvc-san-nvme
```

Create the PV and PVC

Steps

1. Create the PV.

```
kubectl create -f pv.yaml
```

2. Verify the PV status.

```
kubectl get pv
NAME          CAPACITY  ACCESS MODES  RECLAIM POLICY  STATUS  CLAIM
STORAGECLASS  REASON    AGE
pv-storage    4Gi      RWO           Retain          Available
7s
```

3. Create the PVC.


```
kubectl create -f pvc.yaml
```

4. Verify the PVC status.

```
kubectl get pvc
NAME          STATUS  VOLUME          CAPACITY  ACCESS MODES  STORAGECLASS  AGE
pvc-storage  Bound  pv-name         2Gi       RWO           trident       5m
```

5. Mount the volume in a pod.

```
kubectl create -f pv-pod.yaml
```



You can monitor the progress using `kubectl get pod --watch`.

6. Verify that the volume is mounted on `/my/mount/path`.

```
kubectl exec -it task-pv-pod -- df -h /my/mount/path
```

7. You can now delete the Pod. The Pod application will no longer exist, but the volume will remain.

```
kubectl delete pod task-pv-pod
```

Refer to [Kubernetes and Trident objects](#) for details on how storage classes interact with the `PersistentVolumeClaim` and parameters for controlling how Trident provisions volumes.

Expand volumes

Trident provides Kubernetes users the ability to expand their volumes after they are created. Find information about the configurations required to expand iSCSI and NFS volumes.

Expand an iSCSI volume

You can expand an iSCSI Persistent Volume (PV) by using the CSI provisioner.



iSCSI volume expansion is supported by the `ontap-san`, `ontap-san-economy`, `solidfire-san` drivers and requires Kubernetes 1.16 and later.

Step 1: Configure the `StorageClass` to support volume expansion

Edit the `StorageClass` definition to set the `allowVolumeExpansion` field to `true`.

```
cat storageclass-ontapsan.yaml
---
apiVersion: storage.k8s.io/v1
kind: StorageClass
metadata:
  name: ontap-san
provisioner: csi.trident.netapp.io
parameters:
  backendType: "ontap-san"
allowVolumeExpansion: True
```

For an already existing StorageClass, edit it to include the `allowVolumeExpansion` parameter.

Step 2: Create a PVC with the StorageClass you created

Edit the PVC definition and update the `spec.resources.requests.storage` to reflect the newly desired size, which must be greater than the original size.

```
cat pvc-ontapsan.yaml
kind: PersistentVolumeClaim
apiVersion: v1
metadata:
  name: san-pvc
spec:
  accessModes:
  - ReadWriteOnce
  resources:
    requests:
      storage: 1Gi
  storageClassName: ontap-san
```

Trident creates a Persistent Volume (PV) and associates it with this Persistent Volume Claim (PVC).

```

kubect1 get pvc
NAME          STATUS    VOLUME                                     CAPACITY
ACCESS MODES  STORAGECLASS  AGE
san-pvc      Bound     pvc-8a814d62-bd58-4253-b0d1-82f2885db671  1Gi
RWO          ontap-san    8s

kubect1 get pv
NAME          CAPACITY  ACCESS MODES
RECLAIM POLICY  STATUS    CLAIM          STORAGECLASS  REASON  AGE
pvc-8a814d62-bd58-4253-b0d1-82f2885db671  1Gi      RWO
Delete        Bound     default/san-pvc  ontap-san    10s

```

Step 3: Define a pod that attaches the PVC

Attach the PV to a pod for it to be resized. There are two scenarios when resizing an iSCSI PV:

- If the PV is attached to a pod, Trident expands the volume on the storage backend, rescans the device, and resizes the filesystem.
- When attempting to resize an unattached PV, Trident expands the volume on the storage backend. After the PVC is bound to a pod, Trident rescans the device and resizes the filesystem. Kubernetes then updates the PVC size after the expand operation has successfully completed.

In this example, a pod is created that uses the `san-pvc`.

```

kubect1 get pod
NAME          READY    STATUS    RESTARTS   AGE
ubuntu-pod   1/1     Running   0           65s

kubect1 describe pvc san-pvc
Name:          san-pvc
Namespace:    default
StorageClass:  ontap-san
Status:        Bound
Volume:        pvc-8a814d62-bd58-4253-b0d1-82f2885db671
Labels:        <none>
Annotations:   pv.kubernetes.io/bind-completed: yes
               pv.kubernetes.io/bound-by-controller: yes
               volume.beta.kubernetes.io/storage-provisioner:
csi.trident.netapp.io
Finalizers:    [kubernetes.io/pvc-protection]
Capacity:      1Gi
Access Modes:  RWO
VolumeMode:    Filesystem
Mounted By:    ubuntu-pod

```

Step 4: Expand the PV

To resize the PV that has been created from 1Gi to 2Gi, edit the PVC definition and update the `spec.resources.requests.storage` to 2Gi.

```
kubectl edit pvc san-pvc
# Please edit the object below. Lines beginning with a '#' will be
ignored,
# and an empty file will abort the edit. If an error occurs while saving
this file will be
# reopened with the relevant failures.
#
apiVersion: v1
kind: PersistentVolumeClaim
metadata:
  annotations:
    pv.kubernetes.io/bind-completed: "yes"
    pv.kubernetes.io/bound-by-controller: "yes"
    volume.beta.kubernetes.io/storage-provisioner: csi.trident.netapp.io
  creationTimestamp: "2019-10-10T17:32:29Z"
  finalizers:
  - kubernetes.io/pvc-protection
  name: san-pvc
  namespace: default
  resourceVersion: "16609"
  selfLink: /api/v1/namespaces/default/persistentvolumeclaims/san-pvc
  uid: 8a814d62-bd58-4253-b0d1-82f2885db671
spec:
  accessModes:
  - ReadWriteOnce
  resources:
    requests:
      storage: 2Gi
  ...
```

Step 5: Validate the expansion

You can validate the expansion worked correctly by checking the size of the PVC, PV, and the Trident volume:

```

kubect1 get pvc san-pvc
NAME          STATUS    VOLUME                                     CAPACITY
ACCESS MODES  STORAGECLASS  AGE
san-pvc      Bound      pvc-8a814d62-bd58-4253-b0d1-82f2885db671  2Gi
RWO          ontap-san    11m
kubect1 get pv
NAME          CAPACITY  ACCESS MODES
RECLAIM POLICY  STATUS    CLAIM          STORAGECLASS  REASON  AGE
pvc-8a814d62-bd58-4253-b0d1-82f2885db671  2Gi      RWO
Delete        Bound     default/san-pvc  ontap-san    12m
tridentctl get volumes -n trident
+-----+-----+-----+
+-----+-----+-----+-----+
|          NAME          |  SIZE  | STORAGE CLASS |
PROTOCOL |          BACKEND UUID          |  STATE  |  MANAGED  |
+-----+-----+-----+-----+
+-----+-----+-----+-----+
| pvc-8a814d62-bd58-4253-b0d1-82f2885db671 | 2.0 GiB | ontap-san    |
block    | a9b7bfff-0505-4e31-b6c5-59f492e02d33 | online | true    |
+-----+-----+-----+-----+
+-----+-----+-----+-----+

```

Expand an NFS volume

Trident supports volume expansion for NFS PVs provisioned on `ontap-nas`, `ontap-nas-economy`, `ontap-nas-flexgroup`, `gcp-cvs`, and `azure-netapp-files` backends.

Step 1: Configure the StorageClass to support volume expansion

To resize an NFS PV, the admin first needs to configure the storage class to allow volume expansion by setting the `allowVolumeExpansion` field to `true`:

```

cat storageclass-ontapnas.yaml
apiVersion: storage.k8s.io/v1
kind: StorageClass
metadata:
  name: ontapnas
provisioner: csi.trident.netapp.io
parameters:
  backendType: ontap-nas
allowVolumeExpansion: true

```

If you have already created a storage class without this option, you can simply edit the existing storage class by using `kubect1 edit storageclass` to allow volume expansion.

Step 2: Create a PVC with the StorageClass you created

```
cat pvc-ontapnas.yaml
kind: PersistentVolumeClaim
apiVersion: v1
metadata:
  name: ontapnas20mb
spec:
  accessModes:
  - ReadWriteOnce
  resources:
    requests:
      storage: 20Mi
  storageClassName: ontapnas
```

Trident should create a 20MiB NFS PV for this PVC:

```
kubectl get pvc
NAME                STATUS    VOLUME
CAPACITY            ACCESS MODES  STORAGECLASS  AGE
ontapnas20mb       Bound      pvc-08f3d561-b199-11e9-8d9f-5254004dfdb7  20Mi
RWO                 ontapnas      9s

kubectl get pv pvc-08f3d561-b199-11e9-8d9f-5254004dfdb7
NAME                CAPACITY  ACCESS MODES
RECLAIM POLICY     STATUS    CLAIM                STORAGECLASS  REASON
AGE
pvc-08f3d561-b199-11e9-8d9f-5254004dfdb7  20Mi      RWO
Delete            Bound      default/ontapnas20mb  ontapnas
2m42s
```

Step 3: Expand the PV

To resize the newly created 20MiB PV to 1GiB, edit the PVC and set `spec.resources.requests.storage` to 1GiB:

```
kubectl edit pvc ontapnas20mb
# Please edit the object below. Lines beginning with a '#' will be
ignored,
# and an empty file will abort the edit. If an error occurs while saving
this file will be
# reopened with the relevant failures.
#
apiVersion: v1
kind: PersistentVolumeClaim
metadata:
  annotations:
    pv.kubernetes.io/bind-completed: "yes"
    pv.kubernetes.io/bound-by-controller: "yes"
    volume.beta.kubernetes.io/storage-provisioner: csi.trident.netapp.io
  creationTimestamp: 2018-08-21T18:26:44Z
  finalizers:
  - kubernetes.io/pvc-protection
  name: ontapnas20mb
  namespace: default
  resourceVersion: "1958015"
  selfLink: /api/v1/namespaces/default/persistentvolumeclaims/ontapnas20mb
  uid: c1bd7fa5-a56f-11e8-b8d7-fa163e59eaab
spec:
  accessModes:
  - ReadWriteOnce
  resources:
    requests:
      storage: 1Gi
  ...
```

Step 4: Validate the expansion

You can validate the resize worked correctly by checking the size of the PVC, PV, and the Trident volume:

```

kubect1 get pvc ontapnas20mb
NAME                STATUS      VOLUME
CAPACITY  ACCESS MODES  STORAGECLASS  AGE
ontapnas20mb  Bound        pvc-08f3d561-b199-11e9-8d9f-5254004dfdb7  1Gi
RWO                ontapnas                4m44s

kubect1 get pv pvc-08f3d561-b199-11e9-8d9f-5254004dfdb7
NAME                CAPACITY  ACCESS MODES
RECLAIM POLICY     STATUS    CLAIM                STORAGECLASS  REASON
AGE
pvc-08f3d561-b199-11e9-8d9f-5254004dfdb7  1Gi      RWO
Delete            Bound     default/ontapnas20mb  ontapnas
5m35s

tridentctl get volume pvc-08f3d561-b199-11e9-8d9f-5254004dfdb7 -n trident
+-----+-----+-----+-----+
+-----+-----+-----+-----+
|                NAME                |  SIZE  | STORAGE CLASS |
PROTOCOL |                BACKEND UUID         |  STATE  |  MANAGED  |
+-----+-----+-----+-----+
+-----+-----+-----+-----+
| pvc-08f3d561-b199-11e9-8d9f-5254004dfdb7 | 1.0 GiB | ontapnas      |
file      | c5a6f6a4-b052-423b-80d4-8fb491a14a22 | online | true      |
+-----+-----+-----+-----+
+-----+-----+-----+-----+

```

Import volumes

You can import existing storage volumes as a Kubernetes PV using `tridentctl import`.

Overview and considerations

You might import a volume into Trident to:

- Containerize an application and reuse its existing data set
- Use a clone of a data set for an ephemeral application
- Rebuild a failed Kubernetes cluster
- Migrate application data during disaster recovery

Considerations

Before importing a volume, review the following considerations.

- Trident can import RW (read-write) type ONTAP volumes only. DP (data protection) type volumes are SnapMirror destination volumes. You should break the mirror relationship before importing the volume into Trident.

- We suggest importing volumes without active connections. To import an actively-used volume, clone the volume and then perform the import.



This is especially important for block volumes as Kubernetes would be unaware of the previous connection and could easily attach an active volume to a pod. This can result in data corruption.

- Though `StorageClass` must be specified on a PVC, Trident does not use this parameter during import. Storage classes are used during volume creation to select from available pools based on storage characteristics. Because the volume already exists, no pool selection is required during import. Therefore, the import will not fail even if the volume exists on a backend or pool that does not match the storage class specified in the PVC.
- The existing volume size is determined and set in the PVC. After the volume is imported by the storage driver, the PV is created with a `ClaimRef` to the PVC.
 - The reclaim policy is initially set to `retain` in the PV. After Kubernetes successfully binds the PVC and PV, the reclaim policy is updated to match the reclaim policy of the Storage Class.
 - If the reclaim policy of the Storage Class is `delete`, the storage volume will be deleted when the PV is deleted.
- By default, Trident manages the PVC and renames the FlexVol and LUN on the backend. You can pass the `--no-manage` flag to import an unmanaged volume. If you use `--no-manage`, Trident does not perform any additional operations on the PVC or PV for the lifecycle of the objects. The storage volume is not deleted when the PV is deleted and other operations such as volume clone and volume resize are also ignored.



This option is useful if you want to use Kubernetes for containerized workloads but otherwise want to manage the lifecycle of the storage volume outside of Kubernetes.

- An annotation is added to the PVC and PV that serves a dual purpose of indicating that the volume was imported and if the PVC and PV are managed. This annotation should not be modified or removed.

Import a volume

You can use `tridentctl import` to import a volume.

Steps

1. Create the Persistent Volume Claim (PVC) file (for example, `pvc.yaml`) that will be used to create the PVC. The PVC file should include `name`, `namespace`, `accessModes`, and `storageClassName`. Optionally, you can specify `unixPermissions` in your PVC definition.

The following is an example of a minimum specification:

```
kind: PersistentVolumeClaim
apiVersion: v1
metadata:
  name: my_claim
  namespace: my_namespace
spec:
  accessModes:
    - ReadWriteOnce
  storageClassName: my_storage_class
```



Don't include additional parameters such as PV name or volume size. This can cause the import command to fail.

2. Use the `tridentctl import volume` command to specify the name of the Trident backend containing the volume and the name that uniquely identifies the volume on the storage (for example: ONTAP FlexVol, Element Volume, Cloud Volumes Service path). The `-f` argument is required to specify the path to the PVC file.

```
tridentctl import volume <backendName> <volumeName> -f <path-to-pvc-
file>
```

Examples

Review the following volume import examples for supported drivers.

ONTAP NAS and ONTAP NAS FlexGroup

Trident supports volume import using the `ontap-nas` and `ontap-nas-flexgroup` drivers.



- The `ontap-nas-economy` driver cannot import and manage qtrees.
- The `ontap-nas` and `ontap-nas-flexgroup` drivers do not allow duplicate volume names.

Each volume created with the `ontap-nas` driver is a FlexVol on the ONTAP cluster. Importing FlexVols with the `ontap-nas` driver works the same. A FlexVol that already exists on an ONTAP cluster can be imported as a `ontap-nas` PVC. Similarly, FlexGroup vols can be imported as `ontap-nas-flexgroup` PVCs.

ONTAP NAS examples

The following show an example of a managed volume and an unmanaged volume import.

Managed volume

The following example imports a volume named `managed_volume` on a backend named `ontap_nas`:

```
tridentctl import volume ontap_nas managed_volume -f <path-to-pvc-file>
```

PROTOCOL	NAME	BACKEND UUID	SIZE	STATE	STORAGE CLASS	MANAGED
file	pvc-bf5ad463-afbb-11e9-8d9f-5254004dfdb7	c5a6f6a4-b052-423b-80d4-8fb491a14a22	1.0 GiB	online	standard	true

Unmanaged volume

When using the `--no-manage` argument, Trident does not rename the volume.

The following example imports `unmanaged_volume` on the `ontap_nas` backend:

```
tridentctl import volume nas_blog unmanaged_volume -f <path-to-pvc-file> --no-manage
```

PROTOCOL	NAME	BACKEND UUID	SIZE	STATE	STORAGE CLASS	MANAGED
file	pvc-df07d542-afbc-11e9-8d9f-5254004dfdb7	c5a6f6a4-b052-423b-80d4-8fb491a14a22	1.0 GiB	online	standard	false

ONTAP SAN

Trident supports volume import using the `ontap-san` and `ontap-san-economy` drivers.

Trident can import ONTAP SAN FlexVols that contain a single LUN. This is consistent with the `ontap-san` driver, which creates a FlexVol for each PVC and a LUN within the FlexVol. Trident imports the FlexVol and associates it with the PVC definition.

ONTAP SAN examples

The following show an example of a managed volume and an unmanaged volume import.

Managed volume

For managed volumes, Trident renames the FlexVol to the `pvc-<uuid>` format and the LUN within the FlexVol to `lun0`.

The following example imports the `ontap-san-managed` FlexVol that is present on the `ontap_san_default` backend:

```
tridentctl import volume ontapsan_san_default ontap-san-managed -f pvc-  
basic-import.yaml -n trident -d
```

```
+-----+-----+-----+-----+  
+-----+-----+-----+-----+  
|          NAME          | SIZE | STORAGE CLASS |  
PROTOCOL |          BACKEND UUID          | STATE | MANAGED |  
+-----+-----+-----+-----+  
+-----+-----+-----+-----+  
| pvc-d6ee4f54-4e40-4454-92fd-d00fc228d74a | 20 MiB | basic          |  
block    | cd394786-ddd5-4470-adc3-10c5ce4ca757 | online | true      |  
+-----+-----+-----+-----+  
+-----+-----+-----+-----+
```

Unmanaged volume

The following example imports `unmanaged_example_volume` on the `ontap_san` backend:

```
tridentctl import volume -n trident san_blog unmanaged_example_volume  
-f pvc-import.yaml --no-manage
```

```
+-----+-----+-----+-----+  
+-----+-----+-----+-----+  
|          NAME          | SIZE  | STORAGE CLASS |  
PROTOCOL |          BACKEND UUID          | STATE | MANAGED |  
+-----+-----+-----+-----+  
+-----+-----+-----+-----+  
| pvc-1fc999c9-ce8c-459c-82e4-ed4380a4b228 | 1.0 GiB | san-blog      |  
block    | e3275890-7d80-4af6-90cc-c7a0759f555a | online | false    |  
+-----+-----+-----+-----+  
+-----+-----+-----+-----+
```

If you have LUNS mapped to igroups that share an IQN with a Kubernetes node IQN, as shown in the following example, you will receive the error: LUN already mapped to initiator(s) in this group. You will need to remove the initiator or unmap the LUN to import the volume.



```

Vserver  Igroup  Protocol OS Type  Initiators
-----
svm0     k8s-nodename.example.com-fe5d36f2-cded-4f38-9eb0-c7719fc2f9f3
         iscsi   linux   iqn.1994-05.com.redhat:4c2e1cf35e0
svm0     unmanaged-example-igroup
         mixed  linux   iqn.1994-05.com.redhat:4c2e1cf35e0
  
```

Element

Trident supports NetApp Element software and NetApp HCI volume import using the `solidfire-san` driver.



The Element driver supports duplicate volume names. However, Trident returns an error if there are duplicate volume names. As a workaround, clone the volume, provide a unique volume name, and import the cloned volume.

Element example

The following example imports an `element-managed` volume on backend `element_default`.

```
tridentctl import volume element_default element-managed -f pvc-basic-import.yaml -n trident -d
```

```

+-----+-----+-----+-----+-----+-----+
+-----+-----+-----+-----+-----+-----+
|          NAME          | SIZE | STORAGE CLASS |
PROTOCOL |          BACKEND UUID          | STATE | MANAGED |
+-----+-----+-----+-----+-----+-----+
+-----+-----+-----+-----+-----+-----+
| pvc-970ce1ca-2096-4ecd-8545-ac7edc24a8fe | 10 GiB | basic-element |
block   | d3ba047a-ea0b-43f9-9c42-e38e58301c49 | online | true   |
+-----+-----+-----+-----+-----+-----+
+-----+-----+-----+-----+-----+-----+
  
```

Google Cloud Platform

Trident supports volume import using the `gcp-cvs` driver.



To import a volume backed by the NetApp Cloud Volumes Service in Google Cloud Platform, identify the volume by its volume path. The volume path is the portion of the volume's export path after the `:/`. For example, if the export path is `10.0.0.1:/adroit-jolly-swift`, the volume path is `adroit-jolly-swift`.

Google Cloud Platform example

The following example imports a `gcp-cvs` volume on backend `gcpcvs_YEppr` with the volume path of `adroit-jolly-swift`.

```
tridentctl import volume gcpcvs_YEppr adroit-jolly-swift -f <path-to-pvc-
file> -n trident

+-----+-----+-----+-----+
+-----+-----+-----+-----+
|          NAME          | SIZE | STORAGE CLASS |
PROTOCOL |      BACKEND UUID      | STATE | MANAGED |
+-----+-----+-----+-----+
+-----+-----+-----+-----+
| pvc-a46ccab7-44aa-4433-94b1-e47fc8c0fa55 | 93 GiB | gcp-storage | file
| e1a6e65b-299e-4568-ad05-4f0a105c888f | online | true      |
+-----+-----+-----+-----+
+-----+-----+-----+-----+
```

Azure NetApp Files

Trident supports volume import using the `azure-netapp-files` driver.



To import an Azure NetApp Files volume, identify the volume by its volume path. The volume path is the portion of the volume's export path after the `:/`. For example, if the mount path is `10.0.0.2:/importvoll`, the volume path is `importvoll`.

Azure NetApp Files example

The following example imports an `azure-netapp-files` volume on backend `azurenetaappfiles_40517` with the volume path `importvoll`.

```
tridentctl import volume azurenetaappfiles_40517 importvoll -f <path-to-
pvc-file> -n trident

+-----+-----+-----+-----+
+-----+-----+-----+-----+
|          NAME          | SIZE | STORAGE CLASS |
PROTOCOL |      BACKEND UUID      | STATE | MANAGED |
+-----+-----+-----+-----+
+-----+-----+-----+-----+
| pvc-0ee95d60-fd5c-448d-b505-b72901b3a4ab | 100 GiB | anf-storage |
file | 1c01274f-d94b-44a3-98a3-04c953c9a51e | online | true      |
+-----+-----+-----+-----+
+-----+-----+-----+-----+
```

Customize volume names and labels

With Trident, you can assign meaningful names and labels to volumes you create. This helps you identify and easily map volumes to their respective Kubernetes resources (PVCs). You can also define templates at the backend level for creating custom volume names and custom labels; any volumes that you create, import, or clone will adhere to the templates.

Before you begin

Customizable volume names and labels support:

1. Volume create, import, and clone operations.
2. In the case of ontap-nas-economy driver, only the name of the Qtree volume complies with the name template.
3. In the case of ontap-san-economy driver, only the LUN name complies with the name template.

Limitations

1. Customizable volume names are compatible with ONTAP on-premises drivers only.
2. Customizable volume names do not apply to existing volumes.

Key behaviors of customizable volume names

1. If a failure occurs due to invalid syntax in a name template, the backend creation fails. However, if the template application fails, the volume will be named according to existing naming convention.
2. Storage prefix is not applicable when a volume is named using a name template from the backend configuration. Any desired prefix value may be directly added to the template.

Backend configuration examples with name template and labels

Custom name templates can be defined at the root and/or pool level.

Root level example

```
{
  "version": 1,
  "storageDriverName": "ontap-nas",
  "backendName": "ontap-nfs-backend",
  "managementLIF": "<ip address>",
  "svm": "svm0",
  "username": "<admin>",
  "password": "<password>",
  "defaults": {
    "nameTemplate":
      "{{.volume.Name}}_{{.labels.cluster}}_{{.volume.Namespace}}_{{.volume.Requ
      estName}}"
  },
  "labels": {"cluster": "ClusterA", "PVC":
    "{{.volume.Namespace}}_{{.volume.RequestName}}"
  }
}
```

Pool level example

```
{
  "version": 1,
  "storageDriverName": "ontap-nas",
  "backendName": "ontap-nfs-backend",
  "managementLIF": "<ip address>",
  "svm": "svm0",
  "username": "<admin>",
  "password": "<password>",
  "useREST": true,
  "storage": [
    {
      "labels":{"labelname":"label1", "name": "{{ .volume.Name }}"},
      "defaults":
      {
        "nameTemplate": "pool01_{{ .volume.Name }}_{{ .labels.cluster
}}_{{ .volume.Namespace }}_{{ .volume.RequestName }}"
      }
    },
    {
      "labels":{"cluster":"label2", "name": "{{ .volume.Name }}"},
      "defaults":
      {
        "nameTemplate": "pool02_{{ .volume.Name }}_{{ .labels.cluster
}}_{{ .volume.Namespace }}_{{ .volume.RequestName }}"
      }
    }
  ]
}
```

Name template examples

Example 1:

```
"nameTemplate": "{{ .config.StoragePrefix }}_{{ .volume.Name }}_{{
.config.BackendName }}"
```

Example 2:

```
"nameTemplate": "pool_{{ .config.StoragePrefix }}_{{ .volume.Name }}_{{
slice .volume.RequestName 1 5 }}"
```

Points to consider

1. In the case of volume imports, the labels are updated only if the existing volume has labels in a specific format. For example: `{"provisioning":{"Cluster":"ClusterA", "PVC": "pvcname"}}`.
2. In the case of managed volume imports, the volume name follows the name template defined at the root level in the backend definition.
3. Trident does not support the use of a slice operator with the storage prefix.
4. If the templates do not result in unique volume names, Trident will append a few random characters to create unique volume names.
5. If the custom name for a NAS economy volume exceeds 64 characters in length, Trident will name the volumes according to the existing naming convention. For all other ONTAP drivers, if the volume name exceeds the name limit, the volume creation process fails.

Share an NFS volume across namespaces

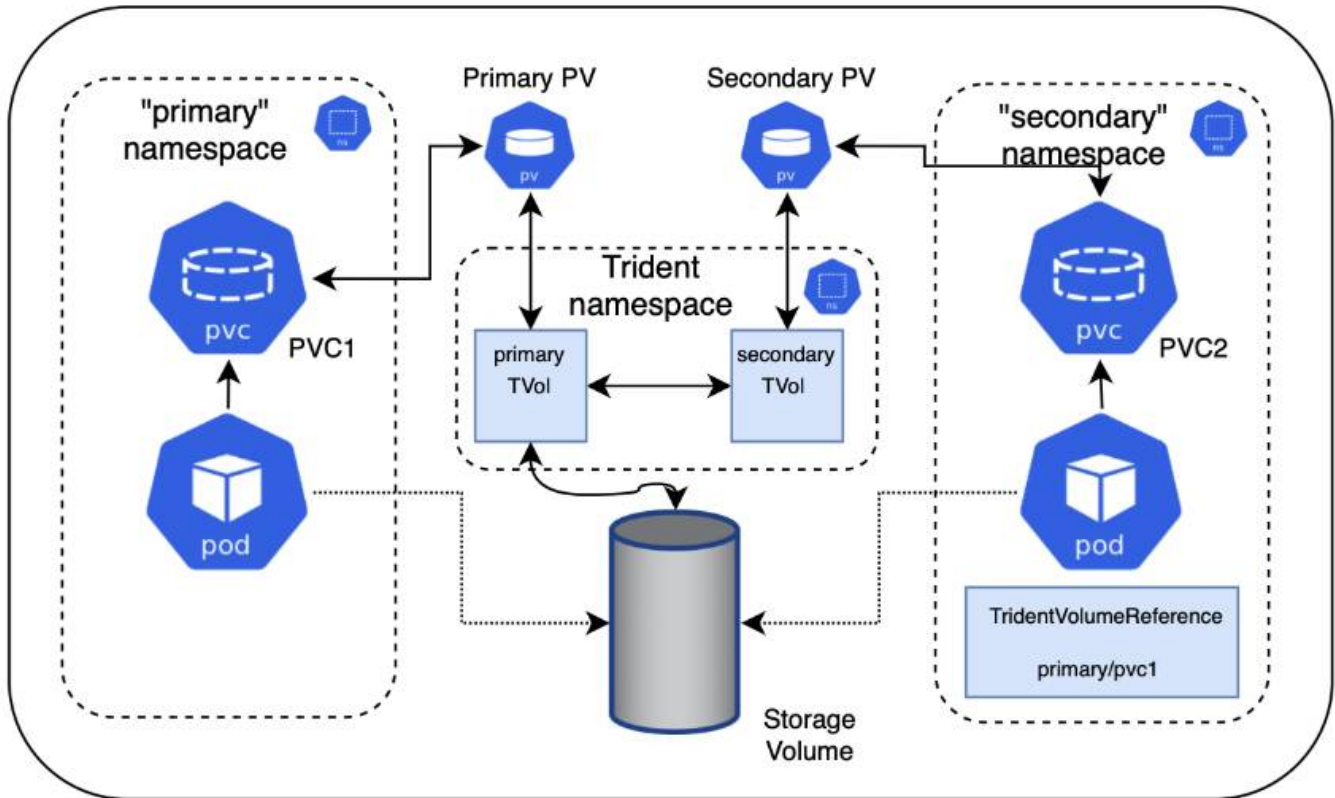
Using Trident, you can create a volume in a primary namespace and share it in one or more secondary namespaces.

Features

The `TridentVolumeReference` CR allows you to securely share ReadWriteMany (RWX) NFS volumes across one or more Kubernetes namespaces. This Kubernetes-native solution has the following benefits:

- Multiple levels of access control to ensure security
- Works with all Trident NFS volume drivers
- No reliance on `tridentctl` or any other non-native Kubernetes feature

This diagram illustrates NFS volume sharing across two Kubernetes namespaces.



Quick start

You can set up NFS volume sharing in just a few steps.

1

Configure source PVC to share the volume

The source namespace owner grants permission to access the data in the source PVC.

2

Grant permission to create a CR in the destination namespace

The cluster administrator grants permission to the owner of the destination namespace to create the TridentVolumeReference CR.

3

Create TridentVolumeReference in the destination namespace

The owner of the destination namespace creates the TridentVolumeReference CR to refer to the source PVC.

4

Create the subordinate PVC in the destination namespace

The owner of the destination namespace creates the subordinate PVC to use the data source from the source PVC.

Configure the source and destination namespaces

To ensure security, cross namespace sharing requires collaboration and action by the source namespace

owner, cluster administrator, and destination namespace owner. The user role is designated in each step.

Steps

1. **Source namespace owner:** Create the PVC (pvc1) in the source namespace that grants permission to share with the destination namespace (namespace2) using the `shareToNamespace` annotation.

```
kind: PersistentVolumeClaim
apiVersion: v1
metadata:
  name: pvc1
  namespace: namespace1
  annotations:
    trident.netapp.io/shareToNamespace: namespace2
spec:
  accessModes:
    - ReadWriteMany
  storageClassName: trident-csi
  resources:
    requests:
      storage: 100Gi
```

Trident creates the PV and its backend NFS storage volume.



- You can share the PVC to multiple namespaces using a comma-delimited list. For example, `trident.netapp.io/shareToNamespace: namespace2, namespace3, namespace4`.
- You can share to all namespaces using `*`. For example, `trident.netapp.io/shareToNamespace: *`
- You can update the PVC to include the `shareToNamespace` annotation at any time.

2. **Cluster admin:** Create the custom role and kubeconfig to grant permission to the destination namespace owner to create the `TridentVolumeReference` CR in the destination namespace.
3. **Destination namespace owner:** Create a `TridentVolumeReference` CR in the destination namespace that refers to the source namespace pvc1.

```
apiVersion: trident.netapp.io/v1
kind: TridentVolumeReference
metadata:
  name: my-first-tvr
  namespace: namespace2
spec:
  pvcName: pvc1
  pvcNamespace: namespace1
```

4. **Destination namespace owner:** Create a PVC (pvc2) in destination namespace (namespace2) using the `shareFromPVC` annotation to designate the source PVC.

```
kind: PersistentVolumeClaim
apiVersion: v1
metadata:
  annotations:
    trident.netapp.io/shareFromPVC: namespace1/pvc1
  name: pvc2
  namespace: namespace2
spec:
  accessModes:
    - ReadWriteMany
  storageClassName: trident-csi
  resources:
    requests:
      storage: 100Gi
```



The size of the destination PVC must be less than or equal than the source PVC.

Results

Trident reads the `shareFromPVC` annotation on the destination PVC and creates the destination PV as a subordinate volume with no storage resource of its own that points to the source PV and shares the source PV storage resource. The destination PVC and PV appear bound as normal.

Delete a shared volume

You can delete a volume that is shared across multiple namespaces. Trident will remove access to the volume on the source namespace and maintain access for other namespaces that share the volume. When all namespaces that reference the volume are removed, Trident deletes the volume.

Use `tridentctl get` to query subordinate volumes

Using the `tridentctl` utility, you can run the `get` command to get subordinate volumes. For more information, refer to [tridentctl commands and options](#).

```
Usage:
  tridentctl get [option]
```

Flags:

- `-h, --help`: Help for volumes.
- `--parentOfSubordinate string`: Limit query to subordinate source volume.
- `--subordinateOf string`: Limit query to subordinates of volume.

Limitations

- Trident cannot prevent destination namespaces from writing to the shared volume. You should use file locking or other processes to prevent overwriting shared volume data.
- You cannot revoke access to the source PVC by removing the `shareToNamespace` or `shareFromNamespace` annotations or deleting the `TridentVolumeReference` CR. To revoke access, you must delete the subordinate PVC.
- Snapshots, clones, and mirroring are not possible on subordinate volumes.

For more information

To learn more about cross-namespace volume access:

- Visit [Sharing volumes between namespaces: Say hello to cross-namespace volume access](#).
- Watch the demo on [NetAppTV](#).

Use CSI Topology

Trident can selectively create and attach volumes to nodes present in a Kubernetes cluster by making use of the [CSI Topology feature](#).

Overview

Using the CSI Topology feature, access to volumes can be limited to a subset of nodes, based on regions and availability zones. Cloud providers today enable Kubernetes administrators to spawn nodes that are zone based. Nodes can be located in different availability zones within a region, or across various regions. To facilitate the provisioning of volumes for workloads in a multi-zone architecture, Trident uses CSI Topology.



Learn more about the CSI Topology feature [here](#).

Kubernetes provides two unique volume binding modes:

- With `VolumeBindingMode` set to `Immediate`, Trident creates the volume without any topology awareness. Volume binding and dynamic provisioning are handled when the PVC is created. This is the default `VolumeBindingMode` and is suited for clusters that do not enforce topology constraints. Persistent Volumes are created without having any dependency on the requesting pod's scheduling requirements.
- With `VolumeBindingMode` set to `WaitForFirstConsumer`, the creation and binding of a Persistent Volume for a PVC is delayed until a pod that uses the PVC is scheduled and created. This way, volumes are created to meet the scheduling constraints that are enforced by topology requirements.



The `WaitForFirstConsumer` binding mode does not require topology labels. This can be used independent of the CSI Topology feature.

What you'll need

To make use of CSI Topology, you need the following:

- A Kubernetes cluster running a [supported Kubernetes version](#)

```
kubectl version
Client Version: version.Info{Major:"1", Minor:"19",
GitVersion:"v1.19.3",
GitCommit:"1e11e4a2108024935ecfcb2912226cedeaafd99df",
GitTreeState:"clean", BuildDate:"2020-10-14T12:50:19Z",
GoVersion:"go1.15.2", Compiler:"gc", Platform:"linux/amd64"}
Server Version: version.Info{Major:"1", Minor:"19",
GitVersion:"v1.19.3",
GitCommit:"1e11e4a2108024935ecfcb2912226cedeaafd99df",
GitTreeState:"clean", BuildDate:"2020-10-14T12:41:49Z",
GoVersion:"go1.15.2", Compiler:"gc", Platform:"linux/amd64"}
```

- Nodes in the cluster should have labels that introduce topology awareness (topology.kubernetes.io/region and topology.kubernetes.io/zone). These labels **should be present on nodes in the cluster** before Trident is installed for Trident to be topology aware.

```
kubectl get nodes -o=jsonpath='{range .items[*]}[.metadata.name],
[.metadata.labels]]{"\n"}{end}' | grep --color "topology.kubernetes.io"
[node1,
{"beta.kubernetes.io/arch":"amd64","beta.kubernetes.io/os":"linux","kuber
netes.io/arch":"amd64","kubernetes.io/hostname":"node1","kubernetes.io/
os":"linux","node-
role.kubernetes.io/master":"","topology.kubernetes.io/region":"us-
east1","topology.kubernetes.io/zone":"us-east1-a"}]
[node2,
{"beta.kubernetes.io/arch":"amd64","beta.kubernetes.io/os":"linux","kuber
netes.io/arch":"amd64","kubernetes.io/hostname":"node2","kubernetes.io/
os":"linux","node-
role.kubernetes.io/worker":"","topology.kubernetes.io/region":"us-
east1","topology.kubernetes.io/zone":"us-east1-b"}]
[node3,
{"beta.kubernetes.io/arch":"amd64","beta.kubernetes.io/os":"linux","kuber
netes.io/arch":"amd64","kubernetes.io/hostname":"node3","kubernetes.io/
os":"linux","node-
role.kubernetes.io/worker":"","topology.kubernetes.io/region":"us-
east1","topology.kubernetes.io/zone":"us-east1-c"}]
```

Step 1: Create a topology-aware backend

Trident storage backends can be designed to selectively provision volumes based on availability zones. Each backend can carry an optional `supportedTopologies` block that represents a list of zones and regions that are supported. For StorageClasses that make use of such a backend, a volume would only be created if requested by an application that is scheduled in a supported region/zone.

Here is an example backend definition:

YAML

```
---
version: 1
storageDriverName: ontap-san
backendName: san-backend-us-east1
managementLIF: 192.168.27.5
svm: iscsi_svm
username: admin
password: password
supportedTopologies:
- topology.kubernetes.io/region: us-east1
  topology.kubernetes.io/zone: us-east1-a
- topology.kubernetes.io/region: us-east1
  topology.kubernetes.io/zone: us-east1-b
```

JSON

```
{
  "version": 1,
  "storageDriverName": "ontap-san",
  "backendName": "san-backend-us-east1",
  "managementLIF": "192.168.27.5",
  "svm": "iscsi_svm",
  "username": "admin",
  "password": "password",
  "supportedTopologies": [
    {"topology.kubernetes.io/region": "us-east1",
     "topology.kubernetes.io/zone": "us-east1-a"},
    {"topology.kubernetes.io/region": "us-east1",
     "topology.kubernetes.io/zone": "us-east1-b"}
  ]
}
```



`supportedTopologies` is used to provide a list of regions and zones per backend. These regions and zones represent the list of permissible values that can be provided in a StorageClass. For StorageClasses that contain a subset of the regions and zones provided in a backend, Trident creates a volume on the backend.

You can define `supportedTopologies` per storage pool as well. See the following example:

```

---
version: 1
storageDriverName: ontap-nas
backendName: nas-backend-us-central1
managementLIF: 172.16.238.5
svm: nfs_svm
username: admin
password: password
supportedTopologies:
- topology.kubernetes.io/region: us-central1
  topology.kubernetes.io/zone: us-central1-a
- topology.kubernetes.io/region: us-central1
  topology.kubernetes.io/zone: us-central1-b
storage:
- labels:
    workload: production
  supportedTopologies:
  - topology.kubernetes.io/region: us-central1
    topology.kubernetes.io/zone: us-central1-a
- labels:
    workload: dev
  supportedTopologies:
  - topology.kubernetes.io/region: us-central1
    topology.kubernetes.io/zone: us-central1-b

```

In this example, the region and zone labels stand for the location of the storage pool.

`topology.kubernetes.io/region` and `topology.kubernetes.io/zone` dictate where the storage pools can be consumed from.

Step 2: Define StorageClasses that are topology aware

Based on the topology labels that are provided to the nodes in the cluster, StorageClasses can be defined to contain topology information. This will determine the storage pools that serve as candidates for PVC requests made, and the subset of nodes that can make use of the volumes provisioned by Trident.

See the following example:

```
apiVersion: storage.k8s.io/v1
kind: StorageClass
metadata:
  name: netapp-san-us-east1
  provisioner: csi.trident.netapp.io
  volumeBindingMode: WaitForFirstConsumer
  allowedTopologies:
  - matchLabelExpressions:
  - key: topology.kubernetes.io/zone
    values:
    - us-east1-a
    - us-east1-b
  - key: topology.kubernetes.io/region
    values:
    - us-east1
  parameters:
    fsType: "ext4"
```

In the StorageClass definition provided above, `volumeBindingMode` is set to `WaitForFirstConsumer`. PVCs that are requested with this StorageClass will not be acted upon until they are referenced in a pod. And, `allowedTopologies` provides the zones and region to be used. The `netapp-san-us-east1` StorageClass creates PVCs on the `san-backend-us-east1` backend defined above.

Step 3: Create and use a PVC

With the StorageClass created and mapped to a backend, you can now create PVCs.

See the example spec below:

```
---
kind: PersistentVolumeClaim
apiVersion: v1
metadata:
  name: pvc-san
spec:
  accessModes:
  - ReadWriteOnce
  resources:
    requests:
      storage: 300Mi
  storageClassName: netapp-san-us-east1
```

Creating a PVC using this manifest would result in the following:

```

kubect1 create -f pvc.yaml
persistentvolumeclaim/pvc-san created
kubect1 get pvc
NAME          STATUS      VOLUME     CAPACITY   ACCESS MODES   STORAGECLASS
AGE
pvc-san      Pending
2s
kubect1 describe pvc
Name:          pvc-san
Namespace:     default
StorageClass:  netapp-san-us-east1
Status:        Pending
Volume:
Labels:        <none>
Annotations:   <none>
Finalizers:    [kubernetes.io/pvc-protection]
Capacity:
Access Modes:
VolumeMode:    Filesystem
Mounted By:    <none>
Events:
  Type      Reason              Age   From
  ----      -
  Normal    WaitForFirstConsumer 6s    persistentvolume-controller
waiting for first consumer to be created before binding
  Message
  -----

```

For Trident to create a volume and bind it to the PVC, use the PVC in a pod. See the following example:

```

apiVersion: v1
kind: Pod
metadata:
  name: app-pod-1
spec:
  affinity:
    nodeAffinity:
      requiredDuringSchedulingIgnoredDuringExecution:
        nodeSelectorTerms:
          - matchExpressions:
              - key: topology.kubernetes.io/region
                operator: In
                values:
                  - us-east1
            preferredDuringSchedulingIgnoredDuringExecution:
              - weight: 1
                preference:
                  matchExpressions:
                    - key: topology.kubernetes.io/zone
                      operator: In
                      values:
                        - us-east1-a
                        - us-east1-b
      securityContext:
        runAsUser: 1000
        runAsGroup: 3000
        fsGroup: 2000
    volumes:
      - name: voll
        persistentVolumeClaim:
          claimName: pvc-san
    containers:
      - name: sec-ctx-demo
        image: busybox
        command: [ "sh", "-c", "sleep 1h" ]
        volumeMounts:
          - name: voll
            mountPath: /data/demo
        securityContext:
          allowPrivilegeEscalation: false

```

This podSpec instructs Kubernetes to schedule the pod on nodes that are present in the `us-east1` region, and choose from any node that is present in the `us-east1-a` or `us-east1-b` zones.

See the following output:

```
kubectl get pods -o wide
NAME          READY   STATUS    RESTARTS   AGE   IP              NODE
NOMINATED NODE READINESS GATES
app-pod-1    1/1     Running   0           19s   192.168.25.131  node2
<none>      <none>
kubectl get pvc -o wide
NAME          STATUS   VOLUME                                     CAPACITY
ACCESS MODES  STORAGECLASS          AGE   VOLUMEMODE
pvc-san      Bound    pvc-ecb1e1a0-840c-463b-8b65-b3d033e2e62b  300Mi
RWO           netapp-san-us-east1  48s   Filesystem
```

Update backends to include `supportedTopologies`

Pre-existing backends can be updated to include a list of `supportedTopologies` using `tridentctl backend update`. This will not affect volumes that have already been provisioned, and will only be used for subsequent PVCs.

Find more information

- [Manage resources for containers](#)
- [nodeSelector](#)
- [Affinity and anti-affinity](#)
- [Taints and Tolerations](#)

Work with snapshots

Kubernetes volume snapshots of Persistent Volumes (PVs) enable point-in-time copies of volumes. You can create a snapshot of a volume created using Trident, import a snapshot created outside of Trident, create a new volume from an existing snapshot, and recover volume data from snapshots.

Overview

Volume snapshot is supported by `ontap-nas`, `ontap-nas-flexgroup`, `ontap-san`, `ontap-san-economy`, `solidfire-san`, `gcp-cvs`, and `azure-netapp-files` drivers.

Before you begin

You must have an external snapshot controller and Custom Resource Definitions (CRDs) to work with snapshots. This is the responsibility of the Kubernetes orchestrator (for example: Kubeadm, GKE, OpenShift).

If your Kubernetes distribution does not include the snapshot controller and CRDs, refer to [Deploy a volume snapshot controller](#).



Don't create a snapshot controller if creating on-demand volume snapshots in a GKE environment. GKE uses a built-in, hidden snapshot controller.

Create a volume snapshot

Steps

1. Create a `VolumeSnapshotClass`. For more information, refer to [VolumeSnapshotClass](#).
 - The `driver` points to the Trident CSI driver.
 - `deletionPolicy` can be `Delete` or `Retain`. When set to `Retain`, the underlying physical snapshot on the storage cluster is retained even when the `VolumeSnapshot` object is deleted.

Example

```
cat snap-sc.yaml
apiVersion: snapshot.storage.k8s.io/v1
kind: VolumeSnapshotClass
metadata:
  name: csi-snapclass
driver: csi.trident.netapp.io
deletionPolicy: Delete
```

2. Create a snapshot of an existing PVC.

Examples

- This example creates a snapshot of an existing PVC.

```
cat snap.yaml
apiVersion: snapshot.storage.k8s.io/v1
kind: VolumeSnapshot
metadata:
  name: pvc1-snap
spec:
  volumeSnapshotClassName: csi-snapclass
  source:
    persistentVolumeClaimName: pvc1
```

- This example creates a volume snapshot object for a PVC named `pvc1` and the name of the snapshot is set to `pvc1-snap`. A `VolumeSnapshot` is analogous to a PVC and is associated with a `VolumeSnapshotContent` object that represents the actual snapshot.

```
kubectl create -f snap.yaml
volumesnapshot.snapshot.storage.k8s.io/pvc1-snap created

kubectl get volumesnapshots
NAME                AGE
pvc1-snap           50s
```

- You can identify the `VolumeSnapshotContent` object for the `pvc1-snap` `VolumeSnapshot` by

describing it. The `Snapshot Content Name` identifies the `VolumeSnapshotContent` object which serves this snapshot. The `Ready To Use` parameter indicates that the snapshot can be used to create a new PVC.

```
kubectl describe volumesnapshots pvc1-snap
Name:          pvc1-snap
Namespace:     default
.
.
.
Spec:
  Snapshot Class Name:  pvc1-snap
  Snapshot Content Name: snapcontent-e8d8a0ca-9826-11e9-9807-
525400f3f660
  Source:
    API Group:
    Kind:      PersistentVolumeClaim
    Name:      pvc1
Status:
  Creation Time:  2019-06-26T15:27:29Z
  Ready To Use:  true
  Restore Size:  3Gi
.
.
```

Create a PVC from a volume snapshot

You can use `dataSource` to create a PVC using a `VolumeSnapshot` named `<pvc-name>` as the source of the data. After the PVC is created, it can be attached to a pod and used just like any other PVC.



The PVC will be created in the same backend as the source volume. Refer to [KB: Creating a PVC from a Trident PVC Snapshot cannot be created in an alternate backend](#).

The following example creates the PVC using `pvc1-snap` as the data source.


```

cat pvc-from-snap.yaml
apiVersion: v1
kind: PersistentVolumeClaim
metadata:
  name: pvc-from-snap
spec:
  accessModes:
    - ReadWriteOnce
  storageClassName: golden
  resources:
    requests:
      storage: 3Gi
  dataSource:
    name: pvcl-snap
    kind: VolumeSnapshot
    apiGroup: snapshot.storage.k8s.io

```

Import a volume snapshot

Trident supports the [Kubernetes pre-provisioned snapshot process](#) to enable the cluster administrator to create a `VolumeSnapshotContent` object and import snapshots created outside of Trident.

Before you begin

Trident must have created or imported the snapshot's parent volume.

Steps

1. **Cluster admin:** Create a `VolumeSnapshotContent` object that references the backend snapshot. This initiates the snapshot workflow in Trident.
 - Specify the name of the backend snapshot in annotations as `trident.netapp.io/internalSnapshotName: <"backend-snapshot-name">`.
 - Specify `<name-of-parent-volume-in-trident>/<volume-snapshot-content-name>` in `snapshotHandle`. This is the only information provided to Trident by the external snapshotter in the `ListSnapshots` call.



The `<volumeSnapshotContentName>` cannot always match the backend snapshot name due to CR naming constraints.

Example

The following example creates a `VolumeSnapshotContent` object that references backend snapshot `snap-01`.

```

apiVersion: snapshot.storage.k8s.io/v1
kind: VolumeSnapshotContent
metadata:
  name: import-snap-content
  annotations:
    trident.netapp.io/internalSnapshotName: "snap-01" # This is the
name of the snapshot on the backend
spec:
  deletionPolicy: Retain
  driver: csi.trident.netapp.io
  source:
    snapshotHandle: pvc-f71223b5-23b9-4235-bbfe-e269ac7b84b0/import-
snap-content # <import PV name or source PV name>/<volume-snapshot-
content-name>

```

- Cluster admin:** Create the `VolumeSnapshot` CR that references the `VolumeSnapshotContent` object. This requests access to use the `VolumeSnapshot` in a given namespace.

Example

The following example creates a `VolumeSnapshot` CR named `import-snap` that references the `VolumeSnapshotContent` named `import-snap-content`.

```

apiVersion: snapshot.storage.k8s.io/v1
kind: VolumeSnapshot
metadata:
  name: import-snap
spec:
  # volumeSnapshotClassName: csi-snapclass (not required for pre-
provisioned or imported snapshots)
  source:
    volumeSnapshotContentName: import-snap-content

```

- Internal processing (no action required):** The external snapshotter recognizes the newly created `VolumeSnapshotContent` and runs the `ListSnapshots` call. Trident creates the `TridentSnapshot`.
 - The external snapshotter sets the `VolumeSnapshotContent` to `readyToUse` and the `VolumeSnapshot` to `true`.
 - Trident returns `readyToUse=true`.
- Any user:** Create a `PersistentVolumeClaim` to reference the new `VolumeSnapshot`, where the `spec.dataSource` (or `spec.dataSourceRef`) name is the `VolumeSnapshot` name.

Example

The following example creates a PVC referencing the `VolumeSnapshot` named `import-snap`.

```
apiVersion: v1
kind: PersistentVolumeClaim
metadata:
  name: pvc-from-snap
spec:
  accessModes:
    - ReadWriteOnce
  storageClassName: simple-sc
  resources:
    requests:
      storage: 1Gi
  dataSource:
    name: import-snap
    kind: VolumeSnapshot
    apiGroup: snapshot.storage.k8s.io
```

Recover volume data using snapshots

The snapshot directory is hidden by default to facilitate maximum compatibility of volumes provisioned using the `ontap-nas` and `ontap-nas-economy` drivers. Enable the `.snapshot` directory to recover data from snapshots directly.

Use the volume snapshot restore ONTAP CLI to restore a volume to a state recorded in a prior snapshot.

```
cluster1::*> volume snapshot restore -vserver vs0 -volume vol3 -snapshot
vol3_snap_archive
```



When you restore a snapshot copy, the existing volume configuration is overwritten. Changes made to volume data after the snapshot copy was created are lost.

Delete a PV with associated snapshots

When deleting a Persistent Volume with associated snapshots, the corresponding Trident volume is updated to a “Deleting state”. Remove the volume snapshots to delete the Trident volume.

Deploy a volume snapshot controller

If your Kubernetes distribution does not include the snapshot controller and CRDs, you can deploy them as follows.

Steps

1. Create volume snapshot CRDs.

```
cat snapshot-setup.sh
#!/bin/bash
# Create volume snapshot CRDs
kubectl apply -f https://raw.githubusercontent.com/kubernetes-
csi/external-snapshotter/release-
6.1/client/config/crd/snapshot.storage.k8s.io_volumesnapshotclasses.yaml
kubectl apply -f https://raw.githubusercontent.com/kubernetes-
csi/external-snapshotter/release-
6.1/client/config/crd/snapshot.storage.k8s.io_volumesnapshotcontents.yam
l
kubectl apply -f https://raw.githubusercontent.com/kubernetes-
csi/external-snapshotter/release-
6.1/client/config/crd/snapshot.storage.k8s.io_volumesnapshots.yaml
```

2. Create the snapshot controller.

```
kubectl apply -f https://raw.githubusercontent.com/kubernetes-
csi/external-snapshotter/release-6.1/deploy/kubernetes/snapshot-
controller/rbac-snapshot-controller.yaml
kubectl apply -f https://raw.githubusercontent.com/kubernetes-
csi/external-snapshotter/release-6.1/deploy/kubernetes/snapshot-
controller/setup-snapshot-controller.yaml
```



If necessary, open `deploy/kubernetes/snapshot-controller/rbac-snapshot-controller.yaml` and update namespace to your namespace.

Related links

- [Volume snapshots](#)
- [VolumeSnapshotClass](#)

Manage and monitor Trident

Upgrade Trident

Upgrade Trident

Beginning with the 24.02 release, Trident follows a four-month release cadence, delivering three major releases every calendar year. Each new release builds on the previous releases and provides new features, performance enhancements, bug fixes, and improvements. We encourage you to upgrade at least once a year to take advantage of the new features in Trident.

Considerations before upgrading

When upgrading to the latest release of Trident, consider the following:

- There should be only one Trident instance installed across all the namespaces in a given Kubernetes cluster.
- Trident 23.07 and later requires v1 volume snapshots and no longer supports alpha or beta snapshots.
- If you created Cloud Volumes Service for Google Cloud in the [CVS service type](#), you must update the backend configuration to use the `standardsw` or `zoneredundantstandardsw` service level when upgrading from Trident 23.01. Failure to update the `serviceLevel` in the backend could cause volumes to fail. Refer to [CVS service type samples](#) for details.
- When upgrading, it is important you provide `parameter.fsType` in `StorageClasses` used by Trident. You can delete and re-create `StorageClasses` without disrupting pre-existing volumes.
 - This is a **requirement** for enforcing [security contexts](#) for SAN volumes.
 - The [sample input](#) directory contains examples, such as `storage-class-basic.yaml.templ` and `storage-class-bronze-default.yaml`.
 - For more information, refer to [Known Issues](#).

Step 1: Select a version

Trident versions follow a date-based `YY.MM` naming convention, where "YY" is the last two digits of the year and "MM" is the month. Dot releases follow a `YY.MM.X` convention, where "X" is the patch level. You will select the version to upgrade to based on the version you are upgrading from.

- You can perform a direct upgrade to any target release that is within a four-release window of your installed version. For example, you can directly upgrade from 23.04 (or any 23.04 dot release) to 24.06.
- If you are upgrading from a release outside of the four-release window, perform a multi-step upgrade. Use the upgrade instructions for the [earlier version](#) you are upgrading from to upgrade to the most recent release that fits the four-release window. For example, if you are running 22.01 and want to upgrade to 24.06:
 1. First upgrade from 22.07 to 23.04.
 2. Then upgrade from 23.04 to 24.06.



When upgrading using the Trident operator on OpenShift Container Platform, you should upgrade to Trident 21.01.1 or later. The Trident operator released with 21.01.0 contains a known issue that has been fixed in 21.01.1. For more details, refer to the [issue details on GitHub](#).

Step 2: Determine the original installation method

To determine which version you used to originally install Trident:

1. Use `kubectl get pods -n trident` to examine the pods.
 - If there is no operator pod, Trident was installed using `tridentctl`.
 - If there is an operator pod, Trident was installed using the Trident operator either manually or using Helm.
2. If there is an operator pod, use `kubectl describe torc` to determine if Trident was installed using Helm.
 - If there is a Helm label, Trident was installed using Helm.
 - If there is no Helm label, Trident was installed manually using the Trident operator.

Step 3: Select an upgrade method

Generally, you should upgrade using the same method you used for the initial installation, however you can [move between installation methods](#). There are two options to upgrade Trident.

- [Upgrade using the Trident operator](#)



We suggest you review [Understand the operator upgrade workflow](#) before upgrading with the operator.

- [Upgrade using `tridentctl`](#)

Upgrade with the operator

Understand the operator upgrade workflow

Before using the Trident operator to upgrade Trident, you should understand the background processes that occur during upgrade. This includes changes to the Trident controller, controller Pod and node Pods, and node DaemonSet that enable rolling updates.

Trident operator upgrade handling

One of the many [benefits of using the Trident operator](#) to install and upgrade Trident is the automatic handling of Trident and Kubernetes objects without disrupting existing mounted volumes. In this way, Trident can support upgrades with zero downtime, or [rolling updates](#). In particular, the Trident operator communicates with the Kubernetes cluster to:

- Delete and recreate the Trident Controller deployment and node DaemonSet.
- Replace the Trident Controller Pod and Trident Node Pods with new versions.
 - If a node is not updated, it does not prevent remaining nodes from being updated.

- Only nodes with a running Trident Node Pod can mount volumes.



For more information about Trident architecture on the Kubernetes cluster, refer to [Trident architecture](#).

Operator upgrade workflow

When you initiate an upgrade using the Trident operator:

1. The **Trident operator**:
 - a. Detects the currently installed version of Trident (version n).
 - b. Updates all Kubernetes objects including CRDs, RBAC, and Trident SVC.
 - c. Deletes the Trident Controller deployment for version n .
 - d. Creates the Trident Controller deployment for version $n+1$.
2. **Kubernetes** creates Trident Controller Pod for $n+1$.
3. The **Trident operator**:
 - a. Deletes the Trident Node DaemonSet for n . The operator does not wait for Node Pod termination.
 - b. Creates the Trident Node Daemonset for $n+1$.
4. **Kubernetes** creates Trident Node Pods on nodes not running Trident Node Pod n . This ensures there is never more than one Trident Node Pod, of any version, on a node.

Upgrade a Trident installation using Trident operator or Helm

You can upgrade Trident using the Trident operator either manually or using Helm. You can upgrade from a Trident operator installation to another Trident operator installation or upgrade from a `tridentctl` installation to a Trident operator version. Review [Select an upgrade method](#) before upgrading a Trident operator installation.

Upgrade a manual installation

You can upgrade from a cluster-scoped Trident operator installation to another cluster-scoped Trident operator installation. All Trident versions 21.01 and above use a cluster-scoped operator.



To upgrade from Trident that was installed using the namespace-scoped operator (versions 20.07 through 20.10), use the upgrade instructions for [your installed version](#) of Trident.

About this task

Trident provides a bundle file you can use to install the operator and create associated objects for your Kubernetes version.

- For clusters running Kubernetes 1.24, use [bundle_pre_1_25.yaml](#).
- For clusters running Kubernetes 1.25 or later, use [bundle_post_1_25.yaml](#).

Before you begin

Ensure you are using a Kubernetes cluster running [a supported Kubernetes version](#).

Steps

1. Verify your Trident version:

```
./tridentctl -n trident version
```

2. Delete the Trident operator that was used to install the current Trident instance. For example, if you are upgrading from 23.07, run the following command:

```
kubectl delete -f 23.07.0/trident-installer/deploy/<bundle.yaml> -n trident
```

3. If you customized your initial installation using `TridentOrchestrator` attributes, you can edit the `TridentOrchestrator` object to modify the installation parameters. This might include changes made to specify mirrored Trident and CSI image registries for offline mode, enable debug logs, or specify image pull secrets.

4. Install Trident using the correct bundle YAML file for your environment, where `<bundle.yaml>` is `bundle_pre_1_25.yaml` or `bundle_post_1_25.yaml` based on your Kubernetes version. For example, if you are installing Trident 24.10, run the following command:

```
kubectl create -f 24.10.0/trident-installer/deploy/<bundle.yaml> -n trident
```

Upgrade a Helm installation

You can upgrade a Trident Helm installation.



When upgrading a Kubernetes cluster from 1.24 to 1.25 or later that has Trident installed, you must update `values.yaml` to set `excludePodSecurityPolicy` to `true` or add `--set excludePodSecurityPolicy=true` to the `helm upgrade` command before you can upgrade the cluster.

If you have already upgraded your Kubernetes cluster from 1.24 to 1.25 without upgrading the Trident helm, the helm upgrade fails. For the helm upgrade to go through, perform these steps as pre-requisites:

1. Install the `helm-mapkubeapis` plugin from <https://github.com/helm/helm-mapkubeapis>.
2. Perform a dry run for the Trident release in the namespace where Trident is installed. This lists out the resources, which will be cleaned up.

```
helm mapkubeapis --dry-run trident --namespace trident
```

3. Perform a full run with helm to do the cleanup.

```
helm mapkubeapis trident --namespace trident
```


Steps

1. If you [installed Trident using Helm](#), you can use `helm upgrade trident netapp-trident/trident-operator --version 100.2410.0` to upgrade in one step. If you did not add the Helm repo or cannot use it to upgrade:
 - a. Download the latest Trident release from [the Assets section on GitHub](#).
 - b. Use the `helm upgrade` command where `trident-operator-24.10.0.tgz` reflects the version that you want to upgrade to.

```
helm upgrade <name> trident-operator-24.10.0.tgz
```



If you set custom options during the initial installation (such as specifying private, mirrored registries for Trident and CSI images), append the `helm upgrade` command using `--set` to ensure those options are included in the upgrade command, otherwise the values will reset to default.

2. Run `helm list` to verify that the chart and app version have both been upgraded. Run `tridentctl logs` to review any debug messages.

Upgrade from a `tridentctl` installation to Trident operator

You can upgrade to the latest release of the Trident operator from a `tridentctl` installation. The existing backends and PVCs will automatically be available.



Before switching between installation methods, review [Moving between installation methods](#).

Steps

1. Download the latest Trident release.

```
# Download the release required [24.10.0]
mkdir 24.10.0
cd 24.10.0
wget
https://github.com/NetApp/trident/releases/download/v24.10.0/trident-
installer-24.10.0.tar.gz
tar -xf trident-installer-24.10.0.tar.gz
cd trident-installer
```

2. Create the `tridentorchestrator` CRD from the manifest.

```
kubectl create -f
deploy/crds/trident.netapp.io_tridentorchestrators_crd_post1.16.yaml
```

3. Deploy the cluster-scoped operator in the same namespace.

```
kubectl create -f deploy/<bundle-name.yaml>

serviceaccount/trident-operator created
clusterrole.rbac.authorization.k8s.io/trident-operator created
clusterrolebinding.rbac.authorization.k8s.io/trident-operator created
deployment.apps/trident-operator created
podsecuritypolicy.policy/tridentoperatorpods created

#Examine the pods in the Trident namespace
```

NAME	READY	STATUS	RESTARTS	AGE
trident-controller-79df798bdc-m79dc	6/6	Running	0	150d
trident-node-linux-xrst8	2/2	Running	0	150d
trident-operator-5574dbbc68-nthjv	1/1	Running	0	1m30s

4. Create a TridentOrchestrator CR for installing Trident.

```
cat deploy/crds/tridentorchestrator_cr.yaml
apiVersion: trident.netapp.io/v1
kind: TridentOrchestrator
metadata:
  name: trident
spec:
  debug: true
  namespace: trident

kubectl create -f deploy/crds/tridentorchestrator_cr.yaml

#Examine the pods in the Trident namespace
```

NAME	READY	STATUS	RESTARTS	AGE
trident-csi-79df798bdc-m79dc	6/6	Running	0	1m
trident-csi-xrst8	2/2	Running	0	1m
trident-operator-5574dbbc68-nthjv	1/1	Running	0	5m41s

5. Confirm Trident was upgraded to the intended version.

```
kubectl describe torc trident | grep Message -A 3

Message:          Trident installed
Namespace:        trident
Status:           Installed
Version:          v24.10.0
```

Upgrade with tridentctl

You can easily upgrade an existing Trident installation using `tridentctl`.

About this task

Uninstalling and reinstalling Trident acts as an upgrade. When you uninstall Trident, the Persistent Volume Claim (PVC) and Persistent Volume (PV) used by the Trident deployment are not deleted. PVs that have already been provisioned will remain available while Trident is offline, and Trident will provision volumes for any PVCs that are created in the interim after it is back online.

Before you begin

Review [Select an upgrade method](#) before upgrading using `tridentctl`.

Steps

1. Run the uninstall command in `tridentctl` to remove all of the resources associated with Trident except for the CRDs and related objects.

```
./tridentctl uninstall -n <namespace>
```

2. Reinstall Trident. Refer to [Install Trident using tridentctl](#).



Do not interrupt the upgrade process. Ensure the installer runs to completion.

Manage Trident using tridentctl

The [Trident installer bundle](#) includes the `tridentctl` command-line utility to provide simple access to Trident. Kubernetes users with sufficient privileges can use it to install Trident or manage the namespace that contains the Trident pod.

Commands and global flags

You can run `tridentctl help` to get a list of available commands for `tridentctl` or append the `--help` flag to any command to get a list of options and flags for that specific command.

```
tridentctl [command] [--optional-flag]
```

The Trident `tridentctl` utility supports the following commands and global flags.

Commands

create

Add a resource to Trident.

delete

Remove one or more resources from Trident.

get

Get one or more resources from Trident.

help

Help about any command.

images

Print a table of the container images Trident needs.

import

Import an existing resource to Trident.

install

Install Trident.

logs

Print the logs from Trident.

send

Send a resource from Trident.

uninstall

Uninstall Trident.

update

Modify a resource in Trident.

update backend state

Temporarily suspend backend operations.

upgrade

Upgrade a resource in Trident.

version

Print the version of Trident.

Global flags

-d, --debug

Debug output.

-h, --help

Help for `tridentctl`.

-k, --kubeconfig string

Specify the `KUBECONFIG` path to run commands locally or from one Kubernetes cluster to another.



Alternatively, you can export the `KUBECONFIG` variable to point to a specific Kubernetes cluster and issue `tridentctl` commands to that cluster.

-n, --namespace string

Namespace of Trident deployment.

-o, --output string

Output format. One of `json|yaml|name|wide|ps` (default).

-s, --server string

Address/port of Trident REST interface.



Trident REST interface can be configured to listen and serve at `127.0.0.1` (for IPv4) or `:::1` (for IPv6) only.

Command options and flags

create

Use the `create` command to add a resource to Trident.

```
tridentctl create [option]
```

Options

`backend`: Add a backend to Trident.

delete

Use the `delete` command to remove one or more resources from Trident.

```
tridentctl delete [option]
```

Options

`backend`: Delete one or more storage backends from Trident.

`snapshot`: Delete one or more volume snapshots from Trident.

`storageclass`: Delete one or more storage classes from Trident.

`volume`: Delete one or more storage volumes from Trident.

get

Use the `get` command to get one or more resources from Trident.

```
tridentctl get [option]
```

Options

- `backend`: Get one or more storage backends from Trident.
- `snapshot`: Get one or more snapshots from Trident.
- `storageclass`: Get one or more storage classes from Trident.
- `volume`: Get one or more volumes from Trident.

Flags

- `-h, --help`: Help for volumes.
- `--parentOfSubordinate string`: Limit query to subordinate source volume.
- `--subordinateOf string`: Limit query to subordinates of volume.

images

Use `images` flags to print a table of the container images Trident needs.

```
tridentctl images [flags]
```

Flags

- `-h, --help`: Help for images.
- `-v, --k8s-version string`: Semantic version of Kubernetes cluster.

import volume

Use the `import volume` command to import an existing volume to Trident.

```
tridentctl import volume <backendName> <volumeName> [flags]
```

Aliases

`volume, v`

Flags

- `-f, --filename string`: Path to YAML or JSON PVC file.
- `-h, --help`: Help for volume.
- `--no-manage`: Create PV/PVC only. Don't assume volume lifecycle management.

install

Use the `install` flags to install Trident.

```
tridentctl install [flags]
```

Flags

- `--autosupport-image string`: The container image for Autosupport Telemetry (default "netapp/trident autosupport:<current-version>").
- `--autosupport-proxy string`: The address/port of a proxy for sending Autosupport Telemetry.

`--enable-node-prep`: Attempt to install required packages on nodes.
`--generate-custom-yaml`: Generate YAML files without installing anything.
`-h, --help`: Help for install.
`--http-request-timeout`: Override the HTTP request timeout for Trident controller's REST API (default 1m30s).
`--image-registry string`: The address/port of an internal image registry.
`--k8s-timeout duration`: The timeout for all Kubernetes operations (default 3m0s).
`--kubelet-dir string`: The host location of kubelet's internal state (default "/var/lib/kubelet").
`--log-format string`: The Trident logging format (text, json) (default "text").
`--node-prep`: Enables Trident to prepare the nodes of the Kubernetes cluster to manage volumes using the specified data storage protocol. **Currently, `iscsi` is the only value supported.**
`--pv string`: The name of the legacy PV used by Trident, makes sure this doesn't exist (default "trident").
`--pvc string`: The name of the legacy PVC used by Trident, makes sure this doesn't exist (default "trident").
`--silence-autosupport`: Don't send autosupport bundles to NetApp automatically (default true).
`--silent`: Disable most output during installation.
`--trident-image string`: The Trident image to install.
`--use-custom-yaml`: Use any existing YAML files that exist in setup directory.
`--use-ipv6`: Use IPv6 for Trident's communication.

logs

Use `logs` flags to print the logs from Trident.

```
tridentctl logs [flags]
```

Flags

`-a, --archive`: Create a support archive with all logs unless otherwise specified.
`-h, --help`: Help for logs.
`-l, --log string`: Trident log to display. One of `trident|auto|trident-operator|all` (default "auto").
`--node string`: The Kubernetes node name from which to gather node pod logs.
`-p, --previous`: Get the logs for the previous container instance if it exists.
`--sidecars`: Get the logs for the sidecar containers.

send

Use the `send` command to send a resource from Trident.

```
tridentctl send [option]
```

Options

`autosupport`: Send an Autosupport archive to NetApp.

uninstall

Use `uninstall` flags to uninstall Trident.

```
tridentctl uninstall [flags]
```

Flags

- h, --help: Help for uninstall.
- silent: Disable most output during uninstall.

update

Use the `update` command to modify a resource in Trident.

```
tridentctl update [option]
```

Options

- backend: Update a backend in Trident.

update backend state

Use the `update backend state` command to suspend or resume backend operations.

```
tridentctl update backend state <backend-name> [flag]
```

Points to consider

- If a backend is created using a `TridentBackendConfig` (tbc), the backend cannot be updated using a `backend.json` file.
- If the `userState` has been set in a tbc, it cannot be modified using the `tridentctl update backend state <backend-name> --user-state suspended/normal` command.
- To regain the ability to set the `userState` via `tridentctl` after it has been set via tbc, the `userState` field must be removed from the tbc. This can be done using the `kubectl edit tbc` command. After the `userState` field is removed, you can use the `tridentctl update backend state` command to change the `userState` of a backend.
- Use the `tridentctl update backend state` to change the `userState`. You can also update the `userState` using `TridentBackendConfig` or `backend.json` file; this triggers a complete re-initialization of the backend and can be time-consuming.

Flags

- h, --help: Help for backend state.
- user-state: Set to `suspended` to pause backend operations. Set to `normal` to resume backend operations. When set to `suspended`:

- `AddVolume` and `Import Volume` are paused.
- `CloneVolume`, `ResizeVolume`, `PublishVolume`, `UnPublishVolume`, `CreateSnapshot`, `GetSnapshot`, `RestoreSnapshot`, `DeleteSnapshot`, `RemoveVolume`, `GetVolumeExternal`, `ReconcileNodeAccess` remain available.

You can also update the backend state using `userState` field in the backend configuration file `TridentBackendConfig` or `backend.json`.

For more information, refer to [Options for managing backends](#) and [Perform backend management with kubectl](#).

Example:

JSON

Follow these steps to update the `userState` using the `backend.json` file:

1. Edit the `backend.json` file to include the `userState` field with its value set to 'suspended'.
2. Update the backend using the `tridentctl backend update` command and the path to the updated `backend.json` file.

Example: `tridentctl backend update -f /<path to backend JSON file>/backend.json`

```
{
  "version": 1,
  "storageDriverName": "ontap-nas",
  "managementLIF": "<redacted>",
  "svm": "nas-svm",
  "backendName": "customBackend",
  "username": "<redacted>",
  "password": "<redacted>",
  "userState": "suspended",
}
```

YAML

You can edit the tbc after it has been applied using the `kubectl edit <tbc-name> -n <namespace>` command.

The following example updates the backend state to suspend using the `userState: suspended` option:

```
apiVersion: trident.netapp.io/v1
kind: TridentBackendConfig
metadata:
  name: backend-ontap-nas
spec:
  version: 1
  backendName: customBackend
  storageDriverName: ontap-nas
  managementLIF: <redacted>
  svm: nas-svm
userState: suspended
credentials:
  name: backend-tbc-ontap-nas-secret
```

version

Use `version` flags to print the version of `tridentctl` and the running Trident service.

```
tridentctl version [flags]
```

Flags

- `--client`: Client version only (no server required).
- `-h`, `--help`: Help for version.

Plugin support

Tridentctl supports plugins similar to `kubectl`. Tridentctl detects a plugin if the plugin binary file name follows the scheme "tridentctl-<plugin>", and the binary is located in a folder listed the `PATH` environment variable. All the detected plugins are listed in the plugin section of the `tridentctl` help. Optionally, you can also limit the search by specifying a plugin folder in the the environment variable `TRIDENTCTL_PLUGIN_PATH` (Example: `TRIDENTCTL_PLUGIN_PATH=~/.tridentctl-plugins/`). If the variable is used, `tridentctl` searches only in the specified folder.

Monitor Trident

Trident provides a set of Prometheus metrics endpoints that you can use to monitor Trident performance.

Overview

The metrics provided by Trident enable you to do the following:

- Keep tabs on Trident's health and configuration. You can examine how successful operations are and if it can communicate with the backends as expected.
- Examine backend usage information and understand how many volumes are provisioned on a backend and the amount of space consumed, and so on.
- Maintain a mapping of the amount of volumes provisioned on available backends.
- Track performance. You can take a look at how long it takes for Trident to communicate to backends and perform operations.



By default, Trident's metrics are exposed on the target port 8001 at the `/metrics` endpoint. These metrics are **enabled by default** when Trident is installed.

What you'll need

- A Kubernetes cluster with Trident installed.
- A Prometheus instance. This can be a [containerized Prometheus deployment](#) or you can choose to run Prometheus as a [native application](#).

Step 1: Define a Prometheus target

You should define a Prometheus target to gather the metrics and obtain information about the backends Trident manages, the volumes it creates, and so on. This [blog](#) explains how you can use Prometheus and Grafana with Trident to retrieve metrics. The blog explains how you can run Prometheus as an operator in your Kubernetes cluster and the creation of a ServiceMonitor to obtain Trident metrics.

Step 2: Create a Prometheus ServiceMonitor

To consume the Trident metrics, you should create a Prometheus ServiceMonitor that watches the `trident-csi` service and listens on the `metrics` port. A sample ServiceMonitor looks like this:

```
apiVersion: monitoring.coreos.com/v1
kind: ServiceMonitor
metadata:
  name: trident-sm
  namespace: monitoring
  labels:
    release: prom-operator
spec:
  jobLabel: trident
  selector:
    matchLabels:
      app: controller.csi.trident.netapp.io
  namespaceSelector:
    matchNames:
      - trident
  endpoints:
    - port: metrics
      interval: 15s
```

This ServiceMonitor definition retrieves metrics returned by the `trident-csi` service and specifically looks for the `metrics` endpoint of the service. As a result, Prometheus is now configured to understand Trident's metrics.

In addition to metrics available directly from Trident, kubelet exposes many `kubelet_volume_*` metrics via its own metrics endpoint. Kubelet can provide information about the volumes that are attached, and pods and other internal operations it handles. Refer to [here](#).

Step 3: Query Trident metrics with PromQL

PromQL is good for creating expressions that return time-series or tabular data.

Here are some PromQL queries that you can use:

Get Trident health information

- **Percentage of HTTP 2XX responses from Trident**

```
(sum (trident_rest_ops_seconds_total_count{status_code=~"2.."} OR on()
vector(0)) / sum (trident_rest_ops_seconds_total_count)) * 100
```

- **Percentage of REST responses from Trident via status code**

```
(sum (trident_rest_ops_seconds_total_count) by (status_code) / scalar
(sum (trident_rest_ops_seconds_total_count))) * 100
```

- **Average duration in ms of operations performed by Trident**

```
sum by (operation)
(trident_operation_duration_milliseconds_sum{success="true"}) / sum by
(operation)
(trident_operation_duration_milliseconds_count{success="true"})
```

Get Trident usage information

- **Average volume size**

```
trident_volume_allocated_bytes/trident_volume_count
```

- **Total volume space provisioned by each backend**

```
sum (trident_volume_allocated_bytes) by (backend_uuid)
```

Get individual volume usage



This is enabled only if kubelet metrics are also gathered.

- **Percentage of used space for each volume**

```
kubelet_volume_stats_used_bytes / kubelet_volume_stats_capacity_bytes *
100
```

Learn about Trident AutoSupport telemetry

By default, Trident sends Prometheus metrics and basic backend information to NetApp on a daily cadence.

- To stop Trident from sending Prometheus metrics and basic backend information to NetApp, pass the `--silence-autosupport` flag during Trident installation.
- Trident can also send container logs to NetApp Support on-demand via `tridentctl send autosupport`. You will need to trigger Trident to upload its logs. Before you submit logs, you should accept NetApp's [privacy policy](#).
- Unless specified, Trident fetches the logs from the past 24 hours.
- You can specify the log retention time frame with the `--since` flag. For example: `tridentctl send autosupport --since=1h`. This information is collected and sent via a `trident-autosupport`

container

that is installed alongside Trident. You can obtain the container image at [Trident AutoSupport](#).

- Trident AutoSupport does not gather or transmit Personally Identifiable Information (PII) or Personal Information. It comes with a [EULA](#) that is not applicable to the Trident container image itself. You can learn more about NetApp's commitment to data security and trust [here](#).

An example payload sent by Trident looks like this:

```
---
items:
- backendUUID: ff3852e1-18a5-4df4-b2d3-f59f829627ed
  protocol: file
  config:
    version: 1
    storageDriverName: ontap-nas
    debug: false
    debugTraceFlags:
    disableDelete: false
    serialNumbers:
    - nwkvzfanek_SN
    limitVolumeSize: ''
  state: online
  online: true
```

- The AutoSupport messages are sent to NetApp's AutoSupport endpoint. If you are using a private registry to store container images, you can use the `--image-registry` flag.
- You can also configure proxy URLs by generating the installation YAML files. This can be done by using `tridentctl install --generate-custom-yaml` to create the YAML files and adding the `--proxy-url` argument for the `trident-autosupport` container in `trident-deployment.yaml`.

Disable Trident metrics

To **disable** metrics from being reported, you should generate custom YAMLs (using the `--generate-custom-yaml` flag) and edit them to remove the `--metrics` flag from being invoked for the `trident-main` container.

Uninstall Trident

You should use the same method to uninstall Trident that you used to install Trident.

About this task

- If you need a fix for bugs observed after an upgrade, dependency issues, or an unsuccessful or incomplete upgrade, you should uninstall Trident and reinstall the earlier version using the specific instructions for that [version](#). This is the only recommended way to *downgrade* to an earlier version.
- For easy upgrade and reinstallation, uninstalling Trident does not remove the CRDs or related objects created by Trident. If you need to completely remove Trident and all of its data, refer to [Completely remove Trident and CRDs](#).

Before you begin

If you are decommissioning Kubernetes clusters, you must delete all applications that use volumes created by Trident prior to uninstalling. This ensures that PVCs are unpublished on Kubernetes nodes before they are deleted.

Determine the original installation method

You should use the same method to uninstall Trident that you used to install it. Before uninstalling, verify which version you used to originally install Trident.

1. Use `kubectl get pods -n trident` to examine the pods.
 - If there is no operator pod, Trident was installed using `tridentctl`.
 - If there is an operator pod, Trident was installed using the Trident operator either manually or using Helm.
2. If there is an operator pod, use `kubectl describe tproc trident` to determine if Trident was installed using Helm.
 - If there is a Helm label, Trident was installed using Helm.
 - If there is no Helm label, Trident was installed manually using the Trident operator.

Uninstall a Trident operator installation

You can uninstall a trident operator installation manually or using Helm.

Uninstall manual installation

If you installed Trident using the operator, you can uninstall it by doing one of the following:

1. **Edit `TridentOrchestrator` CR and set the uninstall flag:**

```
kubectl patch torc <trident-orchestrator-name> --type=merge -p
'{"spec":{"uninstall":true}}'
```

When the `uninstall` flag is set to `true`, the Trident operator uninstalls Trident, but does not remove the `TridentOrchestrator` itself. You should clean up the `TridentOrchestrator` and create a new one if you want to install Trident again.

2. **Delete `TridentOrchestrator`:** By removing the `TridentOrchestrator` CR that was used to deploy Trident, you instruct the operator to uninstall Trident. The operator processes the removal of `TridentOrchestrator` and proceeds to remove the Trident deployment and daemonset, deleting the Trident pods it had created as part of the installation.

```
kubectl delete -f deploy/<bundle.yaml> -n <namespace>
```

Uninstall Helm installation

If you installed Trident by using Helm, you can uninstall it by using `helm uninstall`.

```
#List the Helm release corresponding to the Trident install.
helm ls -n trident
NAME                NAMESPACE      REVISION      UPDATED
STATUS             CHART           APP VERSION
trident            trident         1             2021-04-20
00:26:42.417764794 +0000 UTC deployed  trident-operator-21.07.1
21.07.1

#Uninstall Helm release to remove Trident
helm uninstall trident -n trident
release "trident" uninstalled
```

Uninstall a tridentctl installation

Use the `uninstall` command in `tridentctl` to remove all of the resources associated with Trident except for the CRDs and related objects:

```
./tridentctl uninstall -n <namespace>
```

Trident for Docker

Prerequisites for deployment

You have to install and configure the necessary protocol prerequisites on your host before you can deploy Trident.

Verify the requirements

- Verify that your deployment meets all of the [requirements](#).
- Verify that you have a supported version of Docker installed. If your Docker version is out of date, [install or update it](#).

```
docker --version
```

- Verify that the protocol prerequisites are installed and configured on your host.

NFS tools

Install the NFS tools using the commands for your operating system.

RHEL 8+

```
sudo yum install -y nfs-utils
```

Ubuntu

```
sudo apt-get install -y nfs-common
```



Reboot your worker nodes after installing the NFS tools to prevent failure when attaching volumes to containers.

iSCSI tools

Install the iSCSI tools using the commands for your operating system.

RHEL 8+

1. Install the following system packages:

```
sudo yum install -y lsscsi iscsi-initiator-utils sg3_utils device-  
mapper-multipath
```

2. Check that iscsi-initiator-utils version is 6.2.0.874-2.el7 or later:

```
rpm -q iscsi-initiator-utils
```

3. Set scanning to manual:

```
sudo sed -i 's/^\(node.session.scan\) .*/\1 = manual/'  
/etc/iscsi/iscsid.conf
```

4. Enable multipathing:

```
sudo mpathconf --enable --with_multipathd y --find_multipaths n
```



Ensure `etc/multipath.conf` contains `find_multipaths no` under defaults.

5. Ensure that `iscsid` and `multipathd` are running:

```
sudo systemctl enable --now iscsid multipathd
```

6. Enable and start `iscsi`:

```
sudo systemctl enable --now iscsi
```

Ubuntu

1. Install the following system packages:

```
sudo apt-get install -y open-iscsi lsscsi sg3-utils multipath-tools  
scsitools
```

2. Check that `open-iscsi` version is 2.0.874-5ubuntu2.10 or later (for bionic) or 2.0.874-7.1ubuntu6.1 or later (for focal):

```
dpkg -l open-iscsi
```

3. Set scanning to manual:

```
sudo sed -i 's/^\(node.session.scan\) .*/\1 = manual/'  
/etc/iscsi/iscsid.conf
```

4. Enable multipathing:

```
sudo tee /etc/multipath.conf <<-EOF  
defaults {  
    user_friendly_names yes  
    find_multipaths no  
}  
EOF  
sudo systemctl enable --now multipath-tools.service  
sudo service multipath-tools restart
```



Ensure `etc/multipath.conf` contains `find_multipaths no` under `defaults`.

5. Ensure that `open-iscsi` and `multipath-tools` are enabled and running:

```
sudo systemctl status multipath-tools  
sudo systemctl enable --now open-iscsi.service  
sudo systemctl status open-iscsi
```

NVMe tools

Install the NVMe tools using the commands for your operating system.



- NVMe requires RHEL 9 or later.
- If the kernel version of your Kubernetes node is too old or if the NVMe package is not available for your kernel version, you might have to update the kernel version of your node to one with the NVMe package.

RHEL 9

```
sudo yum install nvme-cli
sudo yum install linux-modules-extra-$(uname -r)
sudo modprobe nvme-tcp
```

Ubuntu

```
sudo apt install nvme-cli
sudo apt -y install linux-modules-extra-$(uname -r)
sudo modprobe nvme-tcp
```

Deploy Trident

Trident for Docker provides direct integration with the Docker ecosystem for NetApp storage platforms. It supports the provisioning and management of storage resources from the storage platform to Docker hosts, with a framework for adding additional platforms in the future.

Multiple instances of Trident can run concurrently on the same host. This allows simultaneous connections to multiple storage systems and storage types, with the ability to customize the storage used for the Docker volumes.

What you'll need

See the [prerequisites for deployment](#). After you ensure the prerequisites are met, you are ready to deploy Trident.

Docker managed plugin method (version 1.13/17.03 and later)

Before you begin



If you have used Trident pre Docker 1.13/17.03 in the traditional daemon method, ensure that you stop the Trident process and restart your Docker daemon before using the managed plugin method.

1. Stop all running instances:

```
killall /usr/local/bin/netappdvp
killall /usr/local/bin/trident
```

2. Restart Docker.

```
systemctl restart docker
```

3. Ensure that you have Docker Engine 17.03 (new 1.13) or later installed.

```
docker --version
```

If your version is out of date, [install or update your installation](#).

Steps

1. Create a configuration file and specify the options as follows:

- `config`: The default filename is `config.json`, however you can use any name you choose by specifying the `config` option with the filename. The configuration file must be located in the `/etc/netappdvp` directory on the host system.
- `log-level`: Specify the logging level (`debug`, `info`, `warn`, `error`, `fatal`). The default is `info`.
- `debug`: Specify whether debug logging is enabled. Default is `false`. Overrides `log-level` if `true`.

- a. Create a location for the configuration file:

```
sudo mkdir -p /etc/netappdvp
```

- b. Create the configuration file:

```
cat << EOF > /etc/netappdvp/config.json
{
  "version": 1,
  "storageDriverName": "ontap-nas",
  "managementLIF": "10.0.0.1",
  "dataLIF": "10.0.0.2",
  "svm": "svm_nfs",
  "username": "vsadmin",
  "password": "password",
  "aggregate": "aggr1"
}
EOF
```

2. Start Trident using the managed plugin system. Replace `<version>` with the plugin version (`xxx.xx.x`) you are using.

```
docker plugin install --grant-all-permissions --alias netapp
netapp/trident-plugin:<version> config=myConfigFile.json
```

3. Begin using Trident to consume storage from the configured system.

- a. Create a volume named "firstVolume":

```
docker volume create -d netapp --name firstVolume
```

- b. Create a default volume when the container starts:

```
docker run --rm -it --volume-driver netapp --volume  
secondVolume:/my_vol alpine ash
```

- c. Remove the volume "firstVolume":

```
docker volume rm firstVolume
```

Traditional method (version 1.12 or earlier)

Before you begin

1. Ensure that you have Docker version 1.10 or later.

```
docker --version
```

If your version is out of date, update your installation.

```
curl -fsSL https://get.docker.com/ | sh
```

Or, [follow the instructions for your distribution](#).

2. Ensure that NFS and/or iSCSI is configured for your system.

Steps

1. Install and configure the NetApp Docker Volume Plugin:

- a. Download and unpack the application:

```
wget  
https://github.com/NetApp/trident/releases/download/v24.10.0/trident-  
installer-24.10.0.tar.gz  
tar xzf trident-installer-24.10.0.tar.gz
```

- b. Move to a location in the bin path:

```
sudo mv trident-installer/extras/bin/trident /usr/local/bin/  
sudo chown root:root /usr/local/bin/trident  
sudo chmod 755 /usr/local/bin/trident
```

c. Create a location for the configuration file:

```
sudo mkdir -p /etc/netappdvp
```

d. Create the configuration file:

```
cat << EOF > /etc/netappdvp/ontap-nas.json  
{  
  "version": 1,  
  "storageDriverName": "ontap-nas",  
  "managementLIF": "10.0.0.1",  
  "dataLIF": "10.0.0.2",  
  "svm": "svm_nfs",  
  "username": "vsadmin",  
  "password": "password",  
  "aggregate": "aggr1"  
}  
EOF
```

2. After placing the binary and creating the configuration file, start the Trident daemon using the desired configuration file.

```
sudo trident --config=/etc/netappdvp/ontap-nas.json
```



Unless specified, the default name for the volume driver is "netapp".

After the daemon is started, you can create and manage volumes by using the Docker CLI interface

3. Create a volume:

```
docker volume create -d netapp --name trident_1
```

4. Provision a Docker volume when starting a container:

```
docker run --rm -it --volume-driver netapp --volume trident_2:/my_vol  
alpine ash
```

5. Remove a Docker volume:

```
docker volume rm trident_1
docker volume rm trident_2
```

Start Trident at system startup

A sample unit file for systemd based systems can be found at `contrib/trident.service.example` in the Git repo. To use the file with RHEL, do the following:

1. Copy the file to the correct location.

You should use unique names for the unit files if you have more than one instance running.

```
cp contrib/trident.service.example
/usr/lib/systemd/system/trident.service
```

2. Edit the file, change the description (line 2) to match the driver name and the configuration file path (line 9) to reflect your environment.

3. Reload systemd for it to ingest changes:

```
systemctl daemon-reload
```

4. Enable the service.

This name varies depending on what you named the file in the `/usr/lib/systemd/system` directory.

```
systemctl enable trident
```

5. Start the service.

```
systemctl start trident
```

6. View the status.

```
systemctl status trident
```



Any time you modify the unit file, run the `systemctl daemon-reload` command for it to be aware of the changes.

Upgrade or uninstall Trident

You can safely upgrade Trident for Docker without any impact to volumes that are in use. During the upgrade process there will be a brief period where `docker volume` commands directed at the plugin will not succeed, and applications will be unable to mount volumes until the plugin is running again. Under most circumstances, this is a matter of seconds.

Upgrade

Perform the steps below to upgrade Trident for Docker.

Steps

1. List the existing volumes:

```
docker volume ls
DRIVER          VOLUME NAME
netapp:latest   my_volume
```

2. Disable the plugin:

```
docker plugin disable -f netapp:latest
docker plugin ls
ID              NAME          DESCRIPTION
ENABLED
7067f39a5df5   netapp:latest nDVP - NetApp Docker Volume
Plugin  false
```

3. Upgrade the plugin:

```
docker plugin upgrade --skip-remote-check --grant-all-permissions
netapp:latest netapp/trident-plugin:21.07
```



The 18.01 release of Trident replaces the nDVP. You should upgrade directly from the `netapp/ndvp-plugin` image to the `netapp/trident-plugin` image.

4. Enable the plugin:

```
docker plugin enable netapp:latest
```

5. Verify that the plugin is enabled:


```
docker plugin ls
ID                NAME                DESCRIPTION
ENABLED
7067f39a5df5     netapp:latest      Trident - NetApp Docker Volume
Plugin    true
```

6. Verify that the volumes are visible:

```
docker volume ls
DRIVER                VOLUME NAME
netapp:latest        my_volume
```



If you are upgrading from an old version of Trident (pre-20.10) to Trident 20.10 or later, you might run into an error. For more information, refer to [Known Issues](#). If you run into the error, you should first disable the plugin, then remove the plugin, and then install the required Trident version by passing an extra config parameter: `docker plugin install netapp/trident-plugin:20.10 --alias netapp --grant-all-permissions config=config.json`

Uninstall

Perform the steps below to uninstall Trident for Docker.

Steps

1. Remove any volumes that the plugin created.
2. Disable the plugin:

```
docker plugin disable netapp:latest
docker plugin ls
ID                NAME                DESCRIPTION
ENABLED
7067f39a5df5     netapp:latest      nDVP - NetApp Docker Volume
Plugin    false
```

3. Remove the plugin:

```
docker plugin rm netapp:latest
```

Work with volumes

You can easily create, clone, and remove volumes using the standard `docker volume`

commands with the Trident driver name specified when needed.

Create a volume

- Create a volume with a driver using the default name:

```
docker volume create -d netapp --name firstVolume
```

- Create a volume with a specific Trident instance:

```
docker volume create -d ntap_bronze --name bronzeVolume
```



If you do not specify any [options](#), the defaults for the driver are used.

- Override the default volume size. See the following example to create a 20GiB volume with a driver:

```
docker volume create -d netapp --name my_vol --opt size=20G
```



Volume sizes are expressed as strings containing an integer value with optional units (example: 10G, 20GB, 3TiB). If no units are specified, the default is G. Size units can be expressed either as powers of 2 (B, KiB, MiB, GiB, TiB) or powers of 10 (B, KB, MB, GB, TB). Shorthand units use powers of 2 (G = GiB, T = TiB, ...).

Remove a volume

- Remove the volume just like any other Docker volume:

```
docker volume rm firstVolume
```



When using the `solidfire-san` driver, the above example deletes and purges the volume.

Perform the steps below to upgrade Trident for Docker.

Clone a volume

When using the `ontap-nas`, `ontap-san`, `solidfire-san`, and `gcp-cvs` storage drivers, Trident can clone volumes. When using the `ontap-nas-flexgroup` or `ontap-nas-economy` drivers, cloning is not supported. Creating a new volume from an existing volume will result in a new snapshot being created.

- Inspect the volume to enumerate snapshots:

```
docker volume inspect <volume_name>
```

- Create a new volume from an existing volume. This will result in a new snapshot being created:

```
docker volume create -d <driver_name> --name <new_name> -o  
from=<source_docker_volume>
```

- Create a new volume from an existing snapshot on a volume. This will not create a new snapshot:

```
docker volume create -d <driver_name> --name <new_name> -o  
from=<source_docker_volume> -o fromSnapshot=<source_snap_name>
```

Example

```

docker volume inspect firstVolume

[
  {
    "Driver": "ontap-nas",
    "Labels": null,
    "Mountpoint": "/var/lib/docker-volumes/ontap-
nas/netappdvp_firstVolume",
    "Name": "firstVolume",
    "Options": {},
    "Scope": "global",
    "Status": {
      "Snapshots": [
        {
          "Created": "2017-02-10T19:05:00Z",
          "Name": "hourly.2017-02-10_1505"
        }
      ]
    }
  }
]

docker volume create -d ontap-nas --name clonedVolume -o from=firstVolume
clonedVolume

docker volume rm clonedVolume
docker volume create -d ontap-nas --name volFromSnap -o from=firstVolume
-o fromSnapshot=hourly.2017-02-10_1505
volFromSnap

docker volume rm volFromSnap

```

Access externally created volumes

You can access externally created block devices (or their clones) by containers using Trident **only** if they have no partitions and if their filesystem is supported by Trident (for example: an `ext4`-formatted `/dev/sdc1` will not be accessible via Trident).

Driver-specific volume options

Each storage driver has a different set of options, which you can specify at volume creation time to customize the outcome. See below for options that apply to your configured storage system.

Using these options during the volume create operation is simple. Provide the option and the value using the `-o` operator during the CLI operation. These override any equivalent values from the JSON configuration file.

ONTAP volume options

Volume create options for both NFS and iSCSI include the following:

Option	Description
size	The size of the volume, defaults to 1 GiB.
spaceReserve	Thin or thick provision the volume, defaults to thin. Valid values are <code>none</code> (thin provisioned) and <code>volume</code> (thick provisioned).
snapshotPolicy	This will set the snapshot policy to the desired value. The default is <code>none</code> , meaning no snapshots will automatically be created for the volume. Unless modified by your storage administrator, a policy named "default" exists on all ONTAP systems which creates and retains six hourly, two daily, and two weekly snapshots. The data preserved in a snapshot can be recovered by browsing to the <code>.snapshot</code> directory in any directory in the volume.
snapshotReserve	This will set the snapshot reserve to the desired percentage. The default is no value, meaning ONTAP will select the snapshotReserve (usually 5%) if you have selected a snapshotPolicy, or 0% if the snapshotPolicy is none. You can set the default snapshotReserve value in the config file for all ONTAP backends, and you can use it as a volume creation option for all ONTAP backends except <code>ontap-nas-economy</code> .
splitOnClone	When cloning a volume, this will cause ONTAP to immediately split the clone from its parent. The default is <code>false</code> . Some use cases for cloning volumes are best served by splitting the clone from its parent immediately upon creation, because there is unlikely to be any opportunity for storage efficiencies. For example, cloning an empty database can offer large time savings but little storage savings, so it's best to split the clone immediately.
encryption	Enable NetApp Volume Encryption (NVE) on the new volume; defaults to <code>false</code> . NVE must be licensed and enabled on the cluster to use this option. If NAE is enabled on the backend, any volume provisioned in Trident will be NAE enabled. For more information, refer to: How Trident works with NVE and NAE .

Option	Description
<code>tieringPolicy</code>	Sets the tiering policy to be used for the volume. This decides whether data is moved to the cloud tier when it becomes inactive (cold).

The following additional options are for NFS **only**:

Option	Description
<code>unixPermissions</code>	This controls the permission set for the volume itself. By default the permissions will be set to <code>---rwxr-xr-x</code> , or in numerical notation <code>0755</code> , and <code>root</code> will be the owner. Either the text or numerical format will work.
<code>snapshotDir</code>	Setting this to <code>true</code> will make the <code>.snapshot</code> directory visible to clients accessing the volume. The default value is <code>false</code> , meaning that visibility of the <code>.snapshot</code> directory is disabled by default. Some images, for example the official MySQL image, don't function as expected when the <code>.snapshot</code> directory is visible.
<code>exportPolicy</code>	Sets the export policy to be used for the volume. The default is <code>default</code> .
<code>securityStyle</code>	Sets the security style to be used for access to the volume. The default is <code>unix</code> . Valid values are <code>unix</code> and <code>mixed</code> .

The following additional options are for iSCSI **only**:

Option	Description
<code>fileSystemType</code>	Sets the file system used to format iSCSI volumes. The default is <code>ext4</code> . Valid values are <code>ext3</code> , <code>ext4</code> , and <code>xf</code> s.
<code>spaceAllocation</code>	Setting this to <code>false</code> will turn off the LUN's space-allocation feature. The default value is <code>true</code> , meaning ONTAP notifies the host when the volume has run out of space and the LUN in the volume cannot accept writes. This option also enables ONTAP to reclaim space automatically when your host deletes data.

Examples

See the examples below:

- Create a 10GiB volume:

```
docker volume create -d netapp --name demo -o size=10G -o
encryption=true
```

- Create a 100GiB volume with snapshots:

```
docker volume create -d netapp --name demo -o size=100G -o
snapshotPolicy=default -o snapshotReserve=10
```

- Create a volume which has the setUID bit enabled:

```
docker volume create -d netapp --name demo -o unixPermissions=4755
```

The minimum volume size is 20MiB.

If the snapshot reserve is not specified and the snapshot policy is none, Trident use a snapshot reserve of 0%.

- Create a volume with no snapshot policy and no snapshot reserve:

```
docker volume create -d netapp --name my_vol --opt snapshotPolicy=none
```

- Create a volume with no snapshot policy and a custom snapshot reserve of 10%:

```
docker volume create -d netapp --name my_vol --opt snapshotPolicy=none
--opt snapshotReserve=10
```

- Create a volume with a snapshot policy and a custom snapshot reserve of 10%:

```
docker volume create -d netapp --name my_vol --opt
snapshotPolicy=myPolicy --opt snapshotReserve=10
```

- Create a volume with a snapshot policy, and accept ONTAP's default snapshot reserve (usually 5%):

```
docker volume create -d netapp --name my_vol --opt
snapshotPolicy=myPolicy
```

Element software volume options

The Element software options expose the size and quality of service (QoS) policies associated with the volume. When the volume is created, the QoS policy associated with it is specified using the `-o type=service_level` nomenclature.

The first step to defining a QoS service level with the Element driver is to create at least one type and specify the minimum, maximum, and burst IOPS associated with a name in the configuration file.

Other Element software volume create options include the following:

Option	Description
size	The size of the volume, defaults to 1GiB or config entry ... "defaults": {"size": "5G"}.
blocksize	Use either 512 or 4096, defaults to 512 or config entry DefaultBlockSize.

Example

See the following sample configuration file with QoS definitions:

```
{
  "...": "...",
  "Types": [
    {
      "Type": "Bronze",
      "Qos": {
        "minIOPS": 1000,
        "maxIOPS": 2000,
        "burstIOPS": 4000
      }
    },
    {
      "Type": "Silver",
      "Qos": {
        "minIOPS": 4000,
        "maxIOPS": 6000,
        "burstIOPS": 8000
      }
    },
    {
      "Type": "Gold",
      "Qos": {
        "minIOPS": 6000,
        "maxIOPS": 8000,
        "burstIOPS": 10000
      }
    }
  ]
}
```


In the above configuration, we have three policy definitions: Bronze, Silver, and Gold. These names are arbitrary.

- Create a 10GiB Gold volume:

```
docker volume create -d solidfire --name sfGold -o type=Gold -o size=10G
```

- Create a 100GiB Bronze volume:

```
docker volume create -d solidfire --name sfBronze -o type=Bronze -o  
size=100G
```

Collect logs

You can collect logs for help with troubleshooting. The method you use to collect the logs varies based on how you are running the Docker plugin.

Collect logs for troubleshooting

Steps

1. If you are running Trident using the recommended managed plugin method (i.e., using `docker plugin` commands), view them as follows:

```
docker plugin ls  
ID                NAME                DESCRIPTION  
ENABLED  
4fb97d2b956b     netapp:latest      nDVP - NetApp Docker Volume  
Plugin           false  
journalctl -u docker | grep 4fb97d2b956b
```

The standard logging level should allow you to diagnose most issues. If you find that's not enough, you can enable debug logging.

2. To enable debug logging, install the plugin with debug logging enabled:

```
docker plugin install netapp/trident-plugin:<version> --alias <alias>  
debug=true
```

Or, enable debug logging when the plugin is already installed:

```
docker plugin disable <plugin>
docker plugin set <plugin> debug=true
docker plugin enable <plugin>
```

3. If you are running the binary itself on the host, logs are available in the host's `/var/log/netappdvp` directory. To enable debug logging, specify `-debug` when you run the plugin.

General troubleshooting tips

- The most common problem new users run into is a misconfiguration that prevents the plugin from initializing. When this happens you will likely see a message such as this when you try to install or enable the plugin:

```
Error response from daemon: dial unix /run/docker/plugins/<id>/netapp.sock:
connect: no such file or directory
```

This means that the plugin failed to start. Luckily, the plugin has been built with a comprehensive logging capability that should help you diagnose most of the issues you are likely to come across.

- If there are problems with mounting a PV to a container, ensure that `rpcbind` is installed and running. Use the required package manager for the host OS and check if `rpcbind` is running. You can check the status of the `rpcbind` service by running a `systemctl status rpcbind` or its equivalent.

Manage multiple Trident instances

Multiple instances of Trident are needed when you desire to have multiple storage configurations available simultaneously. The key to multiple instances is to give them different names using the `--alias` option with the containerized plugin, or `--volume-driver` option when instantiating Trident on the host.

Steps for Docker managed plugin (version 1.13/17.03 or later)

1. Launch the first instance specifying an alias and configuration file.

```
docker plugin install --grant-all-permissions --alias silver
netapp/trident-plugin:21.07 config=silver.json
```

2. Launch the second instance, specifying a different alias and configuration file.

```
docker plugin install --grant-all-permissions --alias gold
netapp/trident-plugin:21.07 config=gold.json
```

3. Create volumes specifying the alias as the driver name.

For example, for gold volume:

```
docker volume create -d gold --name ntapGold
```

For example, for silver volume:

```
docker volume create -d silver --name ntapSilver
```

Steps for traditional (version 1.12 or earlier)

1. Launch the plugin with an NFS configuration using a custom driver ID:

```
sudo trident --volume-driver=netapp-nas --config=/path/to/config-nfs.json
```

2. Launch the plugin with an iSCSI configuration using a custom driver ID:

```
sudo trident --volume-driver=netapp-san --config=/path/to/config-iscsi.json
```

3. Provision Docker volumes for each driver instance:

For example, for NFS:

```
docker volume create -d netapp-nas --name my_nfs_vol
```

For example, for iSCSI:

```
docker volume create -d netapp-san --name my_iscsi_vol
```

Storage configuration options

See the configuration options available for your Trident configurations.

Global configuration options

These configuration options apply to all Trident configurations, regardless of the storage platform being used.

Option	Description	Example
version	Config file version number	1

Option	Description	Example
storageDriverName	Name of storage driver	ontap-nas, ontap-san, ontap-nas-economy, ontap-nas-flexgroup, solidfire-san
storagePrefix	Optional prefix for volume names. Default: netappdvp_.	staging_
limitVolumeSize	Optional restriction on volume sizes. Default: "" (not enforced)	10g



Do not use `storagePrefix` (including the default) for Element backends. By default, the `solidfire-san` driver will ignore this setting and not use a prefix. We recommend using either a specific `tenantID` for Docker volume mapping or using the attribute data which is populated with the Docker version, driver info, and raw name from Docker in cases where any name munging may have been used.

Default options are available to avoid having to specify them on every volume you create. The `size` option is available for all the controller types. See the ONTAP configuration section for an example of how to set the default volume size.

Option	Description	Example
size	Optional default size for new volumes. Default: 1G	10G

ONTAP configuration

In addition to the global configuration values above, when using ONTAP, the following top-level options are available.

Option	Description	Example
managementLIF	IP address of ONTAP management LIF. You can specify a fully-qualified domain name (FQDN).	10.0.0.1

Option	Description	Example
dataLIF	<p>IP address of protocol LIF.</p> <p>ONTAP NAS drivers: We recommend specifying dataLIF. If not provided, Trident fetches data LIFs from the SVM. You can specify a fully-qualified domain name (FQDN) to be used for the NFS mount operations, allowing you to create a round-robin DNS to load-balance across multiple data LIFs.</p> <p>ONTAP SAN drivers: Do not specify for iSCSI. Trident uses ONTAP Selective LUN Map to discover the iSCSI LIFs needed to establish a multi path session. A warning is generated if dataLIF is explicitly defined.</p>	10.0.0.2
svm	Storage virtual machine to use (required, if management LIF is a cluster LIF)	svm_nfs
username	Username to connect to the storage device	vsadmin
password	Password to connect to the storage device	secret
aggregate	Aggregate for provisioning (optional; if set, must be assigned to the SVM). For the <code>ontap-nas-flexgroup</code> driver, this option is ignored. All aggregates assigned to the SVM are used to provision a FlexGroup volume.	aggr1
limitAggregateUsage	Optional, fail provisioning if usage is above this percentage	75%
nfsMountOptions	<p>Fine grained control of NFS mount options; defaults to “-o nfsvers=3”.</p> <p>Available only for the <code>ontap-nas</code> and <code>ontap-nas-economy</code> drivers. See NFS host configuration information here.</p>	-o nfsvers=4

Option	Description	Example
igroupName	Trident creates and manages per-node igroups as netappdvp. This value cannot be changed or omitted. Available only for the ontap-san driver.	netappdvp
limitVolumeSize	Maximum requestable volume size.	300g
qtreesPerFlexvol	Maximum qtrees per FlexVol, must be in range [50, 300], default is 200. For the ontap-nas-economy driver, this option allows customizing the maximum number of qtrees per FlexVol.	300
sanType	Supported for ontap-san driver only. Use to select <code>iscsi</code> for iSCSI, <code>nvme</code> for NVMe/TCP or <code>fc</code> for SCSI over Fibre Channel (FC). 'fc' (SCSI over FC) is a tech preview feature in the Trident 24.10 release.	<code>iscsi</code> if blank
limitVolumePoolSize	Supported for ontap-san-economy and ontap-san-economy drivers only. Limits FlexVol sizes in ONTAP ontap-nas-economy and ontap-SAN-economy drivers.	300g

Default options are available to avoid having to specify them on every volume you create:

Option	Description	Example
spaceReserve	Space reservation mode; <code>none</code> (thin provisioned) or <code>volume</code> (thick)	<code>none</code>
snapshotPolicy	Snapshot policy to use, default is <code>none</code>	<code>none</code>

Option	Description	Example
snapshotReserve	Snapshot reserve percentage, default is "" to accept the ONTAP default	10
splitOnClone	Split a clone from its parent upon creation, defaults to false	false
encryption	Enables NetApp Volume Encryption (NVE) on the new volume; defaults to false. NVE must be licensed and enabled on the cluster to use this option. If NAE is enabled on the backend, any volume provisioned in Trident will be NAE enabled. For more information, refer to: How Trident works with NVE and NAE .	true
unixPermissions	NAS option for provisioned NFS volumes, defaults to 777	777
snapshotDir	NAS option for access to the .snapshot directory.	"true" for NFSv4 "false" for NFSv3
exportPolicy	NAS option for the NFS export policy to use, defaults to default	default
securityStyle	NAS option for access to the provisioned NFS volume. NFS supports mixed and unix security styles. The default is unix.	unix
fileSystemType	SAN option to select the file system type, defaults to ext4	xfs
tieringPolicy	Tiering policy to use, default is none; snapshot-only for pre-ONTAP 9.5 SVM-DR configuration	none

Scaling options

The `ontap-nas` and `ontap-san` drivers create an ONTAP FlexVol for each Docker volume. ONTAP supports up to 1000 FlexVols per cluster node with a cluster maximum of 12,000 FlexVols. If your Docker volume requirements fit within that limitation, the `ontap-nas` driver is the preferred NAS solution due to the additional features offered by FlexVols, such as Docker-volume-granular snapshots and cloning.

If you need more Docker volumes than can be accommodated by the FlexVol limits, choose the `ontap-nas-economy` or the `ontap-san-economy` driver.

The `ontap-nas-economy` driver creates Docker volumes as ONTAP Qtrees within a pool of automatically managed FlexVols. Qtrees offer far greater scaling, up to 100,000 per cluster node and 2,400,000 per cluster, at the expense of some features. The `ontap-nas-economy` driver does not support Docker-volume-granular snapshots or cloning.



The `ontap-nas-economy` driver is not currently supported in Docker Swarm, because Swarm does not orchestrate volume creation across multiple nodes.

The `ontap-san-economy` driver creates Docker volumes as ONTAP LUNs within a shared pool of automatically managed FlexVols. This way, each FlexVol is not restricted to only one LUN and it offers better scalability for SAN workloads. Depending on the storage array, ONTAP supports up to 16384 LUNs per cluster. Because the volumes are LUNs underneath, this driver supports Docker-volume-granular snapshots and cloning.

Choose the `ontap-nas-flexgroup` driver to increase parallelism to a single volume that can grow into the petabyte range with billions of files. Some ideal use cases for FlexGroups include AI/ML/DL, big data and analytics, software builds, streaming, file repositories, and so on. Trident uses all aggregates assigned to an SVM when provisioning a FlexGroup volume. FlexGroup support in Trident also has the following considerations:

- Requires ONTAP version 9.2 or greater.
- As of this writing, FlexGroups only support NFS v3.
- Recommended to enable the 64-bit NFSv3 identifiers for the SVM.
- The minimum recommended FlexGroup member/volume size is 100GiB.
- Cloning is not supported for FlexGroup volumes.

For information about FlexGroups and workloads that are appropriate for FlexGroups see the [NetApp FlexGroup volume Best Practices and Implementation Guide](#).

To get advanced features and huge scale in the same environment, you can run multiple instances of the Docker Volume Plugin, with one using `ontap-nas` and another using `ontap-nas-economy`.

Custom ONTAP role for Trident

You can create an ONTAP cluster role with minimum privileges so that you do not have to use the ONTAP admin role to perform operations in Trident. When you include the username in a Trident backend configuration, Trident uses the ONTAP cluster role you created to perform the operations.

Refer to [Trident custom-role generator](#) for more information about creating Trident custom roles.

Using ONTAP CLI

1. Create a new role using the following command:

```
security login role create <role_name\> -cmddirname "command" -access all  
-vserver <svm_name\>
```

2. Create a username for the Trident user:

```
security login create -username <user_name\> -application ontapi  
-authmethod <password\> -role <name_of_role_in_step_1\> -vserver  
<svm_name\> -comment "user_description"
```

3. Map the role to the user:

```
security login modify username <user_name\> -vserver <svm_name\> -role  
<role_name\> -application ontapi -application console -authmethod  
<password\>
```

Using System Manager

Perform the following steps in ONTAP System Manager:

1. **Create a custom role:**

- a. To create a custom role at the cluster-level, select **Cluster > Settings**.

(Or) To create a custom role at the SVM level, select **Storage > Storage VMs > required SVM > Settings > Users and Roles**.

- b. Select the arrow icon (→) next to **Users and Roles**.
- c. Select **+Add** under **Roles**.
- d. Define the rules for the role and click **Save**.

2. **Map the role to the Trident user:**

+ Perform the following steps on the **Users and Roles** page:

- a. Select Add icon **+** under **Users**.
- b. Select the required username, and select a role in the drop-down menu for **Role**.
- c. Click **Save**.

Refer to the following pages for more information:

- [Custom roles for administration of ONTAP](#) or [Define custom roles](#)
- [Work with roles and users](#)

Example ONTAP configuration files

NFS example for ontap-nas driver

```
{
  "version": 1,
  "storageDriverName": "ontap-nas",
  "managementLIF": "10.0.0.1",
  "dataLIF": "10.0.0.2",
  "svm": "svm_nfs",
  "username": "vsadmin",
  "password": "password",
  "aggregate": "aggr1",
  "defaults": {
    "size": "10G",
    "spaceReserve": "none",
    "exportPolicy": "default"
  }
}
```

NFS example for ontap-nas-flexgroup driver

```
{
  "version": 1,
  "storageDriverName": "ontap-nas-flexgroup",
  "managementLIF": "10.0.0.1",
  "dataLIF": "10.0.0.2",
  "svm": "svm_nfs",
  "username": "vsadmin",
  "password": "password",
  "defaults": {
    "size": "100G",
    "spaceReserve": "none",
    "exportPolicy": "default"
  }
}
```

NFS example for ontap-nas-economy driver

```
{
  "version": 1,
  "storageDriverName": "ontap-nas-economy",
  "managementLIF": "10.0.0.1",
  "dataLIF": "10.0.0.2",
  "svm": "svm_nfs",
  "username": "vsadmin",
  "password": "password",
  "aggregate": "aggr1"
}
```

iSCSI example for ontap-san driver

```
{
  "version": 1,
  "storageDriverName": "ontap-san",
  "managementLIF": "10.0.0.1",
  "dataLIF": "10.0.0.3",
  "svm": "svm_iscsi",
  "username": "vsadmin",
  "password": "password",
  "aggregate": "aggr1",
  "igroupName": "netappdvp"
}
```

NFS example for ontap-san-economy driver

```
{
  "version": 1,
  "storageDriverName": "ontap-san-economy",
  "managementLIF": "10.0.0.1",
  "dataLIF": "10.0.0.3",
  "svm": "svm_iscsi_eco",
  "username": "vsadmin",
  "password": "password",
  "aggregate": "aggr1",
  "igroupName": "netappdvp"
}
```

NVMe/TCP example for ontap-san driver

```
{
  "version": 1,
  "backendName": "NVMeBackend",
  "storageDriverName": "ontap-san",
  "managementLIF": "10.0.0.1",
  "svm": "svm_nvme",
  "username": "vsadmin",
  "password": "password",
  "sanType": "nvme",
  "useREST": true
}
```

Element software configuration

In addition to the global configuration values, when using Element software (NetApp HCI/SolidFire), these options are available.

Option	Description	Example
Endpoint	https://<login>:<password>@<mvip>/json-rpc/<element-version>	https://admin:admin@192.168.160.3/json-rpc/8.0
SVIP	iSCSI IP address and port	10.0.0.7:3260
TenantName	SolidFireF Tenant to use (created if not found)	docker
InitiatorIFace	Specify interface when restricting iSCSI traffic to non-default interface	default
Types	QoS specifications	See example below
LegacyNamePrefix	Prefix for upgraded Trident installs. If you used a version of Trident prior to 1.3.2 and perform an upgrade with existing volumes, you'll need to set this value to access your old volumes that were mapped via the volume-name method.	netappdvp-

The `solidfire-san` driver does not support Docker Swarm.

Example Element software configuration file

```
{
  "version": 1,
  "storageDriverName": "solidfire-san",
  "Endpoint": "https://admin:admin@192.168.160.3/json-rpc/8.0",
  "SVIP": "10.0.0.7:3260",
  "TenantName": "docker",
  "InitiatorIFace": "default",
  "Types": [
    {
      "Type": "Bronze",
      "Qos": {
        "minIOPS": 1000,
        "maxIOPS": 2000,
        "burstIOPS": 4000
      }
    },
    {
      "Type": "Silver",
      "Qos": {
        "minIOPS": 4000,
        "maxIOPS": 6000,
        "burstIOPS": 8000
      }
    },
    {
      "Type": "Gold",
      "Qos": {
        "minIOPS": 6000,
        "maxIOPS": 8000,
        "burstIOPS": 10000
      }
    }
  ]
}
```

Known issues and limitations

Find information about known issues and limitations when using Trident with Docker.

Upgrading Trident Docker Volume Plugin to 20.10 and later from older versions results in upgrade failure with the no such file or directory error.

Workaround

1. Disable the plugin.

```
docker plugin disable -f netapp:latest
```

2. Remove the plugin.

```
docker plugin rm -f netapp:latest
```

3. Reinstall the plugin by providing the extra `config` parameter.

```
docker plugin install netapp/trident-plugin:20.10 --alias netapp --grant  
-all-permissions config=config.json
```

Volume names must be a minimum of 2 characters in length.



This is a Docker client limitation. The client will interpret a single character name as being a Windows path. [See bug 25773](#).

Docker Swarm has certain behaviors that prevent Trident from supporting it with every storage and driver combination.

- Docker Swarm presently makes use of volume name instead of volume ID as its unique volume identifier.
- Volume requests are simultaneously sent to each node in a Swarm cluster.
- Volume plugins (including Trident) must run independently on each node in a Swarm cluster.
Due to the way ONTAP works and how the `ontap-nas` and `ontap-san` drivers function, they are the only ones that happen to be able to operate within these limitations.

The rest of the drivers are subject to issues like race conditions that can result in the creation of a large number of volumes for a single request without a clear “winner”; for example, Element has a feature that allows volumes to have the same name but different IDs.

NetApp has provided feedback to the Docker team, but does not have any indication of future recourse.

If a FlexGroup is being provisioned, ONTAP does not provision a second FlexGroup if the second FlexGroup has one or more aggregates in common with the FlexGroup being provisioned.

Best practices and recommendations

Deployment

Use the recommendations listed here when you deploy Trident.

Deploy to a dedicated namespace

[Namespaces](#) provide administrative separation between different applications and are a barrier for resource sharing. For example, a PVC from one namespace cannot be consumed from another. Trident provides PV resources to all the namespaces in the Kubernetes cluster and consequently leverages a service account which has elevated privileges.

Additionally, access to the Trident pod might enable a user to access storage system credentials and other sensitive information. It is important to ensure that application users and management applications do not have the ability to access the Trident object definitions or the pods themselves.

Use quotas and range limits to control storage consumption

Kubernetes has two features which, when combined, provide a powerful mechanism for limiting the resource consumption by applications. The [storage quota mechanism](#) enables the administrator to implement global, and storage class specific, capacity and object count consumption limits on a per-namespace basis. Further, using a [range limit](#) ensures that the PVC requests are within both a minimum and maximum value before the request is forwarded to the provisioner.

These values are defined on a per-namespace basis, which means that each namespace should have values defined which fall in line with their resource requirements. See here for information about [how to leverage quotas](#).

Storage configuration

Each storage platform in the NetApp portfolio has unique capabilities that benefit applications, containerized or not.

Platform overview

Trident works with ONTAP and Element. There is not one platform which is better suited for all applications and scenarios than another, however, the needs of the application and the team administering the device should be taken into account when choosing a platform.

You should follow the baseline best practices for the host operating system with the protocol that you are leveraging. Optionally, you might want to consider incorporating application best practices, when available, with backend, storage class, and PVC settings to optimize storage for specific applications.

ONTAP and Cloud Volumes ONTAP best practices

Learn the best practices for configuring ONTAP and Cloud Volumes ONTAP for Trident.

The following recommendations are guidelines for configuring ONTAP for containerized workloads, which consume volumes that are dynamically provisioned by Trident. Each should be considered and evaluated for appropriateness in your environment.

Use SVM(s) dedicated to Trident

Storage Virtual Machines (SVMs) provide isolation and administrative separation between tenants on an ONTAP system. Dedicating an SVM to applications enables the delegation of privileges and enables applying best practices for limiting resource consumption.

There are several options available for the management of the SVM:

- Provide the cluster management interface in the backend configuration, along with appropriate credentials, and specify the SVM name.
- Create a dedicated management interface for the SVM by using ONTAP System Manager or the CLI.
- Share the management role with an NFS data interface.

In each case, the interface should be in DNS, and the DNS name should be used when configuring Trident. This helps to facilitate some DR scenarios, for example, SVM-DR without the use of network identity retention.

There is no preference between having a dedicated or shared management LIF for the SVM, however, you should ensure that your network security policies align with the approach you choose. Regardless, the management LIF should be accessible via DNS to facilitate maximum flexibility should [SVM-DR](#) be used in conjunction with Trident.

Limit the maximum volume count

ONTAP storage systems have a maximum volume count, which varies based on the software version and hardware platform. Refer to [NetApp Hardware Universe](#) for your specific platform and ONTAP version to determine the exact limits. When the volume count is exhausted, provisioning operations fail not only for Trident, but for all the storage requests.

Trident's `ontap-nas` and `ontap-san` drivers provision a FlexVolume for each Kubernetes Persistent Volume (PV) that is created. The `ontap-nas-economy` driver creates approximately one FlexVolume for every 200 PVs (configurable between 50 and 300). The `ontap-san-economy` driver creates approximately one FlexVolume for every 100 PVs (configurable between 50 and 200). To prevent Trident from consuming all the available volumes on the storage system, you should set a limit on the SVM. You can do this from the command line:

```
vserver modify -vserver <svm_name> -max-volumes <num_of_volumes>
```

The value for `max-volumes` varies based on several criteria specific to your environment:

- The number of existing volumes in the ONTAP cluster
- The number of volumes you expect to provision outside of Trident for other applications
- The number of persistent volumes expected to be consumed by Kubernetes applications

The `max-volumes` value is the total volumes provisioned across all the nodes in the ONTAP cluster, and not on an individual ONTAP node. As a result, you might encounter some conditions where an ONTAP cluster node might have far more or less Trident provisioned volumes than another node.

For example, a two-node ONTAP cluster has the ability to host a maximum of 2000 FlexVolumes. Having the maximum volume count set to 1250 appears very reasonable. However, if only [aggregates](#) from one node are assigned to the SVM, or the aggregates assigned from one node are unable to be provisioned against (for example, due to capacity), then the other node becomes the target for all Trident provisioned volumes. This

means that the volume limit might be reached for that node before the `max-volumes` value is reached, resulting in impacting both Trident and other volume operations that use that node. **You can avoid this situation by ensuring that aggregates from each node in the cluster are assigned to the SVM used by Trident in equal numbers.**

Limit the maximum size of volumes created by Trident

To configure the maximum size for volumes that can be created by Trident, use the `limitVolumeSize` parameter in your `backend.json` definition.

In addition to controlling the volume size at the storage array, you should also leverage Kubernetes capabilities.

Limit the maximum size of FlexVols created by Trident

To configure the maximum size for FlexVols used as pools for `ontap-san-economy` and `ontap-nas-economy` drivers, use the `limitVolumePoolSize` parameter in your `backend.json` definition.

Configure Trident to use bidirectional CHAP

You can specify the CHAP initiator and target usernames and passwords in your backend definition and have Trident enable CHAP on the SVM. Using the `useCHAP` parameter in your backend configuration, Trident authenticates iSCSI connections for ONTAP backends with CHAP.

Create and use an SVM QoS policy

Leveraging an ONTAP QoS policy, applied to the SVM, limits the number of IOPS consumable by the Trident provisioned volumes. This helps to [prevent a bully](#) or out-of-control container from affecting workloads outside of the Trident SVM.

You can create a QoS policy for the SVM in a few steps. See the documentation for your version of ONTAP for the most accurate information. The example below creates a QoS policy that limits the total IOPS available to the SVM to 5000.

```
# create the policy group for the SVM
qos policy-group create -policy-group <policy_name> -vserver <svm_name>
-max-throughput 5000iops

# assign the policy group to the SVM, note this will not work
# if volumes or files in the SVM have existing QoS policies
vserver modify -vserver <svm_name> -qos-policy-group <policy_name>
```

Additionally, if your version of ONTAP supports it, you can consider using a QoS minimum to guarantee an amount of throughput to containerized workloads. Adaptive QoS is not compatible with an SVM level policy.

The number of IOPS dedicated to the containerized workloads depends on many aspects. Among other things, these include:

- Other workloads using the storage array. If there are other workloads, not related to the Kubernetes deployment, utilizing the storage resources, care should be taken to ensure that those workloads are not accidentally adversely impacted.

- Expected workloads running in containers. If workloads which have high IOPS requirements will be running in containers, a low QoS policy results in a bad experience.

It's important to remember that a QoS policy assigned at the SVM level results in all the volumes provisioned to the SVM sharing the same IOPS pool. If one, or a small number, of the containerized applications have a high IOPS requirement, it could become a bully to the other containerized workloads. If this is the case, you might want to consider using external automation to assign per-volume QoS policies.



You should assign the QoS policy group to the SVM **only** if your ONTAP version is earlier than 9.8.

Create QoS policy groups for Trident

Quality of service (QoS) guarantees that performance of critical workloads is not degraded by competing workloads. ONTAP QoS policy groups provide QoS options for volumes, and enable users to define the throughput ceiling for one or more workloads. For more information about QoS, refer to [Guaranteeing throughput with QoS](#).

You can specify QoS policy groups in the backend or in a storage pool, and they are applied to each volume created in that pool or backend.

ONTAP has two kinds of QoS policy groups: traditional and adaptive. Traditional policy groups provide a flat maximum (or minimum, in later versions) throughput in IOPS. Adaptive QoS automatically scales the throughput to workload size, maintaining the ratio of IOPS to TBs|GBs as the size of the workload changes. This provides a significant advantage when you are managing hundreds or thousands of workloads in a large deployment.

Consider the following when you create QoS policy groups:

- You should set the `qosPolicy` key in the `defaults` block of the backend configuration. See the following backend configuration example:

```

---
version: 1
storageDriverName: ontap-nas
managementLIF: 0.0.0.0
dataLIF: 0.0.0.0
svm: svm0
username: user
password: pass
defaults:
  qosPolicy: standard-pg
storage:
- labels:
  performance: extreme
  defaults:
  adaptiveQosPolicy: extremely-adaptive-pg
- labels:
  performance: premium
  defaults:
  qosPolicy: premium-pg

```

- You should apply the policy groups per volume, so that each volume gets the entire throughput as specified by the policy group. Shared policy groups are not supported.

For more information about QoS policy groups, refer to [ONTAP 9.8 QoS commands](#).

Limit storage resource access to Kubernetes cluster members

Limiting access to the NFS volumes and iSCSI LUNs created by Trident is a critical component of the security posture for your Kubernetes deployment. Doing so prevents hosts that are not a part of the Kubernetes cluster from accessing the volumes and potentially modifying data unexpectedly.

It's important to understand that namespaces are the logical boundary for resources in Kubernetes. The assumption is that resources in the same namespace are able to be shared, however, importantly, there is no cross-namespace capability. This means that even though PVs are global objects, when bound to a PVC they are only accessible by pods which are in the same namespace. **It is critical to ensure that namespaces are used to provide separation when appropriate.**

The primary concern for most organizations with regard to data security in a Kubernetes context is that a process in a container can access storage mounted to the host, but which is not intended for the container. [Namespaces](#) are designed to prevent this type of compromise. However, there is one exception: privileged containers.

A privileged container is one that is run with substantially more host-level permissions than normal. These are not denied by default, so ensure that you disable the capability by using [pod security policies](#).

For volumes where access is desired from both Kubernetes and external hosts, the storage should be managed in a traditional manner, with the PV introduced by the administrator and not managed by Trident. This ensures that the storage volume is destroyed only when both the Kubernetes and external hosts have disconnected and are no longer using the volume. Additionally, a custom export policy can be applied, which enables access from the Kubernetes cluster nodes and targeted servers outside of the Kubernetes cluster.

For deployments which have dedicated infrastructure nodes (for example, OpenShift) or other nodes which are unable to schedule user applications, separate export policies should be used to further limit access to storage resources. This includes creating an export policy for services which are deployed to those infrastructure nodes (for example, the OpenShift Metrics and Logging services), and standard applications which are deployed to non-infrastructure nodes.

Use a dedicated export policy

You should ensure that an export policy exists for each backend that only allows access to the nodes present in the Kubernetes cluster. Trident can automatically create and manage export policies. This way, Trident limits access to the volumes it provisions to the nodes in the Kubernetes cluster and simplifies the addition/deletion of nodes.

Alternatively, you can also create an export policy manually and populate it with one or more export rules that process each node access request:

- Use the `vserver export-policy create` ONTAP CLI command to create the export policy.
- Add rules to the export policy by using the `vserver export-policy rule create` ONTAP CLI command.

Running these commands enables you to restrict which Kubernetes nodes have access to the data.

Disable `showmount` for the application SVM

The `showmount` feature enables an NFS client to query the SVM for a list of available NFS exports. A pod deployed to the Kubernetes cluster can issue the `showmount -e` command against the data LIF and receive a list of available mounts, including those which it does not have access to. While this, by itself, is not a security compromise, it does provide unnecessary information potentially aiding an unauthorized user with connecting to an NFS export.

You should disable `showmount` by using the SVM-level ONTAP CLI command:

```
vserver nfs modify -vserver <svm_name> -showmount disabled
```

SolidFire best practices

Learn the best practices for configuring SolidFire storage for Trident.

Create Solidfire Account

Each SolidFire account represents a unique volume owner and receives its own set of Challenge-Handshake Authentication Protocol (CHAP) credentials. You can access volumes assigned to an account either by using the account name and the relative CHAP credentials or through a volume access group. An account can have up to two-thousand volumes assigned to it, but a volume can belong to only one account.

Create a QoS policy

Use SolidFire Quality of Service (QoS) policies if you want to create and save a standardized quality of service setting that can be applied to many volumes.

You can set QoS parameters on a per-volume basis. Performance for each volume can be assured by setting

three configurable parameters that define the QoS: Min IOPS, Max IOPS, and Burst IOPS.

Here are the possible minimum, maximum, and burst IOPS values for the 4Kb block size.

IOPS parameter	Definition	Min. value	Default value	Max. value(4Kb)
Min IOPS	The guaranteed level of performance for a volume.	50	50	15000
Max IOPS	The performance will not exceed this limit.	50	15000	200,000
Burst IOPS	Maximum IOPS allowed in a short burst scenario.	50	15000	200,000



Although the Max IOPS and Burst IOPS can be set as high as 200,000, the real-world maximum performance of a volume is limited by cluster usage and per-node performance.

Block size and bandwidth have a direct influence on the number of IOPS. As block sizes increase, the system increases bandwidth to a level necessary to process the larger block sizes. As bandwidth increases, the number of IOPS the system is able to attain decreases. Refer to [SolidFire Quality of Service](#) for more information about QoS and performance.

SolidFire authentication

Element supports two methods for authentication: CHAP and Volume Access Groups (VAG). CHAP uses the CHAP protocol to authenticate the host to the backend. Volume Access Groups controls access to the volumes it provisions. NetApp recommends using CHAP for authentication as it's simpler and has no scaling limits.



Trident with the enhanced CSI provisioner supports the use of CHAP authentication. VAGs should only be used in the traditional non-CSI mode of operation.

CHAP authentication (verification that the initiator is the intended volume user) is supported only with account-based access control. If you are using CHAP for authentication, two options are available: unidirectional CHAP and bidirectional CHAP. Unidirectional CHAP authenticates volume access by using the SolidFire account name and initiator secret. The bidirectional CHAP option provides the most secure way of authenticating the volume because the volume authenticates the host through the account name and the initiator secret, and then the host authenticates the volume through the account name and the target secret.

However, if CHAP cannot be enabled and VAGs are required, create the access group and add the host initiators and volumes to the access group. Each IQN that you add to an access group can access each volume in the group with or without CHAP authentication. If the iSCSI initiator is configured to use CHAP authentication, account-based access control is used. If the iSCSI initiator is not configured to use CHAP authentication, then Volume Access Group access control is used.

Where to find more information?

Some of the best practices documentation is listed below. Search the [NetApp library](#) for the most current versions.

ONTAP

- [NFS Best Practice and Implementation Guide](#)
- [SAN Administration Guide](#) (for iSCSI)
- [iSCSI Express Configuration for RHEL](#)

Element software

- [Configuring SolidFire for Linux](#)

NetApp HCI

- [NetApp HCI deployment prerequisites](#)
- [Access the NetApp Deployment Engine](#)

Application best practices information

- [Best practices for MySQL on ONTAP](#)
- [Best practices for MySQL on SolidFire](#)
- [NetApp SolidFire and Cassandra](#)
- [Oracle best practices on SolidFire](#)
- [PostgreSQL best practices on SolidFire](#)

Not all applications have specific guidelines, it's important to work with your NetApp team and to use the [NetApp library](#) to find the most up-to-date documentation.

Integrate Trident

To integrate Trident, the following design and architectural elements require integration: driver selection and deployment, storage class design, virtual pool design, Persistent Volume Claim (PVC) impacts on storage provisioning, volume operations, and OpenShift services deployment using Trident.

Driver selection and deployment

Select and deploy a backend driver for your storage system.

ONTAP backend drivers

ONTAP backend drivers are differentiated by the protocol used and how the volumes are provisioned on the storage system. Therefore, give careful consideration when deciding which driver to deploy.

At a higher level, if your application has components which need shared storage (multiple pods accessing the same PVC), NAS-based drivers would be the default choice, while the block-based iSCSI drivers meet the needs of non-shared storage. Choose the protocol based on the requirements of the application and the comfort level of the storage and infrastructure teams. Generally speaking, there is little difference between them for most applications, so often the decision is based upon whether or not shared storage (where more than one pod will need simultaneous access) is needed.

The available ONTAP backend drivers are:

- `ontap-nas`: Each PV provisioned is a full ONTAP FlexVolume.
- `ontap-nas-economy`: Each PV provisioned is a qtree, with a configurable number of qtrees per FlexVolume (default is 200).
- `ontap-nas-flexgroup`: Each PV provisioned as a full ONTAP FlexGroup, and all aggregates assigned to a SVM are used.
- `ontap-san`: Each PV provisioned is a LUN within its own FlexVolume.
- `ontap-san-economy`: Each PV provisioned is a LUN, with a configurable number of LUNs per FlexVolume (default is 100).

Choosing between the three NAS drivers has some ramifications to the features, which are made available to the application.

Note that, in the tables below, not all of the capabilities are exposed through Trident. Some must be applied by the storage administrator after provisioning if that functionality is desired. The superscript footnotes distinguish the functionality per feature and driver.

ONTAP NAS drivers	Snapshots	Clones	Dynamic export policies	Multi-attach	QoS	Resize	Replication
<code>ontap-nas</code>	Yes	Yes	Yes [5]	Yes	Yes [1]	Yes	Yes [1]
<code>ontap-nas-economy</code>	Yes [3]	Yes [3]	Yes [5]	Yes	Yes [3]	Yes	Yes [3]
<code>ontap-nas-flexgroup</code>	Yes [1]	No	Yes [5]	Yes	Yes [1]	Yes	Yes [1]

Trident offers 2 SAN drivers for ONTAP, whose capabilities are shown below.

ONTAP SAN drivers	Snapshots	Clones	Multi-attach	Bi-directional iSCSI/CHAP	QoS	Resize	Replication
<code>ontap-san</code>	Yes	Yes	Yes [4]	Yes	Yes [1]	Yes	Yes [1]
<code>ontap-san-economy</code>	Yes	Yes	Yes [4]	Yes	Yes [3]	Yes	Yes [3]

Footnote for the above tables:

Yes [1]: Not managed by Trident

Yes [2]: Managed by Trident, but not PV granular

Yes [3]: Not managed by Trident and not PV granular

Yes [4]: Supported for raw-block volumes

Yes [5]: Supported by Trident

The features that are not PV granular are applied to the entire FlexVolume and all of the PVs (that is, qtrees or

LUNs in shared FlexVols) will share a common schedule.

As we can see in the above tables, much of the functionality between the `ontap-nas` and `ontap-nas-economy` is the same. However, because the `ontap-nas-economy` driver limits the ability to control the schedule at per-PV granularity, this can affect your disaster recovery and backup planning in particular. For development teams which desire to leverage PVC clone functionality on ONTAP storage, this is only possible when using the `ontap-nas`, `ontap-san` or `ontap-san-economy` drivers.



The `solidfire-san` driver is also capable of cloning PVCs.

Cloud Volumes ONTAP backend drivers

Cloud Volumes ONTAP provides data control along with enterprise-class storage features for various use cases, including file shares and block-level storage serving NAS and SAN protocols (NFS, SMB / CIFS, and iSCSI). The compatible drivers for Cloud Volume ONTAP are `ontap-nas`, `ontap-nas-economy`, `ontap-san` and `ontap-san-economy`. These are applicable for Cloud Volume ONTAP for Azure, Cloud Volume ONTAP for GCP.

Amazon FSx for ONTAP backend drivers

Amazon FSx for NetApp ONTAP lets you leverage NetApp features, performance, and administrative capabilities you're familiar with, while taking advantage of the simplicity, agility, security, and scalability of storing data on AWS. FSx for ONTAP supports many ONTAP file system features and administration APIs. The compatible drivers for Cloud Volume ONTAP are `ontap-nas`, `ontap-nas-economy`, `ontap-nas-flexgroup`, `ontap-san` and `ontap-san-economy`.

NetApp HCI/SolidFire backend drivers

The `solidfire-san` driver used with the NetApp HCI/SolidFire platforms, helps the admin configure an Element backend for Trident on the basis of QoS limits. If you would like to design your backend to set the specific QoS limits on the volumes provisioned by Trident, use the `type` parameter in the backend file. The admin also can restrict the volume size that could be created on the storage using the `limitVolumeSize` parameter. Currently, Element storage features like volume resize and volume replication are not supported through the `solidfire-san` driver. These operations should be done manually through Element Software web UI.

SolidFire Driver	Snapshots	Clones	Multi-attach	CHAP	QoS	Resize	Replication
<code>solidfire-san</code>	Yes	Yes	Yes [2]	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes [1]

Footnote:

Yes [1]: Not managed by Trident

Yes [2]: Supported for raw-block volumes

Azure NetApp Files backend drivers

Trident uses the `azure-netapp-files` driver to manage the [Azure NetApp Files](#) service.

More information about this driver and how to configure it can be found in [Trident backend configuration for Azure NetApp Files](#).

Azure NetApp Files Driver	Snapshots	Clones	Multi-attach	QoS	Expand	Replication
azure-netapp-files	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes [1]

Footnote:

Yes [1]: Not managed by Trident

Cloud Volumes Service on Google Cloud backend driver

Trident uses the `gcp-cvs` driver to link with the Cloud Volumes Service on Google Cloud.

The `gcp-cvs` driver uses virtual pools to abstract the backend and allow Trident to determine volume placement. The administrator defines the virtual pools in the `backend.json` files. Storage classes use selectors to identify virtual pools by label.

- If virtual pools are defined in the backend, Trident will try to create a volume in the Google Cloud storage pools to which those virtual pools are limited.
- If virtual pools are not defined in the backend, Trident will select a Google Cloud storage pool from the available storage pools in the region.

To configure the Google Cloud backend on Trident, you must specify `projectNumber`, `apiRegion`, and `apiKey` in the backend file. You can find the project number in the Google Cloud console. The API key is taken from the service account private key file you created when setting up API access for Cloud Volumes Service on Google Cloud.

For details on Cloud Volumes Service on Google Cloud service types and service levels, refer to [Learn about Trident support for CVS for GCP](#).

Cloud Volumes Service for Google Cloud driver	Snapshots	Clones	Multi-attach	QoS	Expand	Replication
<code>gcp-cvs</code>	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Available on CVS-Performance service type only.



Replication notes

- Replication is not managed by Trident.
- The clone will be created in the same storage pool as the source volume.

Storage class design

Individual Storage classes need to be configured and applied to create a Kubernetes Storage Class object. This section discusses how to design a storage class for your application.

Specific backend utilization

Filtering can be used within a specific storage class object to determine which storage pool or set of pools are to be used with that specific storage class. Three sets of filters can be set in the Storage Class:

`storagePools`, `additionalStoragePools`, and/or `excludeStoragePools`.

The `storagePools` parameter helps restrict storage to the set of pools that match any specified attributes. The `additionalStoragePools` parameter is used to extend the set of pools that Trident use for provisioning along with the set of pools selected by the attributes and `storagePools` parameters. You can use either parameter alone or both together to make sure that the appropriate set of storage pools are selected.

The `excludeStoragePools` parameter is used to specifically exclude the listed set of pools that match the attributes.

Emulate QoS policies

If you would like to design Storage Classes to emulate Quality of Service policies, create a Storage Class with the `media` attribute as `hdd` or `ssd`. Based on the `media` attribute mentioned in the storage class, Trident will select the appropriate backend that serves `hdd` or `ssd` aggregates to match the `media` attribute and then direct the provisioning of the volumes on to the specific aggregate. Therefore we can create a storage class PREMIUM which would have `media` attribute set as `ssd` which could be classified as the PREMIUM QoS policy. We can create another storage class STANDARD which would have the `media` attribute set as `hdd` which could be classified as the STANDARD QoS policy. We could also use the `"IOPS"` attribute in the storage class to redirect provisioning to an Element appliance which can be defined as a QoS Policy.

Utilize backend based on specific features

Storage classes can be designed to direct volume provisioning on a specific backend where features such as thin and thick provisioning, snapshots, clones, and encryption are enabled. To specify which storage to use, create Storage Classes that specify the appropriate backend with the required feature enabled.

Virtual pools

Virtual pools are available for all Trident backends. You can define virtual pools for any backend, using any driver that Trident provides.

Virtual pools allow an administrator to create a level of abstraction over backends which can be referenced through Storage Classes, for greater flexibility and efficient placement of volumes on backends. Different backends can be defined with the same class of service. Moreover, multiple storage pools can be created on the same backend but with different characteristics. When a Storage Class is configured with a selector with the specific labels, Trident chooses a backend which matches all the selector labels to place the volume. If the Storage Class selector labels matches multiple storage pools, Trident will choose one of them to provision the volume from.

Virtual pool design

While creating a backend, you can generally specify a set of parameters. It was impossible for the administrator to create another backend with the same storage credentials and with a different set of parameters. With the introduction of virtual pools, this issue has been alleviated. Virtual pools is a level abstraction introduced between the backend and the Kubernetes Storage Class so that the administrator can define parameters along with labels which can be referenced through Kubernetes Storage Classes as a selector, in a backend-agnostic way. Virtual pools can be defined for all supported NetApp backends with Trident. That list includes SolidFire/NetApp HCI, ONTAP, Cloud Volumes Service on GCP, as well as Azure



When defining virtual pools, it is recommended to not attempt to rearrange the order of existing virtual pools in a backend definition. It is also advisable to not edit/modify attributes for an existing virtual pool and define a new virtual pool instead.

Emulating different service levels/QoS

It is possible to design virtual pools for emulating service classes. Using the virtual pool implementation for Cloud Volume Service for Azure NetApp Files, let us examine how we can setup up different service classes. Configure the Azure NetApp Files backend with multiple labels, representing different performance levels. Set `servicelevel` aspect to the appropriate performance level and add other required aspects under each label. Now create different Kubernetes Storage Classes that would map to different virtual pools. Using the `parameters.selector` field, each StorageClass calls out which virtual pools may be used to host a volume.

Assigning specific set of aspects

Multiple virtual pools with a specific set of aspects can be designed from a single storage backend. For doing so, configure the backend with multiple labels and set the required aspects under each label. Now create different Kubernetes Storage Classes using the `parameters.selector` field that would map to different virtual pools. The volumes that get provisioned on the backend will have the aspects defined in the chosen virtual pool.

PVC characteristics which affect storage provisioning

Some parameters beyond the requested storage class may affect the Trident provisioning decision process when creating a PVC.

Access mode

When requesting storage via a PVC, one of the mandatory fields is the access mode. The mode desired may affect the backend selected to host the storage request.

Trident will attempt to match the storage protocol used with the access method specified according to the following matrix. This is independent of the underlying storage platform.

	ReadWriteOnce	ReadOnlyMany	ReadWriteMany
iSCSI	Yes	Yes	Yes (Raw block)
NFS	Yes	Yes	Yes

A request for a ReadWriteMany PVC submitted to a Trident deployment without an NFS backend configured will result in no volume being provisioned. For this reason, the requestor should use the access mode which is appropriate for their application.

Volume operations

Modify persistent volumes

Persistent volumes are, with two exceptions, immutable objects in Kubernetes. Once created, the reclaim policy and the size can be modified. However, this doesn't prevent some aspects of the volume from being modified outside of Kubernetes. This may be desirable in order to customize the volume for specific applications, to ensure that capacity is not accidentally consumed, or simply to move the volume to a different

storage controller for any reason.



Kubernetes in-tree provisioners do not support volume resize operations for NFS or iSCSI PVs at this time. Trident supports expanding both NFS and iSCSI volumes.

The connection details of the PV cannot be modified after creation.

Create on-demand volume snapshots

Trident supports on-demand volume snapshot creation and the creation of PVCs from snapshots using the CSI framework. Snapshots provide a convenient method of maintaining point-in-time copies of the data and have a lifecycle independent of the source PV in Kubernetes. These snapshots can be used to clone PVCs.

Create volumes from snapshots

Trident also supports the creation of PersistentVolumes from volume snapshots. To accomplish this, just create a PersistentVolumeClaim and mention the `datasource` as the required snapshot from which the volume needs to be created. Trident will handle this PVC by creating a volume with the data present on the snapshot. With this feature, it is possible to duplicate data across regions, create test environments, replace a damaged or corrupted production volume in its entirety, or retrieve specific files and directories and transfer them to another attached volume.

Move volumes in the cluster

Storage administrators have the ability to move volumes between aggregates and controllers in the ONTAP cluster non-disruptively to the storage consumer. This operation does not affect Trident or the Kubernetes cluster, as long as the destination aggregate is one which the SVM that Trident is using has access to. Importantly, if the aggregate has been newly added to the SVM, the backend will need to be refreshed by re-adding it to Trident. This will trigger Trident to reinventory the SVM so that the new aggregate is recognized.

However, moving volumes across backends is not supported automatically by Trident. This includes between SVMs in the same cluster, between clusters, or onto a different storage platform (even if that storage system is one which is connected to Trident).

If a volume is copied to another location, the volume import feature may be used to import current volumes into Trident.

Expand volumes

Trident supports resizing NFS and iSCSI PVs. This enables users to resize their volumes directly through the Kubernetes layer. Volume expansion is possible for all major NetApp storage platforms, including ONTAP, SolidFire/NetApp HCI and Cloud Volumes Service backends. To allow possible expansion later, set `allowVolumeExpansion` to `true` in your StorageClass associated with the volume. Whenever the Persistent Volume needs to be resized, edit the `spec.resources.requests.storage` annotation in the Persistent Volume Claim to the required volume size. Trident will automatically take care of resizing the volume on the storage cluster.

Import an existing volume into Kubernetes

Volume import provides the ability to import an existing storage volume into a Kubernetes environment. This is currently supported by the `ontap-nas`, `ontap-nas-flexgroup`, `solidfire-san`, `azure-netapp-files`, and `gcp-cvs` drivers. This feature is useful when porting an existing application into Kubernetes or during disaster recovery scenarios.

When using the ONTAP and `solidfire-san` drivers, use the command `tridentctl import volume <backend-name> <volume-name> -f /path/pvc.yaml` to import an existing volume into Kubernetes to be managed by Trident. The PVC YAML or JSON file used in the import volume command points to a storage class which identifies Trident as the provisioner. When using a NetApp HCI/SolidFire backend, ensure the volume names are unique. If the volume names are duplicated, clone the volume to a unique name so the volume import feature can distinguish between them.

If the `azure-netapp-files` or `gcp-cvs` driver is used, use the command `tridentctl import volume <backend-name> <volume path> -f /path/pvc.yaml` to import the volume into Kubernetes to be managed by Trident. This ensures a unique volume reference.

When the above command is executed, Trident will find the volume on the backend and read its size. It will automatically add (and overwrite if necessary) the configured PVC's volume size. Trident then creates the new PV and Kubernetes binds the PVC to the PV.

If a container was deployed such that it required the specific imported PVC, it would remain in a pending state until the PVC/PV pair are bound via the volume import process. After the PVC/PV pair are bound, the container should come up, provided there are no other issues.

Deploy OpenShift services

The OpenShift value-add cluster services provide important functionality to cluster administrators and the applications being hosted. The storage which these services use can be provisioned using the node-local resources, however, this often limits the capacity, performance, recoverability, and sustainability of the service. Leveraging an enterprise storage array to provide the capacity to these services can enable dramatically improved service, however, as with all applications, the OpenShift and storage administrators should work closely together to determine the best options for each. The Red Hat documentation should be leveraged heavily to determine the requirements and ensure that sizing and performance needs are met.

Registry service

Deploying and managing storage for the registry has been documented on netapp.io in the [blog](#).

Logging service

Like other OpenShift services, the logging service is deployed using Ansible with configuration parameters supplied by the inventory file, a.k.a. hosts, provided to the playbook. There are two installation methods which will be covered: deploying logging during initial OpenShift install and deploying logging after OpenShift has been installed.



As of Red Hat OpenShift version 3.9, the official documentation recommends against NFS for the logging service due to concerns around data corruption. This is based on Red Hat testing of their products. The ONTAP NFS server does not have these issues, and can easily back a logging deployment. Ultimately, the choice of protocol for the logging service is up to you, just know that both will work great when using NetApp platforms and there is no reason to avoid NFS if that is your preference.

If you choose to use NFS with the logging service, you will need to set the Ansible variable `openshift_enable_unsupported_configurations` to `true` to prevent the installer from failing.

Get started

The logging service can, optionally, be deployed for both applications as well as for the core operations of the OpenShift cluster itself. If you choose to deploy operations logging, by specifying the variable `openshift_logging_use_ops` as `true`, two instances of the service will be created. The variables which control the logging instance for operations contain "ops" in them, whereas the instance for applications does not.

Configuring the Ansible variables according to the deployment method is important to ensure that the correct storage is utilized by the underlying services. Let's look at the options for each of the deployment methods.



The tables below contain only the variables relevant for storage configuration as it relates to the logging service. You can find other options in [RedHat OpenShift logging documentation](#) which should be reviewed, configured, and used according to your deployment.

The variables in the below table will result in the Ansible playbook creating a PV and PVC for the logging service using the details provided. This method is significantly less flexible than using the component installation playbook after OpenShift installation, however, if you have existing volumes available, it is an option.

Variable	Details
<code>openshift_logging_storage_kind</code>	Set to <code>nfs</code> to have the installer create an NFS PV for the logging service.
<code>openshift_logging_storage_host</code>	The hostname or IP address of the NFS host. This should be set to the data LIF for your virtual machine.
<code>openshift_logging_storage_nfs_directory</code>	The mount path for the NFS export. For example, if the volume is junctioned as <code>/openshift_logging</code> , you would use that path for this variable.
<code>openshift_logging_storage_volume_name</code>	The name, e.g. <code>pv_ose_logs</code> , of the PV to create.
<code>openshift_logging_storage_volume_size</code>	The size of the NFS export, for example <code>100Gi</code> .

If your OpenShift cluster is already running, and therefore Trident has been deployed and configured, the installer can use dynamic provisioning to create the volumes. The following variables will need to be configured.

Variable	Details
<code>openshift_logging_es_pvc_dynamic</code>	Set to <code>true</code> to use dynamically provisioned volumes.
<code>openshift_logging_es_pvc_storage_class_name</code>	The name of the storage class which will be used in the PVC.
<code>openshift_logging_es_pvc_size</code>	The size of the volume requested in the PVC.
<code>openshift_logging_es_pvc_prefix</code>	A prefix for the PVCs used by the logging service.
<code>openshift_logging_es_ops_pvc_dynamic</code>	Set to <code>true</code> to use dynamically provisioned volumes for the ops logging instance.
<code>openshift_logging_es_ops_pvc_storage_class_name</code>	The name of the storage class for the ops logging instance.
<code>openshift_logging_es_ops_pvc_size</code>	The size of the volume request for the ops instance.

Variable	Details
<code>openshift_logging_es_ops_pvc_prefix</code>	A prefix for the ops instance PVCs.

Deploy the logging stack

If you are deploying logging as a part of the initial OpenShift install process, then you only need to follow the standard deployment process. Ansible will configure and deploy the needed services and OpenShift objects so that the service is available as soon as Ansible completes.

However, if you are deploying after the initial installation, the component playbook will need to be used by Ansible. This process may change slightly with different versions of OpenShift, so be sure to read and follow [RedHat OpenShift Container Platform 3.11 documentation](#) for your version.

Metrics service

The metrics service provides valuable information to the administrator regarding the status, resource utilization, and availability of the OpenShift cluster. It is also necessary for pod auto-scale functionality and many organizations use data from the metrics service for their charge back and/or show back applications.

Like with the logging service, and OpenShift as a whole, Ansible is used to deploy the metrics service. Also, like the logging service, the metrics service can be deployed during an initial setup of the cluster or after its operational using the component installation method. The following tables contain the variables which are important when configuring persistent storage for the metrics service.



The tables below only contain the variables which are relevant for storage configuration as it relates to the metrics service. There are many other options found in the documentation which should be reviewed, configured, and used according to your deployment.

Variable	Details
<code>openshift_metrics_storage_kind</code>	Set to <code>nfs</code> to have the installer create an NFS PV for the logging service.
<code>openshift_metrics_storage_host</code>	The hostname or IP address of the NFS host. This should be set to the data LIF for your SVM.
<code>openshift_metrics_storage_nfs_directory</code>	The mount path for the NFS export. For example, if the volume is junctioned as <code>/openshift_metrics</code> , you would use that path for this variable.
<code>openshift_metrics_storage_volume_name</code>	The name, e.g. <code>pv_ose_metrics</code> , of the PV to create.
<code>openshift_metrics_storage_volume_size</code>	The size of the NFS export, for example <code>100Gi</code> .

If your OpenShift cluster is already running, and therefore Trident has been deployed and configured, the installer can use dynamic provisioning to create the volumes. The following variables will need to be configured.

Variable	Details
<code>openshift_metrics_cassandra_pvc_prefix</code>	A prefix to use for the metrics PVCs.
<code>openshift_metrics_cassandra_pvc_size</code>	The size of the volumes to request.

Variable	Details
<code>openshift_metrics_cassandra_storage_type</code>	The type of storage to use for metrics, this must be set to dynamic for Ansible to create PVCs with the appropriate storage class.
<code>openshift_metrics_cassandra_pvc_storage_class_name</code>	The name of the storage class to use.

Deploy the metrics service

With the appropriate Ansible variables defined in your hosts/inventory file, deploy the service using Ansible. If you are deploying at OpenShift install time, then the PV will be created and used automatically. If you're deploying using the component playbooks, after OpenShift install, then Ansible creates any PVCs which are needed and, after Trident has provisioned storage for them, deploy the service.

The variables above, and the process for deploying, may change with each version of OpenShift. Ensure you review and follow [RedHat's OpenShift deployment guide](#) for your version so that it is configured for your environment.

Data protection and disaster recovery

Learn about protection and recovery options for Trident and volumes created using Trident. You should have a data protection and recovery strategy for each application with a persistence requirement.

Trident replication and recovery

You can create a backup to restore Trident in the event of a disaster.

Trident replication

Trident uses Kubernetes CRDs to store and manage its own state and the Kubernetes cluster etcd to store its metadata.

Steps

1. Back up the Kubernetes cluster etcd using [Kubernetes: Backing up an etcd cluster](#).
2. Place the backup artifacts on a FlexVol.



We recommend you protect the SVM where the FlexVol resides with a SnapMirror relationship to another SVM.

Trident recovery

Using Kubernetes CRDs and the Kubernetes cluster etcd snapshot, you can recover Trident.

Steps

1. From the destination SVM, mount the volume which contains the Kubernetes etcd data files and certificates on to the host which will be set up as a master node.
2. Copy all required certificates pertaining to the Kubernetes cluster under `/etc/kubernetes/pki` and the

etcd member files under `/var/lib/etcd`.

3. Restore the Kubernetes cluster from the etcd backup using [Kubernetes: Restoring an etcd cluster](#).
4. Run `kubectl get crd` to verify all Trident custom resources have come up and retrieve the Trident objects to verify all data is available.

SVM replication and recovery

Trident cannot configure replication relationships, however, the storage administrator can use [ONTAP SnapMirror](#) to replicate an SVM.

In the event of a disaster, you can activate the SnapMirror destination SVM to start serving data. You can switch back to the primary when systems are restored.

About this task

Consider the following when using the SnapMirror SVM Replication feature:

- You should create a distinct backend for each SVM with SVM-DR enabled.
- Configure the storage classes to select the replicated backends only when needed to avoid having volumes which do not need replication provisioned onto the backends that support SVM-DR.
- Application administrators should understand the additional cost and complexity associated with replication and carefully consider their recovery plan prior to beginning this process.

SVM replication

You can use [ONTAP: SnapMirror SVM replication](#) to create the SVM replication relationship.

SnapMirror allows you to set options to control what to replicate. You'll need to know which options you selected when performing [SVM recovery using Trident](#).

- `-identity-preserve true` replicates the entire SVM configuration.
- `-discard-configs network` excludes LIFs and related network settings.
- `-identity-preserve false` replicates only the volumes and security configuration.

SVM recovery using Trident

Trident does not automatically detect SVM failures. In the event of a disaster, the administrator can manually initiate Trident failover to the new SVM.

Steps

1. Cancel scheduled and ongoing SnapMirror transfers, break the replication relationship, stop the source SVM and then activate the SnapMirror destination SVM.
2. If you specified `-identity-preserve false` or `-discard-config network` when configuring your SVM replication, update the `managementLIF` and `dataLIF` in the Trident backend definition file.
3. Confirm `storagePrefix` is present in the Trident backend definition file. This parameter cannot be changed. Omitting `storagePrefix` will cause the backend update to fail.
4. Update all the required backends to reflect the new destination SVM name using:

```
./tridentctl update backend <backend-name> -f <backend-json-file> -n <namespace>
```

5. If you specified `-identity-preserve false` or `discard-config network`, you must bounce all application pods.



If you specified `-identity-preserve true`, all volumes provisioned by Trident start serving data when the destination SVM is activated.

Volume replication and recovery

Trident cannot configure SnapMirror replication relationships, however, the storage administrator can use [ONTAP SnapMirror replication and recovery](#) to replicate volumes created by Trident.

You can then import the recovered volumes into Trident using [tridentctl volume import](#).



Import is not supported on `ontap-nas-economy`, `ontap-san-economy`, or `ontap-flexgroup-economy` drivers.

Snapshot data protection

You can protect and restore data using:

- An external snapshot controller and CRDs to create Kubernetes volume snapshots of Persistent Volumes (PVs).

[Volume snapshots](#)

- ONTAP Snapshots to restore the entire contents of a volume or to recover individual files or LUNs.

[ONTAP Snapshots](#)

Security

Security

Use the recommendations listed here to ensure your Trident installation is secure.

Run Trident in its own namespace

It is important to prevent applications, application administrators, users, and management applications from accessing Trident object definitions or the pods to ensure reliable storage and block potential malicious activity.

To separate the other applications and users from Trident, always install Trident in its own Kubernetes namespace (`trident`). Putting Trident in its own namespace assures that only the Kubernetes administrative personnel have access to the Trident pod and the artifacts (such as backend and CHAP secrets if applicable) stored in the namespaced CRD objects.

You should ensure that you allow only administrators access to the Trident namespace and thus access to the `tridentctl` application.

Use CHAP authentication with ONTAP SAN backends

Trident supports CHAP-based authentication for ONTAP SAN workloads (using the `ontap-san` and `ontap-san-economy` drivers). NetApp recommends using bidirectional CHAP with Trident for authentication between a host and the storage backend.

For ONTAP backends that use the SAN storage drivers, Trident can set up bidirectional CHAP and manage CHAP usernames and secrets through `tridentctl`.

Refer to [Prepare to configure backend with ONTAP SAN drivers](#) to understand how Trident configures CHAP on ONTAP backends.

Use CHAP authentication with NetApp HCI and SolidFire backends

NetApp recommends deploying bidirectional CHAP to ensure authentication between a host and the NetApp HCI and SolidFire backends. Trident uses a secret object that includes two CHAP passwords per tenant. When Trident is installed, it manages the CHAP secrets and stores them in a `tridentvolume` CR object for the respective PV. When you create a PV, Trident uses the CHAP secrets to initiate an iSCSI session and communicate with the NetApp HCI and SolidFire system over CHAP.



The volumes that are created by Trident are not associated with any Volume Access Group.

Use Trident with NVE and NAE

NetApp ONTAP provides data-at-rest encryption to protect sensitive data in the event a disk is stolen, returned, or repurposed. For details, refer to [Configure NetApp Volume Encryption overview](#).

- If NAE is enabled on the backend, any volume provisioned in Trident will be NAE-enabled.
- If NAE is not enabled on the backend, any volume provisioned in Trident will be NVE-enabled unless you set the NVE encryption flag to `false` in the backend configuration.

Volumes created in Trident on an NAE-enabled backend must be NVE or NAE encrypted.



- You can set the NVE encryption flag to `true` in the Trident backend configuration to override the NAE encryption and use a specific encryption key on a per volume basis.
- Setting the NVE encryption flag to `false` on an NAE-enabled backend creates an NAE-enabled volume. You cannot disable NAE encryption by setting the NVE encryption flag to `false`.

- You can manually create an NVE volume in Trident by explicitly setting the NVE encryption flag to `true`.

For more information on backend configuration options, refer to:

- [ONTAP SAN configuration options](#)
- [ONTAP NAS configuration options](#)

Linux Unified Key Setup (LUKS)

You can enable Linux Unified Key Setup (LUKS) to encrypt ONTAP SAN and ONTAP SAN ECONOMY volumes on Trident. Trident supports passphrase rotation and volume expansion for LUKS-encrypted volumes.

In Trident, LUKS-encrypted volumes use the aes-xts-plain64 cypher and mode, as recommended by [NIST](#).

Before you begin

- Worker nodes must have cryptsetup 2.1 or higher (but lower than 3.0) installed. For more information, visit [Gitlab: cryptsetup](#).
- For performance reasons, we recommend that worker nodes support Advanced Encryption Standard New Instructions (AES-NI). To verify AES-NI support, run the following command:

```
grep "aes" /proc/cpuinfo
```

If nothing is returned, your processor does not support AES-NI. For more information on AES-NI, visit: [Intel: Advanced Encryption Standard Instructions \(AES-NI\)](#).

Enable LUKS encryption

You can enable per-volume, host-side encryption using Linux Unified Key Setup (LUKS) for ONTAP SAN and ONTAP SAN ECONOMY volumes.

Steps

1. Define LUKS encryption attributes in the backend configuration. For more information on backend configuration options for ONTAP SAN, refer to [ONTAP SAN configuration options](#).

```
"storage": [  
  {  
    "labels":{"luks": "true"},  
    "zone":"us_east_1a",  
    "defaults": {  
      "luksEncryption": "true"  
    }  
  },  
  {  
    "labels":{"luks": "false"},  
    "zone":"us_east_1a",  
    "defaults": {  
      "luksEncryption": "false"  
    }  
  },  
]
```

2. Use `parameters.selector` to define the storage pools using LUKS encryption. For example:

```

apiVersion: storage.k8s.io/v1
kind: StorageClass
metadata:
  name: luks
provisioner: csi.trident.netapp.io
parameters:
  selector: "luks=true"
  csi.storage.k8s.io/node-stage-secret-name: luks-${pvc.name}
  csi.storage.k8s.io/node-stage-secret-namespace: ${pvc.namespace}

```

3. Create a secret that contains the LUKS passphrase. For example:

```

kubectl -n trident create -f luks-pvc1.yaml
apiVersion: v1
kind: Secret
metadata:
  name: luks-pvc1
stringData:
  luks-passphrase-name: A
  luks-passphrase: secretA

```

Limitations

LUKS-encrypted volumes cannot take advantage of ONTAP deduplication and compression.

Backend configuration for importing LUKS volumes

To import a LUKS volume, you must set `luksEncryption` to `true` on the backend. The `luksEncryption` option tells Trident if the volume is LUKS-compliant (`true`) or not LUKS-compliant (`false`) as shown in the following example.

```

version: 1
storageDriverName: ontap-san
managementLIF: 10.0.0.1
dataLIF: 10.0.0.2
svm: trident_svm
username: admin
password: password
defaults:
  luksEncryption: 'true'
  spaceAllocation: 'false'
  snapshotPolicy: default
  snapshotReserve: '10'

```

PVC configuration for importing LUKS volumes

To import LUKS volumes dynamically, set the annotation `trident.netapp.io/luksEncryption` to `true` and include a LUKS-enabled storage class in the PVC as shown in this example.

```
kind: PersistentVolumeClaim
apiVersion: v1
metadata:
  name: luks-pvc
  namespace: trident
  annotations:
    trident.netapp.io/luksEncryption: "true"
spec:
  accessModes:
    - ReadWriteOnce
  resources:
    requests:
      storage: 1Gi
  storageClassName: luks-sc
```

Rotate a LUKS passphrase

You can rotate the LUKS passphrase and confirm rotation.



Do not forget a passphrase until you have verified it is no longer referenced by any volume, snapshot, or secret. If a referenced passphrase is lost, you might be unable to mount the volume and the data will remain encrypted and inaccessible.

About this task

LUKS passphrase rotation occurs when a pod that mounts the volume is created after a new LUKS passphrase is specified. When a new pod is created, Trident compares the LUKS passphrase on the volume to the active passphrase in the secret.

- If the passphrase on the volume does not match the active passphrase in the secret, rotation occurs.
- If the passphrase on the volume matches the active passphrase in the secret, the `previous-luks-passphrase` parameter is ignored.

Steps

1. Add the `node-publish-secret-name` and `node-publish-secret-namespace` `StorageClass` parameters. For example:

```

apiVersion: storage.k8s.io/v1
kind: StorageClass
metadata:
  name: csi-san
provisioner: csi.trident.netapp.io
parameters:
  trident.netapp.io/backendType: "ontap-san"
  csi.storage.k8s.io/node-stage-secret-name: luks
  csi.storage.k8s.io/node-stage-secret-namespace: ${pvc.namespace}
  csi.storage.k8s.io/node-publish-secret-name: luks
  csi.storage.k8s.io/node-publish-secret-namespace: ${pvc.namespace}

```

2. Identify existing passphrases on the volume or snapshot.

Volume

```

tridentctl -d get volume luks-pvc1
GET http://127.0.0.1:8000/trident/v1/volume/<volumeID>

...luksPassphraseNames: ["A"]

```

Snapshot

```

tridentctl -d get snapshot luks-pvc1
GET http://127.0.0.1:8000/trident/v1/volume/<volumeID>/<snapshotID>

...luksPassphraseNames: ["A"]

```

3. Update the LUKS secret for the volume to specify the new and previous passphrases. Ensure `previous-luks-passphrase-name` and `previous-luks-passphrase` match the previous passphrase.

```

apiVersion: v1
kind: Secret
metadata:
  name: luks-pvc1
stringData:
  luks-passphrase-name: B
  luks-passphrase: secretB
  previous-luks-passphrase-name: A
  previous-luks-passphrase: secretA

```

4. Create a new pod mounting the volume. This is required to initiate the rotation.
5. Verify the the passphrase was rotated.

Volume

```
tridentctl -d get volume luks-pvc1
GET http://127.0.0.1:8000/trident/v1/volume/<volumeID>

...luksPassphraseNames: ["B"]
```

Snapshot

```
tridentctl -d get snapshot luks-pvc1
GET http://127.0.0.1:8000/trident/v1/volume/<volumeID>/<snapshotID>

...luksPassphraseNames: ["B"]
```

Results

The passphrase was rotated when only the new passphrase is returned on the volume and snapshot.



If two passphrases are returned, for example `luksPassphraseNames: ["B", "A"]`, the rotation is incomplete. You can trigger a new pod to attempt to complete the rotation.

Enable volume expansion

You can enable volume expansion on a LUKS-encrypted volume.

Steps

1. Enable the `CSINodeExpandSecret` feature gate (beta 1.25+). Refer to [Kubernetes 1.25: Use Secrets for Node-Driven Expansion of CSI Volumes](#) for details.
2. Add the `node-expand-secret-name` and `node-expand-secret-namespace` `StorageClass` parameters. For example:

```
apiVersion: storage.k8s.io/v1
kind: StorageClass
metadata:
  name: luks
provisioner: csi.trident.netapp.io
parameters:
  selector: "luks=true"
  csi.storage.k8s.io/node-stage-secret-name: luks-${pvc.name}
  csi.storage.k8s.io/node-stage-secret-namespace: ${pvc.namespace}
  csi.storage.k8s.io/node-expand-secret-name: luks-${pvc.name}
  csi.storage.k8s.io/node-expand-secret-namespace: ${pvc.namespace}
allowVolumeExpansion: true
```

Results

When you initiate online storage expansion, the kubelet passes the appropriate credentials to the driver.

Protect applications with Trident protect

Learn about Trident protect

NetApp Trident protect provides advanced application data management capabilities that enhance the functionality and availability of stateful Kubernetes applications backed by NetApp ONTAP storage systems and the NetApp Trident CSI storage provisioner. Trident protect simplifies the management, protection, and movement of containerized workloads across public clouds and on-premises environments. It also offers automation capabilities through its API and CLI.

You can protect applications with Trident protect by creating custom resources (CRs) or by using the Trident protect CLI.

What's next?

You can learn about Trident protect requirements before you install it:

- [Trident protect requirements](#)

Install Trident protect

Trident protect requirements

Get started by verifying the readiness of your operational environment, application clusters, applications, and licenses. Ensure that your environment meets these requirements to deploy and operate Trident protect.

Trident protect Kubernetes compatibility

Trident protect is compatible with a wide range of fully managed and self-managed Kubernetes offerings, including:

- Amazon Elastic Kubernetes Service (EKS)
- Google Kubernetes Engine (GKE)
- Microsoft Azure Kubernetes Service (AKS)
- Red Hat OpenShift
- SUSE Rancher
- VMware Tanzu Portfolio
- Upstream Kubernetes

Trident protect storage backend compatibility

Trident protect supports the following storage backends:

- Amazon FSx for NetApp ONTAP

- Cloud Volumes ONTAP
- ONTAP storage arrays
- Google Cloud NetApp Volumes
- Azure NetApp Files

Ensure that your storage backend meets the following requirements:

- Ensure that NetApp storage connected to the cluster is using Astra Trident 24.02 or newer (Trident 24.10 is recommended).
 - If Astra Trident is older than version 24.06.1 and you plan to use NetApp SnapMirror disaster recovery functionality, you need to manually enable Astra Control Provisioner.
- Ensure that you have the latest Astra Control Provisioner (installed and enabled by default as of Astra Trident 24.06.1).
- Ensure that you have a NetApp ONTAP storage backend.
- Ensure that you have configured an object storage bucket for storing backups.
- Create any application namespaces that you plan to use for applications or application data management operations. Trident protect does not create these namespaces for you; if you specify a nonexistent namespace in a custom resource, the operation will fail.

Requirements for nas-economy volumes

Trident protect supports backup and restore operations to nas-economy volumes. Snapshots, clones, and SnapMirror replication to nas-economy volumes are not currently supported. You need to enable a snapshot directory for each nas-economy volume you plan to use with Trident protect.



Some applications are not compatible with volumes that use a snapshot directory. For these applications, you need to hide the snapshot directory by running the following command on the ONTAP storage system:

```
nfs modify -vserver <svm> -v3-hide-snapshot enabled
```

You can enable the snapshot directory by running the following command for each nas-economy volume, replacing <volume-UUID> with the UUID of the volume you want to change:

```
tridentctl update volume <volume-UUID> --snapshot-dir=true --pool-level  
=true -n trident
```



You can enable snapshot directories by default for new volumes by setting the Trident backend configuration option `snapshotDir` to `true`. Existing volumes are not affected.

Requirements for SnapMirror replication

NetApp SnapMirror is available for use with Trident protect for the following ONTAP solutions:

- NetApp ASA

- NetApp AFF
- NetApp FAS
- NetApp ONTAP Select
- NetApp Cloud Volumes ONTAP
- Amazon FSx for NetApp ONTAP

ONTAP cluster requirements for SnapMirror replication

Ensure your ONTAP cluster meets the following requirements if you plan to use SnapMirror replication:

- **Astra Control Provisioner or Trident:** Astra Control Provisioner or Trident must exist on both the source and destination Kubernetes clusters that utilize ONTAP as a backend. Trident protect supports replication with NetApp SnapMirror technology using storage classes backed by the following drivers:
 - `ontap-nas`
 - `ontap-san`
- **Licenses:** ONTAP SnapMirror asynchronous licenses using the Data Protection bundle must be enabled on both the source and destination ONTAP clusters. Refer to [SnapMirror licensing overview in ONTAP](#) for more information.

Peering considerations for SnapMirror replication

Ensure your environment meets the following requirements if you plan to use storage backend peering:

- **Cluster and SVM:** The ONTAP storage backends must be peered. Refer to [Cluster and SVM peering overview](#) for more information.



Ensure that the SVM names used in the replication relationship between two ONTAP clusters are unique.

- **Astra Control Provisioner or Trident and SVM:** The peered remote SVMs must be available to Astra Control Provisioner or Trident on the destination cluster.
- **Managed backends:** You need to add and manage ONTAP storage backends in Trident protect to create a replication relationship.
- **NVMe over TCP:** Trident protect does not support NetApp SnapMirror replication for storage backends that are using the NVMe over TCP protocol.

Trident / ONTAP configuration for SnapMirror replication

Trident protect requires that you configure at least one storage backend that supports replication for both the source and destination clusters. If the source and destination clusters are the same, the destination application should use a different storage backend than the source application for the best resiliency.

Considerations when using KubeVirt

If you plan to use [KubeVirt](#) virtual machines with SnapMirror replication, you need to set up virtualization so that you can freeze and unfreeze your SVMs. After you set up virtualization, SVMs you deploy will include the necessary tools to freeze and unfreeze. To learn more about setting up virtualization, refer to [Installing OpenShift Virtualization](#).

Install and configure Trident protect

If your environment meets the requirements for Trident protect, you can follow these steps to install Trident protect on your cluster. You can obtain Trident protect from NetApp, or install it from your own private registry. Installing from a private registry is helpful if your cluster cannot access the Internet.



By default, Trident protect collects support information that helps with any NetApp support cases that you might open, including logs, metrics, and topology information about clusters and managed applications. Trident protect sends these support bundles to NetApp on a daily schedule. You can optionally disable this support bundle collection when you install Trident protect. You can manually [generate a support bundle](#) at any time.

Install Trident protect from NetApp

1. Add the Trident Helm repository:

```
helm repo add netapp-trident-protect  
https://netapp.github.io/trident-protect-helm-chart
```

2. Install the Trident protect CRDs:

```
helm install trident-protect-crds netapp-trident-protect/trident-  
protect-crds --version 100.2410.0
```

3. Use Helm to install Trident protect using one of the following commands. Replace `<name_of_cluster>` with a cluster name, which will be assigned to the cluster and used to identify the cluster's backups and snapshots:

- Install Trident protect normally:

```
helm install trident-protect netapp-trident-protect/trident-  
protect --set clusterName=<name_of_cluster> --version 100.2410.0  
--create-namespace --namespace trident-protect
```

- Install Trident protect and disable the scheduled daily Trident protect AutoSupport support bundle uploads:

```
helm install trident-protect netapp-trident-protect/trident-  
protect --set autoSupport.enabled=false --set  
clusterName=<name_of_cluster> --version 100.2410.0 --create  
-namespace --namespace trident-protect
```

4. Optionally, freeze your VMs. If you are using KubeVirt support for SnapMirror, freezing VMs helps you to manage them effectively:

```
kubectl set env deployment/trident-protect-controller-manager  
NEPTUNE_VM_FREEZE=true -n trident-protect
```



You need to set up virtualization for the freeze functionality to work. VMs deployed after this setup include the necessary binaries to freeze and unfreeze. To learn more about setting up virtualization, refer to [Installing OpenShift Virtualization](#).

Install Trident protect from a private registry

You can install Trident protect from a private image registry if your Kubernetes cluster is unable to access the Internet. In these examples, replace values in brackets with information from your environment:

1. Pull the following images to your local machine, update the tags, and then push them to your private registry:

```
netapp/controller:24.10.0
netapp/restic:24.10.0
netapp/kopia:24.10.0
netapp/trident-autosupport:24.10.0
netapp/exehook:24.10.0
netapp/resourcebackup:24.10.0
netapp/resourcerestore:24.10.0
netapp/resourcedelete:24.10.0
bitnami/kubectl:1.30.2
kubebuilder/kube-rbac-proxy:v0.16.0
```

For example:

```
docker pull netapp/controller:24.10.0
```

```
docker tag netapp/controller:24.10.0 <private-registry-
url>/controller:24.10.0
```

```
docker push <private-registry-url>/controller:24.10.0
```

2. Create the Trident protect system namespace:

```
kubectl create ns trident-protect
```

3. Log in to the registry:

```
helm registry login <private-registry-url> -u <account-id> -p <api-
token>
```

4. Create a pull secret to use for private registry authentication:

```
kubectl create secret docker-registry regcred --docker
-username=<registry-username> --docker-password=<api-token> -n
trident-protect --docker-server=<private-registry-url>
```

5. Add the Trident Helm repository:

```
helm repo add netapp-trident-protect
https://netapp.github.io/trident-protect-helm-chart
```

6. Create a file named `protectValues.yaml` that contains the following Trident protect settings:

```
image:
  registry: <private-registry-url>
imagePullSecrets:
- name: regcred
controller:
  image:
    registry: <private-registry-url>
rbacProxy:
  image:
    registry: <private-registry-url>
crCleanup:
  imagePullSecrets:
  - name: regcred
webhooksCleanup:
  imagePullSecrets:
  - name: regcred
```

7. Install the Trident protect CRDs:

```
helm install trident-protect-crds netapp-trident-protect/trident-
protect-crds --version 100.2410.0
```

8. Use Helm to install Trident protect using one of the following commands. Replace `<name_of_cluster>` with a cluster name, which will be assigned to the cluster and used to identify the cluster's backups and snapshots:

- Install Trident protect normally:

```
helm install trident-protect netapp-trident-protect/trident-
protect --set clusterName=<name_of_cluster> --version 100.2410.0
--create-namespace --namespace trident-protect -f
protectValues.yaml
```

- Install Trident protect and disable the scheduled daily Trident protect AutoSupport support bundle uploads:

```
helm install trident-protect netapp-trident-protect/trident-protect --set autoSupport.enabled=false --set clusterName=<name_of_cluster> --version 100.2410.0 --create --namespace --namespace trident-protect -f protectValues.yaml
```

9. Optionally, freeze your VMs. If you are using KubeVirt support for SnapMirror, freezing VMs helps you to manage them effectively:

```
kubectl set env deployment/trident-protect-controller-manager NEPTUNE_VM_FREEZE=true -n trident-protect
```



You need to set up virtualization for the freeze functionality to work. VMs deployed after this setup include the necessary binaries to freeze and unfreeze. To learn more about setting up virtualization, refer to [Installing OpenShift Virtualization](#).

Install the Trident protect CLI plugin

You can use the Trident protect command line plugin, which is an extension of the Trident `tridentctl` utility, to create and interact with Trident protect custom resources (CRs).

Install the Trident protect CLI plugin

Before using the command line utility, you need to install it on the machine you use to access your cluster. Follow these steps, depending on if your machine uses an x64 or ARM CPU.

Download plugin for Linux AMD64 CPUs

1. Download the Trident protect CLI plugin:

```
curl -L -o tridentctl-protect https://github.com/NetApp/tridentctl-protect/releases/download/24.10.0/tridentctl-protect-linux-amd64
```

Download plugin for Linux ARM64 CPUs

1. Download the Trident protect CLI plugin:

```
curl -L -o tridentctl-protect https://github.com/NetApp/tridentctl-protect/releases/download/24.10.0/tridentctl-protect-linux-arm64
```

Download plugin for Mac AMD64 CPUs

1. Download the Trident protect CLI plugin:

```
curl -L -o tridentctl-protect https://github.com/NetApp/tridentctl-protect/releases/download/24.10.0/tridentctl-protect-macos-amd64
```

Download plugin for Mac ARM64 CPUs

1. Download the Trident protect CLI plugin:

```
curl -L -o tridentctl-protect https://github.com/NetApp/tridentctl-protect/releases/download/24.10.0/tridentctl-protect-macos-arm64
```

1. Enable execute permissions for the binary:

```
chmod +x tridentctl-protect
```

2. Copy the plugin binary to the path of your choice:

```
cp ./tridentctl-protect ~/bin/
```

3. Optionally, to install the binary globally, copy the plugin binary to a global path. For example: /usr/bin or /usr/local/bin (you might need elevated privileges):

```
cp ./tridentctl-protect /usr/local/bin/
```

View Trident CLI plugin help

You can use the built-in plugin help features to get detailed help on the capabilities of the plugin:

Steps

1. Use the help function to view usage guidance:

```
tridentctl protect help
```

Enable command auto-completion

After you have installed the Trident protect CLI plugin, you can enable auto-completion for certain commands.

Enable auto-completion for the Bash shell

1. Download the completion script:

```
curl -L -O https://github.com/NetApp/tridentctl-protect/releases/download/24.10.0/tridentctl-completion.bash
```

2. Make a new directory in your home directory to contain the script:

```
mkdir -p ~/.bash/completions
```

3. Move the downloaded script to the ~/.bash/completions directory:

```
mv tridentctl-completion.bash ~/.bash/completions/
```

4. Add the following line to the ~/.bashrc file in your home directory:

```
source ~/.bash/completions/tridentctl-completion.bash
```

Enable auto-completion for the Z shell

1. Download the completion script:

```
curl -L -O https://github.com/NetApp/tridentctl-protect/releases/download/24.10.0/tridentctl-completion.zsh
```

2. Make a new directory in your home directory to contain the script:

```
mkdir -p ~/.zsh/completions
```

3. Move the downloaded script to the ~/.zsh/completions directory:

```
mv tridentctl-completion.zsh ~/.zsh/completions/
```

4. Add the following line to the ~/.zprofile file in your home directory:

```
source ~/.zsh/completions/tridentctl-completion.zsh
```

Result

Upon your next shell login, you can use command auto-completion with the `tridentctl protect` plugin.

Manage Trident protect

Manage authorization and access control

Trident protect uses the Kubernetes model of role-based access control (RBAC). By default, Trident protect provides a single system namespace and its associated default service account. If you have an organization with many users or specific security needs, you can use the RBAC features of Trident protect to gain more granular control over access to resources and namespaces.

The cluster administrator always has access to resources in the default `trident-protect` namespace, and can also access resources in all other namespaces. To control access to resources and applications, you need to create additional namespaces and add resources and applications to those namespaces.

Note that no users can create application data management CRs in the default `trident-protect` namespace. You need to create application data management CRs in an application namespace (as a best practice, create application data management CRs in the same namespace as their associated application).

Only administrators should have access to privileged Trident protect custom resource objects, which include:



- **AppVault:** Requires bucket credential data
- **AutoSupportBundle:** Collects metrics, logs, and other sensitive Trident protect data
- **AutoSupportBundleSchedule:** Manages log collection schedules

As a best practice, use RBAC to restrict access to privileged objects to administrators.

For more information about how RBAC regulates access to resources and namespaces, refer to the [Kubernetes RBAC documentation](#).

For more information about service accounts, refer to the [Kubernetes service account documentation](#).

Example: Manage access for two groups of users

For example, an organization has a cluster administrator, a group of engineering users, and a group of marketing users. The cluster administrator would complete the following tasks to create an environment where the engineering group and the marketing group each have access to only the resources assigned to their respective namespaces.

Step 1: Create a namespace to contain resources for each group

Creating a namespace enables you to logically separate resources and better control who has access to those resources.

Steps

1. Create a namespace for the engineering group:

```
kubectl create ns engineering-ns
```

2. Create a namespace for the marketing group:

```
kubectl create ns marketing-ns
```

Step 2: Create new service accounts to interact with resources in each namespace

Each new namespace you create comes with a default service account, but you should create a service account for each group of users so that you can further divide privileges between groups in the future if necessary.

Steps

1. Create a service account for the engineering group:

```
apiVersion: v1
kind: ServiceAccount
metadata:
  name: eng-user
  namespace: engineering-ns
```

2. Create a service account for the marketing group:

```
apiVersion: v1
kind: ServiceAccount
metadata:
  name: mkt-user
  namespace: marketing-ns
```

Step 3: Create a secret for each new service account

A service account secret is used to authenticate with the service account, and can easily be deleted and recreated if compromised.

Steps

1. Create a secret for the engineering service account:

```
apiVersion: v1
kind: Secret
metadata:
  annotations:
    kubernetes.io/service-account.name: eng-user
  name: eng-user-secret
  namespace: engineering-ns
  type: kubernetes.io/service-account-token
```

2. Create a secret for the marketing service account:

```
apiVersion: v1
kind: Secret
metadata:
  annotations:
    kubernetes.io/service-account.name: mkt-user
  name: mkt-user-secret
  namespace: marketing-ns
  type: kubernetes.io/service-account-token
```

Step 4: Create a RoleBinding object to bind the ClusterRole object to each new service account

A default ClusterRole object is created when you install Trident protect. You can bind this ClusterRole to the service account by creating and applying a RoleBinding object.

Steps

1. Bind the ClusterRole to the engineering service account:

```
apiVersion: rbac.authorization.k8s.io/v1
kind: RoleBinding
metadata:
  name: engineering-ns-tenant-rolebinding
  namespace: engineering-ns
roleRef:
  apiGroup: rbac.authorization.k8s.io
  kind: ClusterRole
  name: trident-protect-tenant-cluster-role
subjects:
- kind: ServiceAccount
  name: eng-user
  namespace: engineering-ns
```

2. Bind the ClusterRole to the marketing service account:

```
apiVersion: rbac.authorization.k8s.io/v1
kind: RoleBinding
metadata:
  name: marketing-ns-tenant-rolebinding
  namespace: marketing-ns
roleRef:
  apiGroup: rbac.authorization.k8s.io
  kind: ClusterRole
  name: trident-protect-tenant-cluster-role
subjects:
- kind: ServiceAccount
  name: mkt-user
  namespace: marketing-ns
```

Step 5: Test permissions

Test that the permissions are correct.

Steps

1. Confirm that engineering users can access engineering resources:

```
kubectl auth can-i --as=system:serviceaccount:engineering-ns:eng-user
get applications.protect.trident.netapp.io -n engineering-ns
```

2. Confirm that engineering users cannot access marketing resources:

```
kubectl auth can-i --as=system:serviceaccount:engineering-ns:eng-user
get applications.protect.trident.netapp.io -n marketing-ns
```

Step 6: Grant access to AppVault objects

To perform data management tasks such as backups and snapshots, the cluster administrator needs to grant access to AppVault objects to individual users.

Steps

1. Create and apply an AppVault and secret combination YAML file that grants a user access to an AppVault. For example, the following CR grants access to an AppVault to the user `eng-user`:

```

apiVersion: v1
data:
  accessKeyID: <ID_value>
  secretAccessKey: <key_value>
kind: Secret
metadata:
  name: appvault-for-eng-user-only-secret
  namespace: trident-protect
type: Opaque
---
apiVersion: protect.trident.netapp.io/v1
kind: AppVault
metadata:
  name: appvault-for-eng-user-only
  namespace: trident-protect # Trident protect system namespace
spec:
  providerConfig:
    azure:
      accountName: ""
      bucketName: ""
      endpoint: ""
    gcp:
      bucketName: ""
      projectID: ""
    s3:
      bucketName: testbucket
      endpoint: 192.168.0.1:30000
      secure: "false"
      skipCertValidation: "true"
  providerCredentials:
    accessKeyID:
      valueFromSecret:
        key: accessKeyID
        name: appvault-for-eng-user-only-secret
    secretAccessKey:
      valueFromSecret:
        key: secretAccessKey
        name: appvault-for-eng-user-only-secret
  providerType: GenericS3

```

2. Create and apply a Role CR to enable cluster administrators to grant access to specific resources in a namespace. For example:


```
apiVersion: rbac.authorization.k8s.io/v1
kind: Role
metadata:
  name: eng-user-appvault-reader
  namespace: trident-protect
rules:
- apiGroups:
  - protect.trident.netapp.io
  resourceNames:
  - appvault-for-enguser-only
  resources:
  - appvaults
  verbs:
  - get
```

3. Create and apply a RoleBinding CR to bind the permissions to the user eng-user. For example:

```
apiVersion: rbac.authorization.k8s.io/v1
kind: RoleBinding
metadata:
  name: eng-user-read-appvault-binding
  namespace: trident-protect
roleRef:
  apiGroup: rbac.authorization.k8s.io
  kind: Role
  name: eng-user-appvault-reader
subjects:
- kind: ServiceAccount
  name: eng-user
  namespace: engineering-ns
```

4. Verify that the permissions are correct.

a. Attempt to retrieve AppVault object information for all namespaces:

```
kubectl get appvaults -n trident-protect
--as=system:serviceaccount:engineering-ns:eng-user
```

You should see output similar to the following:

```
Error from server (Forbidden): appvaults.protect.trident.netapp.io is
forbidden: User "system:serviceaccount:engineering-ns:eng-user"
cannot list resource "appvaults" in API group
"protect.trident.netapp.io" in the namespace "trident-protect"
```

- b. Test to see if the user can get the AppVault information that they now have permission to access:

```
kubectl auth can-i --as=system:serviceaccount:engineering-ns:eng-user
get appvaults.protect.trident.netapp.io/appvault-for-eng-user-only -n
trident-protect
```

You should see output similar to the following:

```
yes
```

Result

The users you have granted AppVault permissions to should be able to use authorized AppVault objects for application data management operations, and should not be able to access any resources outside of the assigned namespaces or create new resources that they do not have access to.

Generate a support bundle

Trident protect enables administrators to generate bundles that include information useful to NetApp Support, including logs, metrics, and topology information about the clusters and apps under management. If you are connected to the Internet, you can upload support bundles to the NetApp Support Site (NSS) using a custom resource (CR) file.

Create a support bundle using a CR

1. Create the custom resource (CR) file and name it (for example, `trident-protect-support-bundle.yaml`).
2. Configure the following attributes:
 - **metadata.name:** (*Required*) The name of this custom resource; choose a unique and sensible name for your environment.
 - **spec.triggerType:** (*Required*) Determines whether the support bundle is generated immediately, or scheduled. Scheduled bundle generation happens at 12AM UTC. Possible values:
 - Scheduled
 - Manual
 - **spec.uploadEnabled:** (*Optional*) Controls whether the support bundle should be uploaded to the NetApp Support Site after it is generated. If not specified, defaults to `false`. Possible values:
 - `true`
 - `false` (default)
 - **spec.dataWindowStart:** (*Optional*) A date string in RFC 3339 format that specifies the date and time that the window of included data in the support bundle should begin. If not specified, defaults to 24 hours ago. The earliest window date you can specify is 7 days ago.

Example YAML:

```
apiVersion: protect.trident.netapp.io/v1
kind: AutoSupportBundle
metadata:
  name: trident-protect-support-bundle
spec:
  triggerType: Manual
  uploadEnabled: true
  dataWindowStart: 2024-05-05T12:30:00Z
```

3. After you populate the `astra-support-bundle.yaml` file with the correct values, apply the CR:

```
kubectl apply -f trident-protect-support-bundle.yaml
```

Create a support bundle using the CLI

1. Create the support bundle, replacing values in brackets with information from your environment. The `trigger-type` determines whether the bundle is created immediately or if creation time is dictated by the schedule, and can be `Manual` or `Scheduled`. The default setting is `Manual`.

For example:

```
tridentctl protect create autosupportbundle <my_bundle_name>  
--trigger-type <trigger_type>
```

Manage and protect applications

Use AppVault objects to manage buckets

The bucket custom resource (CR) for Trident protect is known as an AppVault. AppVault objects are the declarative Kubernetes workflow representation of a storage bucket. An AppVault CR contains the configurations necessary for a bucket to be used in protection operations, such as backups, snapshots, restore operations, and SnapMirror replication. Only administrators can create AppVaults.

Key generation and AppVault definition examples

When defining an AppVault CR, you need to include credentials to access the resources hosted by the provider. How you generate the keys for the credentials will differ depending on the provider. The following are command line key generation examples for several providers, followed by example AppVault definitions for each provider.

Google Cloud

Key generation example:

```
kubectl create secret generic gcp-creds --from-file=credentials=<mycreds  
-file.json> -n trident-protect
```

The following AppVault definition examples are provided as a CR that you can use and modify, or an example Trident protect CLI command that generates the AppVault CR for you:

Example AppVault CR

```
apiVersion: protect.trident.netapp.io/v1
kind: AppVault
metadata:
  name: gcp-trident-protect-src-bucket-b643cc50-0429-4ad5-971f-
ac4a83621922
  namespace: trident-protect
spec:
  providerType: GCP
  providerConfig:
    gcp:
      bucketName: trident-protect-src-bucket
      projectID: project-id
  providerCredentials:
    credentials:
      valueFromSecret:
        key: credentials
        name: gcp-trident-protect-src-bucket-secret
```

Example AppVault CR creation using the Trident protect CLI

```
tridentctl protect create vault gcp my-new-vault --bucket mybucket
--project my-gcp-project --secret <gcp-creds>/<credentials>
```

Amazon S3

Key generation example:

```
kubectl create secret generic -n trident-protect s3 --from
-literal=accessKeyID=<secret-name> --from-literal=secretAccessKey
=<generic-s3-trident-protect-src-bucket-secret>
```

The following AppVault definition examples are provided as a CR that you can use and modify, or an example Trident protect CLI command that generates the AppVault CR for you:

Example AppVault CR

```
apiVersion: protect.trident.netapp.io/v1
kind: AppVault
metadata:
  name: amazon-s3-trident-protect-src-bucket-b643cc50-0429-4ad5-971f-
ac4a83621922
  namespace: trident-protect
spec:
  providerType: AWS
  providerConfig:
    s3:
      bucketName: trident-protect-src-bucket
      endpoint: s3.example.com
  providerCredentials:
    accessKeyID:
      valueFromSecret:
        key: accessKeyID
        name: s3
    secretAccessKey:
      valueFromSecret:
        key: secretAccessKey
        name: s3
```

Example AppVault creation with CLI

```
tridentctl protect create vault GenericS3 s3vault --bucket <bucket-
name> --secret <secret-name> --endpoint <s3-endpoint>
```

Microsoft Azure

Key generation example:

```
kubectl create secret generic <secret-name> --from-literal=accountKey
=<secret-name> -n trident-protect
```

The following AppVault definition examples are provided as a CR that you can use and modify, or an example Trident protect CLI command that generates the AppVault CR for you:

Example AppVault CR

```
apiVersion: protect.trident.netapp.io/v1
kind: AppVault
metadata:
  name: azure-trident-protect-src-bucket-b643cc50-0429-4ad5-971f-
ac4a83621922
  namespace: trident-protect
spec:
  providerType: Azure
  providerConfig:
    azure:
      accountName: account-name
      bucketName: trident-protect-src-bucket
  providerCredentials:
    accountKey:
      valueFromSecret:
        key: accountKey
        name: azure-trident-protect-src-bucket-secret
```

Example AppVault creation with CLI

```
tridentctl protect create vault Azure <vault-name> --account <account-
name> --bucket <bucket-name> --secret <secret-name>
```

Supported values for providerType and providerConfig

The providerType and providerConfig keys in an AppVault CR require specific values. The following table lists supported values for the providerType key, and the associated providerConfig key that you need to use with each providerType value.

Supported providerType value	Associated providerConfig key
AWS	s3
Azure	azure
GCP	gcp
GenericS3	s3
OntapS3	s3
StorageGridS3	s3

Use the AppVault browser to view AppVault information

You can use the Trident protect CLI plugin to view information about AppVault objects that have been created on the cluster.

Steps

1. View the contents of an AppVault object:

```
tridentctl protect get appvaultcontent gcp-vault --show-resources all
```

Example output:

```
+-----+-----+-----+-----+
+-----+
| CLUSTER | APP | TYPE | NAME |
| TIMESTAMP | | | |
+-----+-----+-----+-----+
+-----+
| | mysql | snapshot | mysnap | 2024-
08-09 21:02:11 (UTC) |
| production1 | mysql | snapshot | hourly-e7db6-20240815180300 | 2024-
08-15 18:03:06 (UTC) |
| production1 | mysql | snapshot | hourly-e7db6-20240815190300 | 2024-
08-15 19:03:06 (UTC) |
| production1 | mysql | snapshot | hourly-e7db6-20240815200300 | 2024-
08-15 20:03:06 (UTC) |
| production1 | mysql | backup | hourly-e7db6-20240815180300 | 2024-
08-15 18:04:25 (UTC) |
| production1 | mysql | backup | hourly-e7db6-20240815190300 | 2024-
08-15 19:03:30 (UTC) |
| production1 | mysql | backup | hourly-e7db6-20240815200300 | 2024-
08-15 20:04:21 (UTC) |
| production1 | mysql | backup | mybackup5 | 2024-
08-09 22:25:13 (UTC) |
| | mysql | backup | mybackup | 2024-
08-09 21:02:52 (UTC) |
+-----+-----+-----+-----+
+-----+
```

2. Optionally, to see the AppVaultPath for each resource, use the flag `--show-paths`.

The cluster name in the first column of the table is only available if a cluster name was specified in the Trident protect helm installation. For example: `--set clusterName=production1`.

Remove an AppVault

You can remove an AppVault object at any time.



Do not remove the `finalizers` key in the AppVault CR before deleting the AppVault object. If you do so, it can result in residual data in the AppVault bucket and orphaned resources in the cluster.

Before you begin

Ensure that you have deleted all snapshots and backups stored in the associated bucket.

Remove an AppVault using the Kubernetes CLI

1. Remove the AppVault object, replacing `appvault_name` with the name of the AppVault object to remove:

```
kubectl delete appvault <appvault_name> -n trident-protect
```

Remove an AppVault using the Trident CLI

1. Remove the AppVault object, replacing `appvault_name` with the name of the AppVault object to remove:

```
tridentctl protect delete appvault <appvault_name> -n trident-protect
```

Define an application for management

You can define an application that you want to manage with Trident protect by creating an application CR and an associated AppVault CR.

Create an AppVault CR

You need to create an AppVault CR that will be used when performing data protection operations on the application, and the AppVault CR needs to reside on the cluster where Trident protect is installed. The AppVault CR is specific to your environment; for examples of AppVault CRs, refer to [AppVault custom resources](#).

Create an application CR

You need to create an application CR to for each application that you want to manage with Trident protect. You can add an application for management by manually creating an application CR or by using the Trident protect CLI to create the CR.

Add an application using a CR

1. Create the destination application CR file:
 - a. Create the custom resource (CR) file and name it (for example, `maria-app.yaml`).
 - b. Configure the following attributes:
 - **metadata.name:** *(Required)* The name of the application custom resource. Note the name you choose because other CR files needed for protection operations refer to this value.
 - **spec.includedNamespaces:** *(Required)* Use namespace labels or a namespace name to specify namespaces that the application resources exist in. The application namespace must be part of this list.

Example YAML:

```
apiVersion: protect.trident.netapp.io/v1
kind: Application
metadata:
  name: maria
  namespace: my-app-namespace
spec:
  includedNamespaces:
    labelSelector: {}
    namespace: my-app-namespace
```

Add an application using the CLI

1. Create and apply the application definition, replacing values in brackets with information from your environment. You can include namespaces and resources in the application definition using comma-separated lists with the arguments shown in the following example:

```
tridentctl protect create application <my_new_app_cr_name>
--namespaces <namespaces_to_include> --csr
<cluster_scoped_resources_to_include>
```

Protect applications

Protect all apps by taking snapshots and backups using an automated protection policy or on an ad-hoc basis.

Create an on-demand snapshot

You can create an on-demand snapshot at any time.

Create a snapshot using a CR

1. Create the custom resource (CR) file and name it `trident-protect-snapshot-cr.yaml`.
2. In the file you created, configure the following attributes:
 - **metadata.name:** (*Required*) The name of this custom resource; choose a unique and sensible name for your environment.
 - **spec.applicationRef:** The Kubernetes name of the application to snapshot.
 - **spec.appVaultRef:** (*Required*) The name of the AppVault where the snapshot contents (metadata) should be stored.
 - **spec.reclaimPolicy:** (*Optional*) Defines what happens to the AppArchive of a snapshot when the snapshot CR is deleted. This means that even when set to `Retain`, the snapshot will be deleted. Valid options:
 - `Retain` (default)
 - `Delete`

```
apiVersion: protect.trident.netapp.io/v1
kind: Snapshot
metadata:
  namespace: my-app-namespace
  name: my-cr-name
spec:
  applicationRef: my-application
  appVaultRef: appvault-name
  reclaimPolicy: Delete
```

3. After you populate the `trident-protect-snapshot-cr.yaml` file with the correct values, apply the CR:

```
kubectl apply -f trident-protect-snapshot-cr.yaml
```

Create a snapshot using the CLI

1. Create the snapshot, replacing values in brackets with information from your environment. For example:

```
tridentctl protect create snapshot <my_snapshot_name> --appvault
<my_appvault_name> --app <name_of_app_to_snapshot>
```

Create an on-demand backup

You can back up an app at any time.

Create a backup using a CR

1. Create the custom resource (CR) file and name it `trident-protect-backup-cr.yaml`.
2. In the file you created, configure the following attributes:
 - **metadata.name:** (*Required*) The name of this custom resource; choose a unique and sensible name for your environment.
 - **spec.applicationRef:** (*Required*) The Kubernetes name of the application to back up.
 - **spec.appVaultRef:** (*Required*) The name of the AppVault where the backup contents should be stored.
 - **spec.dataMover:** (*Optional*) A string indicating which backup tool to use for the backup operation. Possible values (case sensitive):
 - Restic
 - Kopia (default)
 - **spec.reclaimPolicy:** (*Optional*) Defines what happens to a backup when released from its claim. Possible values:
 - Delete
 - Retain (default)
 - **Spec.snapshotRef:** (*Optional*): Name of the snapshot to use as the source of the backup. If not provided, a temporary snapshot will be created and backed up.

```
apiVersion: protect.trident.netapp.io/v1
kind: Backup
metadata:
  namespace: my-app-namespace
  name: my-cr-name
spec:
  applicationRef: my-application
  appVaultRef: appvault-name
  dataMover: Kopia
```

3. After you populate the `trident-protect-backup-cr.yaml` file with the correct values, apply the CR:

```
kubectl apply -f trident-protect-backup-cr.yaml
```

Create a backup using the CLI

1. Create the backup, replacing values in brackets with information from your environment. For example:

```
tridentctl protect create backup <my_backup_name> --appvault <my-  
vault-name> --app <name_of_app_to_back_up>
```

Create a data protection schedule

A protection policy protects an app by creating snapshots, backups, or both at a defined schedule. You can choose to create snapshots and backups hourly, daily, weekly, and monthly, and you can specify the number of copies to retain.

Create a schedule using a CR

1. Create the custom resource (CR) file and name it `trident-protect-schedule-cr.yaml`.
2. In the file you created, configure the following attributes:
 - **metadata.name:** (*Required*) The name of this custom resource; choose a unique and sensible name for your environment.
 - **spec.dataMover:** (*Optional*) A string indicating which backup tool to use for the backup operation. Possible values (case sensitive):
 - `Restic`
 - `Kopia` (default)
 - **spec.applicationRef:** The Kubernetes name of the application to back up.
 - **spec.appVaultRef:** (*Required*) The name of the AppVault where the backup contents should be stored.
 - **spec.backupRetention:** The number of backups to retain. Zero indicates that no backups should be created.
 - **spec.snapshotRetention:** The number of snapshots to retain. Zero indicates that no snapshots should be created.
 - **spec.granularity:** The frequency at which the schedule should run. Possible values, along with required associated fields:
 - `hourly` (requires that you specify `spec.minute`)
 - `daily` (requires that you specify `spec.minute` and `spec.hour`)
 - `weekly` (requires that you specify `spec.minute`, `spec.hour`, and `spec.dayOfWeek`)
 - `monthly` (requires that you specify `spec.minute`, `spec.hour`, and `spec.dayOfMonth`)
 - **spec.dayOfMonth:** (*Optional*) The day of the month (1 - 31) that the schedule should run. This field is required if the granularity is set to `monthly`.
 - **spec.dayOfWeek:** (*Optional*) The day of the week (0 - 7) that the schedule should run. Values of 0 or 7 indicate Sunday. This field is required if the granularity is set to `weekly`.
 - **spec.hour:** (*Optional*) The hour of the day (0 - 23) that the schedule should run. This field is required if the granularity is set to `daily`, `weekly`, or `monthly`.
 - **spec.minute:** (*Optional*) The minute of the hour (0 - 59) that the schedule should run. This field is required if the granularity is set to `hourly`, `daily`, `weekly`, or `monthly`.

```

apiVersion: protect.trident.netapp.io/v1
kind: Schedule
metadata:
  namespace: my-app-namespace
  name: my-cr-name
spec:
  dataMover: Kopia
  applicationRef: my-application
  appVaultRef: appvault-name
  backupRetention: "15"
  snapshotRetention: "15"
  granularity: <monthly>
  dayOfMonth: "1"
  dayOfWeek: "0"
  hour: "0"
  minute: "0"

```

3. After you populate the `trident-protect-schedule-cr.yaml` file with the correct values, apply the CR:

```
kubectl apply -f trident-protect-schedule-cr.yaml
```

Create a schedule using the CLI

1. Create the protection schedule, replacing values in brackets with information from your environment. For example:



You can use `tridentctl protect create schedule --help` to view detailed help information for this command.

```

tridentctl protect create schedule <my_schedule_name> --appvault
<my_appvault_name> --app <name_of_app_to_snapshot> --backup
--retention <how_many_backups_to_retain> --data-mover
<kopia_or_restic> --day-of-month <day_of_month_to_run_schedule>
--day-of-week <day_of_month_to_run_schedule> --granularity
<frequency_to_run> --hour <hour_of_day_to_run> --minute
<minute_of_hour_to_run> --recurrence-rule <recurrence> --snapshot
--retention <how_many_snapshots_to_retain>

```

Delete a snapshot

Delete the scheduled or on-demand snapshots that you no longer need.

Steps

1. Remove the snapshot CR associated with the snapshot:

```
kubectl delete snapshot <snapshot_name> -n my-app-namespace
```

Delete a backup

Delete the scheduled or on-demand backups that you no longer need.

Steps

1. Remove the backup CR associated with the backup:

```
kubectl delete backup <backup_name> -n my-app-namespace
```

Check the status of a backup operation

You can use the command line to check the status of a backup operation that is in progress, has completed, or has failed.

Steps

1. Use the following command to retrieve status of the backup operation, replacing values in brackets with information from your environment:

```
kubectl get backup -n <namespace_name> <my_backup_cr_name> -o jsonpath  
='{.status}'
```

Enable backup and restore for azure-netapp-files (ANF) operations

If you have installed Trident protect, you can enable space-efficient backup and restore functionality for storage backends that use the azure-netapp-files storage class and were created prior to Trident 24.06. This functionality works with NFSv4 volumes and does not consume additional space from the capacity pool.

Before you begin

Ensure the following:

- You have installed Trident protect.
- You have defined an application in Trident protect. This application will have limited protection functionality until you complete this procedure.
- You have `azure-netapp-files` selected as the default storage class for your storage backend.

Expand for configuration steps

1. Do the following in Trident if the ANF volume was created prior to upgrading to Trident 24.10:
 - a. Enable the snapshot directory for each PV that is azure-netapp-files based and associated with the application:

```
tridentctl update volume <pv name> --snapshot-dir=true -n trident
```

- b. Confirm that the snapshot directory has been enabled for each associated PV:

```
tridentctl get volume <pv name> -n trident -o yaml | grep  
snapshotDir
```

Response:

```
snapshotDirectory: "true"
```

When the snapshot directory is not enabled, Trident protect chooses the regular backup functionality, which temporarily consumes space in the capacity pool during the backup process. In this case, ensure that sufficient space is available in the capacity pool to create a temporary volume of the size of the volume being backed up.

Result

The application is ready for backup and restore using Trident protect. Each PVC is also available to be used by other applications for backups and restores.

Restore applications

You can use Trident protect to restore your application from a snapshot or backup. Restoring from an existing snapshot will be faster when restoring the application to the same cluster.



When you restore an application, all execution hooks configured for the application are restored with the app. If a post-restore execution hook is present, it runs automatically as part of the restore operation.

Restore from a backup to a different namespace

When you restore a backup to a different namespace using a BackupRestore CR, Trident protect restores the application in a new namespace, but the restored application is not automatically protected by Trident protect. To protect the restored application, you need to create an Application CR for the restored application so that it will be protected by Trident protect.

Use a CR

1. Create the custom resource (CR) file and name it `trident-protect-backup-restore-cr.yaml`.
2. In the file you created, configure the following attributes:
 - **metadata.name:** (*Required*) The name of this custom resource; choose a unique and sensible name for your environment.
 - **spec.appArchivePath:** The path inside AppVault where the backup contents are stored. You can use the following command to find this path:

```
kubectl get backups <BACKUP_NAME> -n my-app-namespace -o  
jsonpath='{.status.appArchivePath}'
```

- **spec.appVaultRef:** (*Required*) The name of the AppVault where the backup contents are stored.
- **spec.namespaceMapping:** The mapping of the source namespace of the restore operation to the destination namespace. Replace `my-source-namespace` and `my-destination-namespace` with information from your environment.
- **spec.storageClassMapping:** The mapping of the source storage class of the restore operation to the destination storage class. Replace `destinationStorageClass` and `sourceStorageClass` with information from your environment.

```
apiVersion: protect.trident.netapp.io/v1o  
kind: BackupRestore  
metadata:  
  name: my-cr-name  
  namespace: my-app-namespace  
spec:  
  appArchivePath: my-backup-path  
  appVaultRef: appvault-name  
  namespaceMapping: [{"source": "my-source-namespace",  
"destination": "my-destination-namespace"}]  
  storageClassMapping:  
    destination: "${destinationStorageClass}"  
    source: "${sourceStorageClass}"
```

3. (*Optional*) If you need to select only certain resources of the application to restore, add filtering that includes or excludes resources marked with particular labels:
 - **resourceFilter.resourceSelectionCriteria:** (*Required for filtering*) Use `include` or `exclude` to include or exclude a resource defined in `resourceMatchers`. Add the following `resourceMatchers` parameters to define the resources to be included or excluded:
 - **resourceFilter.resourceMatchers:** Array of `resourceMatcher` objects.
 - **resourceMatchers[].group:** (*Optional*) Group of the resource to be filtered.
 - **resourceMatchers[].kind:** (*Optional*) Kind of the resource to be filtered.

- **resourceMatchers[].version:** (*Optional*) Version of the resource to be filtered.
- **resourceMatchers[].names:** (*Optional*) Names in the Kubernetes metadata.name field of the resource to be filtered.
- **resourceMatchers[].namespaces:** (*Optional*) Namespaces in the Kubernetes metadata.name field of the resource to be filtered.
- **resourceMatchers[].labelSelectors:** (*Optional*) Label selector string in the Kubernetes metadata.name field of the resource as defined in the [Kubernetes documentation](#). For example: "trident.netapp.io/os=linux".

For example:

```
spec:
  resourceFilter:
    resourceSelectionCriteria: "include"
    resourceMatchers:
      group: my-resource-group
      kind: my-resource-kind
      version: my-resource-version
      names: ["my-resource-names"]
      namespaces: ["my-resource-namespaces"]
      labelSelectors: ["trident.netapp.io/os=linux"]
```

4. After you populate the trident-protect-backup-restore-cr.yaml file with the correct values, apply the CR:

```
kubectl apply -f trident-protect-backup-restore-cr.yaml
```

Use the CLI

1. Restore the backup to a different namespace, replacing values in brackets with information from your environment. The namespace-mapping argument uses colon-separated namespaces to map source namespaces to the correct destination namespaces in the format source1:dest1,source2:dest2. For example:

```
tridentctl protect create backuprestore <my_restore_name> --backup
<backup_namespace>/<backup_to_restore> --namespace-mapping
<source_to_destination_namespace_mapping>
```

Restore from a backup to the original namespace

You can restore a backup to the original namespace at any time.



Restoring a backup to a namespace with existing resources will not alter any resources that share names with those in the backup. To restore all resources in a backup, either delete and re-create the target namespace, or restore the backup to a new namespace.

Use a CR

1. Create the custom resource (CR) file and name it `trident-protect-backup-ipr-cr.yaml`.
2. In the file you created, configure the following attributes:
 - **metadata.name:** (*Required*) The name of this custom resource; choose a unique and sensible name for your environment.
 - **spec.appArchivePath:** The path inside AppVault where the backup contents are stored. You can use the following command to find this path:

```
kubectl get backups <BACKUP_NAME> -n my-app-namespace -o  
jsonpath='{.status.appArchivePath}'
```

- **spec.appVaultRef:** (*Required*) The name of the AppVault where the backup contents are stored.

For example:

```
apiVersion: protect.trident.netapp.io/v1  
kind: BackupInplaceRestore  
metadata:  
  name: my-cr-name  
  namespace: my-app-namespace  
spec:  
  appArchivePath: my-backup-path  
  appVaultRef: appvault-name
```

3. (*Optional*) If you need to select only certain resources of the application to restore, add filtering that includes or excludes resources marked with particular labels:
 - **resourceFilter.resourceSelectionCriteria:** (*Required for filtering*) Use `include` or `exclude` to include or exclude a resource defined in `resourceMatchers`. Add the following `resourceMatchers` parameters to define the resources to be included or excluded:
 - **resourceFilter.resourceMatchers:** Array of `resourceMatcher` objects.
 - **resourceMatchers[].group:** (*Optional*) Group of the resource to be filtered.
 - **resourceMatchers[].kind:** (*Optional*) Kind of the resource to be filtered.
 - **resourceMatchers[].version:** (*Optional*) Version of the resource to be filtered.
 - **resourceMatchers[].names:** (*Optional*) Names in the Kubernetes `metadata.name` field of the resource to be filtered.
 - **resourceMatchers[].namespaces:** (*Optional*) Namespaces in the Kubernetes `metadata.name` field of the resource to be filtered.
 - **resourceMatchers[].labelSelectors:** (*Optional*) Label selector string in the Kubernetes `metadata.name` field of the resource as defined in the [Kubernetes documentation](#). For example: `"trident.netapp.io/os=linux"`.

For example:

```
spec:
  resourceFilter:
    resourceSelectionCriteria: "include"
    resourceMatchers:
      group: my-resource-group
      kind: my-resource-kind
      version: my-resource-version
      names: ["my-resource-names"]
      namespaces: ["my-resource-namespaces"]
      labelSelectors: ["trident.netapp.io/os=linux"]
```

4. After you populate the `trident-protect-backup-ipr-cr.yaml` file with the correct values, apply the CR:

```
kubectl apply -f trident-protect-backup-ipr-cr.yaml
```

Use the CLI

1. Restore the backup to the original namespace, replacing values in brackets with information from your environment. The `backup` argument uses a namespace and backup name in the format `<namespace>/<name>`. For example:

```
tridentctl protect create backupinplacerestore <my_restore_name>
--backup <namespace/backup_to_restore>
```

Restore from a snapshot to a different namespace

You can restore data from a snapshot using a custom resource (CR) file either to a different namespace or the original source namespace. When you restore a snapshot to a different namespace using a `SnapshotRestore` CR, Trident protect restores the application in a new namespace, but the restored application is not automatically protected by Trident protect. To protect the restored application, you need to create an Application CR for the restored application so that it will be protected by Trident protect.

Use a CR

1. Create the custom resource (CR) file and name it `trident-protect-snapshot-restore-cr.yaml`.
2. In the file you created, configure the following attributes:
 - **metadata.name:** (*Required*) The name of this custom resource; choose a unique and sensible name for your environment.
 - **spec.appVaultRef:** (*Required*) The name of the AppVault where the snapshot contents are stored.
 - **spec.appArchivePath:** The path inside AppVault where the snapshot contents are stored. You can use the following command to find this path:

```
kubectl get snapshots <SNAPSHOT_NAME> -n my-app-namespace -o jsonpath='{.status.appArchivePath}'
```

- **spec.namespaceMapping:** The mapping of the source namespace of the restore operation to the destination namespace. Replace `my-source-namespace` and `my-destination-namespace` with information from your environment.
- **spec.storageClassMapping:** The mapping of the source storage class of the restore operation to the destination storage class. Replace `destinationStorageClass` and `sourceStorageClass` with information from your environment.

```
apiVersion: protect.trident.netapp.io/v1
kind: SnapshotRestore
metadata:
  name: my-cr-name
  namespace: my-app-namespace
spec:
  appVaultRef: appvault-name
  appArchivePath: my-snapshot-path
  namespaceMapping: [{"source": "my-source-namespace",
"destination": "my-destination-namespace"}]
  storageClassMapping:
    destination: "${destinationStorageClass}"
    source: "${sourceStorageClass}"
```

3. (*Optional*) If you need to select only certain resources of the application to restore, add filtering that includes or excludes resources marked with particular labels:
 - **resourceFilter.resourceSelectionCriteria:** (*Required* for filtering) Use `include` or `exclude` to include or exclude a resource defined in `resourceMatchers`. Add the following `resourceMatchers` parameters to define the resources to be included or excluded:
 - **resourceFilter.resourceMatchers:** Array of `resourceMatcher` objects.
 - **resourceMatchers[].group:** (*Optional*) Group of the resource to be filtered.

- **resourceMatchers[].kind:** (*Optional*) Kind of the resource to be filtered.
- **resourceMatchers[].version:** (*Optional*) Version of the resource to be filtered.
- **resourceMatchers[].names:** (*Optional*) Names in the Kubernetes metadata.name field of the resource to be filtered.
- **resourceMatchers[].namespaces:** (*Optional*) Namespaces in the Kubernetes metadata.name field of the resource to be filtered.
- **resourceMatchers[].labelSelectors:** (*Optional*) Label selector string in the Kubernetes metadata.name field of the resource as defined in the [Kubernetes documentation](#). For example: "trident.netapp.io/os=linux".

For example:

```
spec:
  resourceFilter:
    resourceSelectionCriteria: "include"
    resourceMatchers:
      group: my-resource-group
      kind: my-resource-kind
      version: my-resource-version
      names: ["my-resource-names"]
      namespaces: ["my-resource-namespaces"]
      labelSelectors: ["trident.netapp.io/os=linux"]
```

4. After you populate the `trident-protect-snapshot-restore-cr.yaml` file with the correct values, apply the CR:

```
kubectl apply -f trident-protect-snapshot-restore-cr.yaml
```

Use the CLI

1. Restore the snapshot to a different namespace, replacing values in brackets with information from your environment.
 - The `snapshot` argument uses a namespace and snapshot name in the format `<namespace>/<name>`.
 - The `namespace-mapping` argument uses colon-separated namespaces to map source namespaces to the correct destination namespaces in the format `source1:dest1,source2:dest2`.

For example:

```
tridentctl protect create snapshotrestore <my_restore_name>
--snapshot <namespace/snapshot_to_restore> --namespace-mapping
<source_to_destination_namespace_mapping>
```


Restore from a snapshot to the original namespace

You can restore a snapshot to the original namespace at any time.

Use a CR

1. Create the custom resource (CR) file and name it `trident-protect-snapshot-ipr-cr.yaml`.
2. In the file you created, configure the following attributes:
 - **metadata.name:** (*Required*) The name of this custom resource; choose a unique and sensible name for your environment.
 - **spec.appVaultRef:** (*Required*) The name of the AppVault where the snapshot contents are stored.
 - **spec.appArchivePath:** The path inside AppVault where the snapshot contents are stored. You can use the following command to find this path:

```
kubectl get snapshots <SNAPSHOT_NAME> -n my-app-namespace -o  
jsonpath='{.status.appArchivePath}'
```

```
apiVersion: protect.trident.netapp.io/v1  
kind: SnapshotInplaceRestore  
metadata:  
  name: my-cr-name  
  namespace: my-app-namespace  
spec:  
  appVaultRef: appvault-name  
  appArchivePath: my-snapshot-path
```

3. (*Optional*) If you need to select only certain resources of the application to restore, add filtering that includes or excludes resources marked with particular labels:
 - **resourceFilter.resourceSelectionCriteria:** (*Required for filtering*) Use `include` or `exclude` to include or exclude a resource defined in `resourceMatchers`. Add the following `resourceMatchers` parameters to define the resources to be included or excluded:
 - **resourceFilter.resourceMatchers:** Array of `resourceMatcher` objects.
 - **resourceMatchers[].group:** (*Optional*) Group of the resource to be filtered.
 - **resourceMatchers[].kind:** (*Optional*) Kind of the resource to be filtered.
 - **resourceMatchers[].version:** (*Optional*) Version of the resource to be filtered.
 - **resourceMatchers[].names:** (*Optional*) Names in the Kubernetes `metadata.name` field of the resource to be filtered.
 - **resourceMatchers[].namespaces:** (*Optional*) Namespaces in the Kubernetes `metadata.name` field of the resource to be filtered.
 - **resourceMatchers[].labelSelectors:** (*Optional*) Label selector string in the Kubernetes `metadata.name` field of the resource as defined in the [Kubernetes documentation](#). For example: `"trident.netapp.io/os=linux"`.

For example:

```
spec:
  resourceFilter:
    resourceSelectionCriteria: "include"
    resourceMatchers:
      group: my-resource-group
      kind: my-resource-kind
      version: my-resource-version
      names: ["my-resource-names"]
      namespaces: ["my-resource-namespaces"]
      labelSelectors: ["trident.netapp.io/os=linux"]
```

4. After you populate the `trident-protect-snapshot-ipr-cr.yaml` file with the correct values, apply the CR:

```
kubectl apply -f trident-protect-snapshot-ipr-cr.yaml
```

Use the CLI

1. Restore the snapshot to the original namespace, replacing values in brackets with information from your environment. For example:

```
tridentctl protect create snapshotinplacerestore <my_restore_name>
--snapshot <snapshot_to_restore>
```

Check the status of a restore operation

You can use the command line to check the status of a restore operation that is in progress, has completed, or has failed.

Steps

1. Use the following command to retrieve status of the restore operation, replacing values in brackets with information from your environment:

```
kubectl get backuprestore -n <namespace_name> <my_restore_cr_name> -o
jsonpath='{.status}'
```

Replicate applications with NetApp SnapMirror

Using Trident protect, you can use the asynchronous replication capabilities of NetApp SnapMirror technology to replicate data and application changes from one storage backend to another, on the same cluster or between different clusters.

Set up a replication relationship

Setting up a replication relationship involves the following:

- Choosing how frequently you want Trident protect to take an app snapshot (which includes the app's Kubernetes resources as well as the volume snapshots for each of the app's volumes)
- Choosing the replication schedule (includes Kubernetes resources as well as persistent volume data)
- Setting the time for the snapshot to be taken

Steps

1. Create an AppVault for the source application on the source cluster. Depending on your storage provider, modify an example in [AppVault custom resources](#) to fit your environment:

Create an AppVault using a CR

- a. Create the custom resource (CR) file and name it (for example, `trident-protect-appvault-primary-source.yaml`).
- b. Configure the following attributes:
 - **metadata.name:** (*Required*) The name of the AppVault custom resource. Make note of the name you choose, because other CR files needed for a replication relationship refer to this value.
 - **spec.providerConfig:** (*Required*) Stores the configuration necessary to access the AppVault using the specified provider. Choose a `bucketName` and any other necessary details for your provider. Make note of the values you choose, because other CR files needed for a replication relationship refer to these values. Refer to [AppVault custom resources](#) for examples of AppVault CRs with other providers.
 - **spec.providerCredentials:** (*Required*) Stores references to any credential required to access the AppVault using the specified provider.
 - **spec.providerCredentials.valueFromSecret:** (*Required*) Indicates that the credential value should come from a secret.
 - **key:** (*Required*) The valid key of the secret to select from.
 - **name:** (*Required*) Name of the secret containing the value for this field. Must be in the same namespace.
 - **spec.providerCredentials.secretAccessKey:** (*Required*) The access key used to access the provider. The **name** should match **spec.providerCredentials.valueFromSecret.name**.
 - **spec.providerType:** (*Required*) Determines what provides the backup; for example, NetApp ONTAP S3, generic S3, Google Cloud, or Microsoft Azure. Possible values:
 - `aws`
 - `azure`
 - `gcp`
 - `generic-s3`
 - `ontap-s3`
 - `storagegrid-s3`
- c. After you populate the `trident-protect-appvault-primary-source.yaml` file with the correct values, apply the CR:

```
kubectl apply -f trident-protect-appvault-primary-source.yaml -n
trident-protect
```

Create an AppVault using the CLI

1. Create the AppVault, replacing values in brackets with information from your environment:

```
tridentctl protect create vault Azure <vault-name> --account
<account-name> --bucket <bucket-name> --secret <secret-name>
```

2. Create the source application CR:

Create the source application using a CR

- a. Create the custom resource (CR) file and name it (for example, `trident-protect-app-source.yaml`).
- b. Configure the following attributes:
 - **metadata.name:** (*Required*) The name of the application custom resource. Make note of the name you choose, because other CR files needed for a replication relationship refer to this value.
 - **spec.includedNamespaces:** (*Required*) An array of namespaces and associated labels. Use namespace names and optionally narrow the scope of the namespaces with labels to specify resources that exist in the namespaces listed here. The application namespace must be part of this array.

Example YAML:

```
apiVersion: protect.trident.netapp.io/v1
kind: Application
metadata:
  name: maria
  namespace: my-app-namespace
spec:
  includedNamespaces:
    - namespace: maria
      labelSelector: {}
```

- c. After you populate the `trident-protect-app-source.yaml` file with the correct values, apply the CR:

```
kubectl apply -f trident-protect-app-source.yaml -n my-app-namespace
```

Create the source application using the CLI

1. Create the source application. For example:

```
tridentctl protect create app maria --namespaces maria -n my-app-namespace
```

3. Optionally, take a snapshot of the source application. This snapshot is used as the basis for the application on the destination cluster. If you skip this step, you'll need to wait for the next scheduled snapshot to run so that you have a recent snapshot.

Take a snapshot using a CR

1. Create a replication schedule for the source application:

- a. Create the custom resource (CR) file and name it (for example, `trident-protect-schedule.yaml`).
- b. Configure the following attributes:
 - **metadata.name:** *(Required)* The name of the schedule custom resource.
 - **spec.AppVaultRef:** *(Required)* This value must match the `metadata.name` field of the AppVault for the source application.
 - **spec.ApplicationRef:** *(Required)* This value must match the `metadata.name` field of the source application CR.
 - **spec.backupRetention:** *(Required)* This field is required, and the value must be set to 0.
 - **spec.enabled:** Must be set to `true`.
 - **spec.granularity:** Must be set to `Custom`.
 - **spec.recurrenceRule:** Define a start date in UTC time and a recurrence interval.
 - **spec.snapshotRetention:** Must be set to 2.

Example YAML:

```
apiVersion: protect.trident.netapp.io/v1
kind: Schedule
metadata:
  name: appmirror-schedule-0e1f88ab-f013-4bce-8ae9-6afed9df59a1
  namespace: my-app-namespace
spec:
  appVaultRef: generic-s3-trident-protect-src-bucket-04b6b4ec-46a3-420a-b351-45795e1b5e34
  applicationRef: maria
  backupRetention: "0"
  enabled: true
  granularity: custom
  recurrenceRule: |-
    DTSTART:20220101T000200Z
    RRULE:FREQ=MINUTELY;INTERVAL=5
  snapshotRetention: "2"
```

- c. After you populate the `trident-protect-schedule.yaml` file with the correct values, apply the CR:

```
kubectl apply -f trident-protect-schedule.yaml -n my-app-namespace
```

Take a snapshot using the CLI

1. Create the snapshot, replacing values in brackets with information from your environment. For example:

```
tridentctl protect create snapshot <my_snapshot_name> --appvault  
<my_appvault_name> --app <name_of_app_to_snapshot>
```

4. Create a source application AppVault CR on the destination cluster that is identical to the AppVault CR you applied on the source cluster and name it (for example, `trident-protect-appvault-primary-destination.yaml`).
5. Apply the CR:

```
kubectl apply -f trident-protect-appvault-primary-destination.yaml -n  
my-app-namespace
```

6. Create an AppVault for the destination application on the destination cluster. Depending on your storage provider, modify an example in [AppVault custom resources](#) to fit your environment:
 - a. Create the custom resource (CR) file and name it (for example, `trident-protect-appvault-secondary-destination.yaml`).
 - b. Configure the following attributes:
 - **metadata.name:** (*Required*) The name of the AppVault custom resource. Make note of the name you choose, because other CR files needed for a replication relationship refer to this value.
 - **spec.providerConfig:** (*Required*) Stores the configuration necessary to access the AppVault using the specified provider. Choose a `bucketName` and any other necessary details for your provider. Make note of the values you choose, because other CR files needed for a replication relationship refer to these values. Refer to [AppVault custom resources](#) for examples of AppVault CRs with other providers.
 - **spec.providerCredentials:** (*Required*) Stores references to any credential required to access the AppVault using the specified provider.
 - **spec.providerCredentials.valueFromSecret:** (*Required*) Indicates that the credential value should come from a secret.
 - **key:** (*Required*) The valid key of the secret to select from.
 - **name:** (*Required*) Name of the secret containing the value for this field. Must be in the same namespace.
 - **spec.providerCredentials.secretAccessKey:** (*Required*) The access key used to access the provider. The **name** should match **spec.providerCredentials.valueFromSecret.name**.
 - **spec.providerType:** (*Required*) Determines what provides the backup; for example, NetApp ONTAP S3, generic S3, Google Cloud, or Microsoft Azure. Possible values:
 - `aws`
 - `azure`
 - `gcp`

- generic-s3
- ontap-s3
- storagegrid-s3

c. After you populate the `trident-protect-appvault-secondary-destination.yaml` file with the correct values, apply the CR:

```
kubectl apply -f trident-protect-appvault-secondary-destination.yaml  
-n my-app-namespace
```

7. Create an AppMirrorRelationship CR file:

Create an AppMirrorRelationship using a CR

- a. Create the custom resource (CR) file and name it (for example, `trident-protect-relationship.yaml`).
- b. Configure the following attributes:
 - **metadata.name:** (Required) The name of the AppMirrorRelationship custom resource.
 - **spec.destinationAppVaultRef:** (Required) This value must match the name of the AppVault for the destination application on the destination cluster.
 - **spec.namespaceMapping:** (Required) The destination and source namespaces must match the application namespace defined in the respective application CR.
 - **spec.sourceAppVaultRef:** (Required) This value must match the name of the AppVault for the source application.
 - **spec.sourceApplicationName:** (Required) This value must match the name of the source application you defined in the source application CR.
 - **spec.storageClassName:** (Required) Choose the name of a valid storage class on the cluster. The storage class must be peered with the storage class that is in use on the source cluster where the source application is deployed.
 - **spec.recurrenceRule:** Define a start date in UTC time and a recurrence interval.

Example YAML:

```
apiVersion: protect.trident.netapp.io/v1
kind: AppMirrorRelationship
metadata:
  name: amr-16061e80-1b05-4e80-9d26-d326dc1953d8
  namespace: my-app-namespace
spec:
  desiredState: Established
  destinationAppVaultRef: generic-s3-trident-protect-dst-
bucket-8fe0b902-f369-4317-93d1-ad7f2edc02b5
  namespaceMapping:
    - destination: my-app-namespace
      source: my-app-namespace
  recurrenceRule: |-
    DTSTART:20220101T000200Z
    RRULE:FREQ=MINUTELY;INTERVAL=5
  sourceAppVaultRef: generic-s3-trident-protect-src-bucket-
b643cc50-0429-4ad5-971f-ac4a83621922
  sourceApplicationName: maria
  sourceApplicationUID: 7498d32c-328e-4ddd-9029-122540866aeb
  storageClassName: sc-vsimg-2
```

- c. After you populate the `trident-protect-relationship.yaml` file with the correct values, apply the CR:

```
kubectl apply -f trident-protect-relationship.yaml -n my-app-namespace
```

Create an AppMirrorRelationship using the CLI

1. Create and apply the AppMirrorRelationship object, replacing values in brackets with information from your environment. For example:

```
tridentctl protect create appmirrorrelationship  
<name_of_appmirrorrelationship> --destination-app-vault  
<my_vault_name> --recurrence-rule <rule> --source-app  
<my_source_app> --source-app-vault <my_source_app_vault>
```

8. (Optional) Check the state and status of the replication relationship:

```
kubectl get amr -n my-app-namespace <relationship name> -o=jsonpath  
='{.status}' | jq
```

Fail over to destination cluster

Using Trident protect, you can fail over replicated applications to a destination cluster. This procedure stops the replication relationship and brings the app online on the destination cluster. Trident protect does not stop the app on the source cluster if it was operational.

Steps

1. Open the AppMirrorRelationship CR file (for example, `trident-protect-relationship.yaml`) and change the value of `spec.desiredState` to `Promoted`.
2. Save the CR file.
3. Apply the CR:

```
kubectl apply -f trident-protect-relationship.yaml -n my-app-namespace
```

4. (Optional) Create any protection schedules that you need on the failed over application.
5. (Optional) Check the state and status of the replication relationship:

```
kubectl get amr -n my-app-namespace <relationship name> -o=jsonpath  
='{.status}' | jq
```

Resync a failed over replication relationship

The resync operation re-establishes the replication relationship. After you perform a resync operation, the original source application becomes the running application, and any changes made to the running application on the destination cluster are discarded.

The process stops the app on the destination cluster before re-establishing replication.



Any data written to the destination application during failover will be lost.

Steps

1. Create a snapshot of the source application.
2. Open the AppMirrorRelationship CR file (for example, `trident-protect-relationship.yaml`) and change the value of `spec.desiredState` to `Established`.
3. Save the CR file.
4. Apply the CR:

```
kubectl apply -f trident-protect-relationship.yaml -n my-app-namespace
```

5. If you created any protection schedules on the destination cluster to protect the failed over application, remove them. Any schedules that remain cause volume snapshot failures.

Reverse resync a failed over replication relationship

When you reverse resync a failed over replication relationship, the destination application becomes the source application, and the source becomes the destination. Changes made to the destination application during failover are kept.

Steps

1. Delete the AppMirrorRelationship CR on the original destination cluster. This causes the destination to become the source. If there are any protection schedules remaining on the new destination cluster, remove them.
2. Set up a replication relationship by applying the CR files you originally used to set up the relationship to the opposite clusters.
3. Ensure the AppVault CRs are ready on each cluster.
4. Set up a replication relationship on the opposite cluster, configuring values for the reverse direction.

Reverse application replication direction

When you reverse replication direction, Trident protect moves the application to the destination storage backend while continuing to replicate back to the original source storage backend. Trident protect stops the source application and replicates the data to the destination before failing over to the destination app.

In this situation, you are swapping the source and destination.

Steps

1. Create a shutdown snapshot:

Create a shutdown snapshot using a CR

1. Disable the protection policy schedules for the source application.
2. Create a ShutdownSnapshot CR file:
 - a. Create the custom resource (CR) file and name it (for example, `trident-protect-shutdownsnapshot.yaml`).
 - b. Configure the following attributes:
 - **metadata.name:** *(Required)* The name of the custom resource.
 - **spec.AppVaultRef:** *(Required)* This value must match the `metadata.name` field of the AppVault for the source application.
 - **spec.ApplicationRef:** *(Required)* This value must match the `metadata.name` field of the source application CR file.

Example YAML:

```
apiVersion: protect.trident.netapp.io/v1
kind: ShutdownSnapshot
metadata:
  name: replication-shutdown-snapshot-afc4c564-e700-4b72-86c3-c08a5dbe844e
  namespace: my-app-namespace
spec:
  appVaultRef: generic-s3-trident-protect-src-bucket-04b6b4ec-46a3-420a-b351-45795e1b5e34
  applicationRef: maria
```

3. After you populate the `trident-protect-shutdownsnapshot.yaml` file with the correct values, apply the CR:

```
kubectl apply -f trident-protect-shutdownsnapshot.yaml -n my-app-namespace
```

Create a shutdown snapshot using the CLI

1. Create the shutdown snapshot, replacing values in brackets with information from your environment. For example:

```
tridentctl protect create shutdownsnapshot <my_shutdown_snapshot>
--appvault <my_vault> --app <app_to_snapshot>
```

2. After the snapshot completes, get the status of the snapshot:

```
kubectl get shutdownsnapshot -n my-app-namespace  
<shutdown_snapshot_name> -o yaml
```

3. Find the value of **shutdownsnapshot.status.appArchivePath** using the following command, and record the last part of the file path (also called the basename; this will be everything after the last slash):

```
k get shutdownsnapshot -n my-app-namespace <shutdown_snapshot_name> -o  
jsonpath='{.status.appArchivePath}'
```

4. Perform a fail over from the destination cluster to the source cluster, with the following change:



In step 2 of the fail over procedure, include the `spec.promotedSnapshot` field in the AppMirrorRelationship CR file, and set its value to the basename you recorded in step 3 above.

5. Perform the reverse resync steps in [Reverse resync a failed over replication relationship](#).
6. Enable protection schedules on the new source cluster.

Result

The following actions occur because of the reverse replication:

- A snapshot is taken of the original source app's Kubernetes resources.
- The original source app's pods are gracefully stopped by deleting the app's Kubernetes resources (leaving PVCs and PVs in place).
- After the pods are shut down, snapshots of the app's volumes are taken and replicated.
- The SnapMirror relationships are broken, making the destination volumes ready for read/write.
- The app's Kubernetes resources are restored from the pre-shutdown snapshot, using the volume data replicated after the original source app was shut down.
- Replication is re-established in the reverse direction.

Fail back applications to the original source cluster

Using Trident protect, you can achieve "fail back" after a failover operation by using the following sequence of operations. In this workflow to restore the original replication direction, Trident protect replicates (resyncs) any application changes back to the original source application before reversing the replication direction.

This process starts from a relationship that has completed a failover to a destination and involves the following steps:

- Start with a failed over state.
- Reverse resync the replication relationship.



Do not perform a normal resync operation, as this will discard data written to the destination cluster during the fail over procedure.

- Reverse the replication direction.

Steps

1. Perform the [Reverse resync a failed over replication relationship](#) steps.
2. Perform the [Reverse application replication direction](#) steps.

Delete a replication relationship

You can delete a replication relationship at any time. When you delete the application replication relationship, it results in two separate applications with no relationship between them.

Steps

1. Delete the AppMirrorRelationship CR:

```
kubectl delete -f trident-protect-relationship.yaml -n my-app-namespace
```

Migrate applications

You can migrate your applications between clusters or storage classes by restoring your backup or snapshot data to a different cluster or storage class.



When you migrate an application, all execution hooks configured for the application are migrated with the app. If a post-restore execution hook is present, it runs automatically as part of the restore operation.

Backup and restore operations

To perform backup and restore operations for the following scenarios, you can automate specific backup and restore tasks.

Clone to same cluster

To clone an application to the same cluster, create a snapshot or backup and restore the data to the same cluster.

Steps

1. Do one of the following:
 - a. [Create a snapshot](#).
 - b. [Create a backup](#).
2. On the same cluster, do one of the following, depending on if you created a snapshot or a backup:
 - a. [Restore your data from the snapshot](#).
 - b. [Restore your data from the backup](#).

Clone to different cluster

To clone an application to a different cluster (perform a cross-cluster clone), create a snapshot or backup and restore the data to a different cluster. Make sure that Trident protect is installed on the destination cluster.

Steps

1. Do one of the following:
 - a. [Create a snapshot](#).
 - b. [Create a backup](#).
2. Ensure that the AppVault CR for the object storage bucket that contains the backup or snapshot has been configured on the destination cluster.
3. On the destination cluster, do one of the following, depending on if you created a snapshot or a backup:
 - a. [Restore your data from the snapshot](#).
 - b. [Restore your data from the backup](#).

Migrate applications from one storage class to another storage class

You can migrate applications from one storage class to a different storage class by restoring a snapshot to the different destination storage class.

For example (excluding the secrets from the restore CR):

```
apiVersion: protect.trident.netapp.io/v1
kind: SnapshotRestore
metadata:
  name: "${snapshotRestoreCRName}"
spec:
  appArchivePath: "${snapshotArchivePath}"
  appVaultRef: "${appVaultCRName}"
  namespaceMapping:
    destination: "${destinationNamespace}"
    source: "${sourceNamespace}"
  storageClassMapping:
    destination: "${destinationStorageClass}"
    source: "${sourceStorageClass}"
  resourceFilter:
    resourceMatchers:
      kind: Secret
      version: v1
    resourceSelectionCriteria: exclude
```


Restore the snapshot using a CR

1. Create the custom resource (CR) file and name it `trident-protect-snapshot-restore-cr.yaml`.
2. In the file you created, configure the following attributes:
 - **metadata.name:** (*Required*) The name of this custom resource; choose a unique and sensible name for your environment.
 - **spec.appArchivePath:** The path inside AppVault where the snapshot contents are stored. You can use the following command to find this path:

```
kubectl get snapshots <my-snapshot-name> -n trident-protect -o  
jsonpath='{.status.appArchivePath}'
```

- **spec.appVaultRef:** (*Required*) The name of the AppVault where the snapshot contents are stored.
- **spec.namespaceMapping:** The mapping of the source namespace of the restore operation to the destination namespace. Replace `my-source-namespace` and `my-destination-namespace` with information from your environment.

```
apiVersion: protect.trident.netapp.io/v1  
kind: SnapshotRestore  
metadata:  
  name: my-cr-name  
  namespace: trident-protect  
spec:  
  appArchivePath: my-snapshot-path  
  appVaultRef: appvault-name  
  namespaceMapping: [{"source": "my-source-namespace",  
"destination": "my-destination-namespace"}]
```

3. Optionally, if you need to select only certain resources of the application to restore, add filtering that includes or excludes resources marked with particular labels:
 - **resourceFilter.resourceSelectionCriteria:** (*Required for filtering*) Use `include` or `exclude` to include or exclude a resource defined in `resourceMatchers`. Add the following `resourceMatchers` parameters to define the resources to be included or excluded:
 - **resourceMatchers.group:** (*Optional*) Group of the resource to be filtered.
 - **resourceMatchers.kind:** (*Optional*) Kind of the resource to be filtered.
 - **resourceMatchers.version:** (*Optional*) Version of the resource to be filtered.
 - **resourceMatchers.names:** (*Optional*) Names in the Kubernetes `metadata.name` field of the resource to be filtered.
 - **resourceMatchers.namespaces:** (*Optional*) Namespaces in the Kubernetes `metadata.name` field of the resource to be filtered.
 - **resourceMatchers.labelSelectors:** (*Optional*) Label selector string in the Kubernetes

metadata.name field of the resource as defined in the [Kubernetes documentation](#). For example: "trident.netapp.io/os=linux".

For example:

```
spec:
  resourceFilter:
    resourceSelectionCriteria: "include"
    resourceMatchers:
      group: my-resource-group
      kind: my-resource-kind
      version: my-resource-version
      names: ["my-resource-names"]
      namespaces: ["my-resource-namespaces"]
      labelSelectors: ["trident.netapp.io/os=linux"]
```

4. After you populate the trident-protect-snapshot-restore-cr.yaml file with the correct values, apply the CR:

```
kubectl apply -f trident-protect-snapshot-restore-cr.yaml
```

Restore the snapshot using the CLI

1. Restore the snapshot to a different namespace, replacing values in brackets with information from your environment.
 - The snapshot argument uses a namespace and snapshot name in the format <namespace>/<name>.
 - The namespace-mapping argument uses colon-separated namespaces to map source namespaces to the correct destination namespaces in the format source1:dest1,source2:dest2.

For example:

```
tridentctl protect create snapshotrestore <my_restore_name>
--snapshot <namespace/snapshot_to_restore> --namespace-mapping
<source_to_destination_namespace_mapping>
```

Manage execution hooks

An execution hook is a custom action that you can configure to run in conjunction with a data protection operation of a managed app. For example, if you have a database app, you can use an execution hook to pause all database transactions before a snapshot, and resume transactions after the snapshot is complete. This ensures application-

consistent snapshots.

Types of execution hooks

Trident protect supports the following types of execution hooks, based on when they can be run:

- Pre-snapshot
- Post-snapshot
- Pre-backup
- Post-backup
- Post-restore
- Post-failover

Order of execution

When a data protection operation is run, execution hook events take place in the following order:

1. Any applicable custom pre-operation execution hooks are run on the appropriate containers. You can create and run as many custom pre-operation hooks as you need, but the order of execution of these hooks before the operation is neither guaranteed nor configurable.
2. The data protection operation is performed.
3. Any applicable custom post-operation execution hooks are run on the appropriate containers. You can create and run as many custom post-operation hooks as you need, but the order of execution of these hooks after the operation is neither guaranteed nor configurable.

If you create multiple execution hooks of the same type (for example, pre-snapshot), the order of execution of those hooks is not guaranteed. However, the order of execution of hooks of different types is guaranteed. For example, the following is the order of execution of a configuration that has all of the different types of hooks:

1. Pre-snapshot hooks executed
2. Post-snapshot hooks executed
3. Pre-backup hooks executed
4. Post-backup hooks executed



The preceding order example only applies when you run a backup that does not use an existing snapshot.



You should always test your execution hook scripts before enabling them in a production environment. You can use the 'kubectl exec' command to conveniently test the scripts. After you enable the execution hooks in a production environment, test the resulting snapshots and backups to ensure they are consistent. You can do this by cloning the app to a temporary namespace, restoring the snapshot or backup, and then testing the app.

Important notes about custom execution hooks

Consider the following when planning execution hooks for your apps.

- An execution hook must use a script to perform actions. Many execution hooks can reference the same script.

- Trident protect requires the scripts that execution hooks use to be written in the format of executable shell scripts.
- Script size is limited to 96KB.
- Trident protect uses execution hook settings and any matching criteria to determine which hooks are applicable to a snapshot, backup, or restore operation.



Because execution hooks often reduce or completely disable the functionality of the application they are running against, you should always try to minimize the time your custom execution hooks take to run. If you start a backup or snapshot operation with associated execution hooks but then cancel it, the hooks are still allowed to run if the backup or snapshot operation has already begun. This means that the logic used in a post-backup execution hook cannot assume that the backup was completed.

Execution hook filters

When you add or edit an execution hook for an application, you can add filters to the execution hook to manage which containers the hook will match. Filters are useful for applications that use the same container image on all containers, but might use each image for a different purpose (such as Elasticsearch). Filters allow you to create scenarios where execution hooks run on some but not necessarily all identical containers. If you create multiple filters for a single execution hook, they are combined with a logical AND operator. You can have up to 10 active filters per execution hook.

Each filter you add to an execution hook uses a regular expression to match containers in your cluster. When a hook matches a container, the hook will run its associated script on that container. Regular expressions for filters use the Regular Expression 2 (RE2) syntax, which does not support creating a filter that excludes containers from the list of matches. For information on the syntax that Trident protect supports for regular expressions in execution hook filters, see [Regular Expression 2 \(RE2\) syntax support](#).



If you add a namespace filter to an execution hook that runs after a restore or clone operation and the restore or clone source and destination are in different namespaces, the namespace filter is only applied to the destination namespace.

Execution hook examples

Visit the [NetApp Verda GitHub project](#) to download real execution hooks for popular apps such as Apache Cassandra and Elasticsearch. You can also see examples and get ideas for structuring your own custom execution hooks.

Create an execution hook

You can create a custom execution hook for an app using Trident protect. You need to have Owner, Admin, or Member permissions to create execution hooks.

Use a CR

1. Create the custom resource (CR) file and name it `trident-protect-hook.yaml`.
2. Configure the following attributes to match your Trident protect environment and cluster configuration:
 - **metadata.name:** (*Required*) The name of this custom resource; choose a unique and sensible name for your environment.
 - **spec.applicationRef:** (*Required*) The Kubernetes name of the application for which to run the execution hook.
 - **spec.stage:** (*Required*) A string indicating which stage during the action that the execution hook should run. Possible values:
 - Pre
 - Post
 - **spec.action:** (*Required*) A string indicating which action the execution hook will take, assuming any execution hook filters specified are matched. Possible values:
 - Snapshot
 - Backup
 - Restore
 - Failover
 - **spec.enabled:** (*Optional*) Indicates whether this execution hook is enabled or disabled. If not specified, the default value is true.
 - **spec.hookSource:** (*Required*) A string containing the base64-encoded hook script.
 - **spec.timeout:** (*Optional*) A number defining how long in minutes that the execution hook is allowed to run. The minimum value is 1 minute, and the default value is 25 minutes if not specified.
 - **spec.arguments:** (*Optional*) A YAML list of arguments that you can specify for the execution hook.
 - **spec.matchingCriteria:** (*Optional*) An optional list of criteria key value pairs, each pair making up an execution hook filter. You can add up to 10 filters per execution hook.
 - **spec.matchingCriteria.type:** (*Optional*) A string identifying the execution hook filter type. Possible values:
 - ContainerImage
 - ContainerName
 - PodName
 - PodLabel
 - NamespaceName
 - **spec.matchingCriteria.value:** (*Optional*) A string or regular expression identifying the execution hook filter value.

Example YAML:

```

apiVersion: protect.trident.netapp.io/v1
kind: ExecHook
metadata:
  name: example-hook-cr
  namespace: my-app-namespace
  annotations:
    astra.netapp.io/astra-control-hook-source-id:
/account/test/hookSource/id
spec:
  applicationRef: my-app-name
  stage: Pre
  action: Snapshot
  enabled: true
  hookSource: IyEvYmluL2Jhc2gKZWNobyAiZXhhbXBsZSBzY3JpcHQiCg==
  timeout: 10
  arguments:
    - FirstExampleArg
    - SecondExampleArg
  matchingCriteria:
    - type: containerName
      value: mysql
    - type: containerImage
      value: bitnami/mysql
    - type: podName
      value: mysql
    - type: namespaceName
      value: mysql-a
    - type: podLabel
      value: app.kubernetes.io/component=primary
    - type: podLabel
      value: helm.sh/chart=mysql-10.1.0
    - type: podLabel
      value: deployment-type=production

```

3. After you populate the CR file with the correct values, apply the CR:

```
kubectl apply -f trident-protect-hook.yaml
```

Use the CLI

1. Create the execution hook, replacing values in brackets with information from your environment. For example:

```
tridentctl protect create exehook <my_exec_hook_name> --action  
<action_type> --app <app_to_use_hook> --stage <pre_or_post_stage>  
--source-file <script-file>
```

Uninstall Trident protect

You might need to remove Trident protect components if you are upgrading from a trial to a full version of the product.

To remove Trident protect, perform the following steps.

Steps

1. Remove the Trident protect CR files:

```
helm uninstall trident-protect-crds
```

2. Remove Trident protect:

```
helm uninstall -n trident-protect trident-protect
```

3. Remove the Trident protect namespace:

```
kubectl delete ns trident-protect
```

Knowledge and support

Frequently asked questions

Find answers to the frequently asked questions about installing, configuring, upgrading, and troubleshooting Trident.

General questions

How frequently is Trident released?

Beginning with the 24.02 release, Trident is released every four months: February, June, and October.

Does Trident support all the features that are released in a particular version of Kubernetes?

Trident usually does not support alpha features in Kubernetes. Trident might support beta features within the two Trident releases that follow the Kubernetes beta release.

Does Trident have any dependencies on other NetApp products for its functioning?

Trident does not have any dependencies on other NetApp software products and it works as a standalone application. However, you should have a NetApp backend storage device.

How can I obtain complete Trident configuration details?

Use the `tridentctl get` command to obtain more information about your Trident configuration.

Can I obtain metrics on how storage is provisioned by Trident?

Yes. Prometheus endpoints that can be used to gather information about Trident operation, such as the number of backends managed, the number of volumes provisioned, bytes consumed, and so on. You can also use [Cloud Insights](#) for monitoring and analysis.

Does the user experience change when using Trident as a CSI Provisioner?

No. There are no changes as far as the user experience and functionalities are concerned. The provisioner name used is `csi.trident.netapp.io`. This method of installing Trident is recommended if you want to use all the new features provided by current and future releases.

Install and use Trident on a Kubernetes cluster

Does Trident support an offline install from a private registry?

Yes, Trident can be installed offline. Refer to [Learn about Trident installation](#).

Can I install Trident be remotely?

Yes. Trident 18.10 and later support remote installation capability from any machine that has `kubectl` access to the cluster. After `kubectl` access is verified (for example, initiate a `kubectl get nodes` command from the remote machine to verify), follow the installation instructions.

Can I configure High Availability with Trident?

Trident is installed as a Kubernetes Deployment (ReplicaSet) with one instance, and so it has HA built in. You should not increase the number of replicas in the deployment. If the node where Trident is installed is lost or the pod is otherwise inaccessible, Kubernetes automatically re-deploys the pod to a healthy node in your cluster. Trident is control-plane only, so currently mounted pods are not affected if Trident is re-deployed.

Does Trident need access to the kube-system namespace?

Trident reads from the Kubernetes API Server to determine when applications request new PVCs, so it needs access to kube-system.

What are the roles and privileges used by Trident?

The Trident installer creates a Kubernetes ClusterRole, which has specific access to the cluster's PersistentVolume, PersistentVolumeClaim, StorageClass, and Secret resources of the Kubernetes cluster. Refer to [Customize tridentctl installation](#).

Can I locally generate the exact manifest files Trident uses for installation?

You can locally generate and modify the exact manifest files Trident uses for installation, if needed. Refer to [Customize tridentctl installation](#).

Can I share the same ONTAP backend SVM for two separate Trident instances for two separate Kubernetes clusters?

Although it is not advised, you can use the same backend SVM for two Trident instances. Specify a unique volume name for each instance during installation and/or specify a unique `StoragePrefix` parameter in the `setup/backend.json` file. This is to ensure the same FlexVol is not used for both instances.

Is it possible to install Trident under ContainerLinux (formerly CoreOS)?

Trident is simply a Kubernetes pod and can be installed wherever Kubernetes is running.

Can I use Trident with NetApp Cloud Volumes ONTAP?

Yes, Trident is supported on AWS, Google Cloud, and Azure.

Does Trident work with Cloud Volumes Services?

Yes, Trident supports the Azure NetApp Files service in Azure as well as the Cloud Volumes Service in GCP.

Troubleshooting and support

Does NetApp support Trident?

Although Trident is open source and provided for free, NetApp fully supports it provided your NetApp backend is supported.

How do I raise a support case?

To raise a support case, do one of the following:

1. Contact your Support Account Manager and get help to raise a ticket.

2. Raise a support case by contacting [NetApp Support](#).

How do I generate a support log bundle?

You can create a support bundle by running `tridentctl logs -a`. In addition to the logs captured in the bundle, capture the kubelet log to diagnose the mount problems on the Kubernetes side. The instructions to get the kubelet log varies based on how Kubernetes is installed.

What do I do if I need to raise a request for a new feature?

Create an issue on [Trident Github](#) and mention **RFE** in the subject and description of the issue.

Where do I raise a defect?

Create an issue on [Trident Github](#). Make sure to include all the necessary information and logs pertaining to the issue.

What happens if I have quick question on Trident that I need clarification on? Is there a community or a forum?

If you have any questions, issues, or requests, reach out to us through our Trident [Discord channel](#) or GitHub.

My storage system's password has changed and Trident no longer works, how do I recover?

Update the backend's password with `tridentctl update backend myBackend -f </path/to_new_backend.json> -n trident`. Replace `myBackend` in the example with your backend name, and `</path/to_new_backend.json` with the path to the correct `backend.json` file.

Trident cannot find my Kubernetes node. How do I fix this?

There are two likely scenarios why Trident cannot find a Kubernetes node. It can be because of a networking issue within Kubernetes or a DNS issue. The Trident node daemonset that runs on each Kubernetes node must be able to communicate with the Trident controller to register the node with Trident. If networking changes occurred after Trident was installed, you encounter this problem only with new Kubernetes nodes that are added to the cluster.

If the Trident pod is destroyed, will I lose the data?

Data will not be lost if the Trident pod is destroyed. Trident metadata is stored in CRD objects. All PVs that have been provisioned by Trident will function normally.

Upgrade Trident

Can I upgrade from a older version directly to a newer version (skipping a few versions)?

NetApp supports upgrading Trident from one major release to the next immediate major release. You can upgrade from version 18.xx to 19.xx, 19.xx to 20.xx, and so on. You should test upgrading in a lab before production deployment.

Is it possible to downgrade Trident to a previous release?

If you need a fix for bugs observed after an upgrade, dependency issues, or an unsuccessful or incomplete upgrade, you should [uninstall Trident](#) and reinstall the earlier version using the specific instructions for that version. This is the only recommended way to downgrade to an earlier version.

Manage backends and volumes

Do I need to define both Management and Data LIFs in an ONTAP backend definition file?

The management LIF is mandatory. Data LIF varies:

- ONTAP SAN: Do not specify for iSCSI. Trident uses [ONTAP Selective LUN Map](#) to discover the iSCSI LIFs needed to establish a multi path session. A warning is generated if `dataLIF` is explicitly defined. Refer to [ONTAP SAN configuration options and examples](#) for details.
- ONTAP NAS: We recommend specifying `dataLIF`. If not provided, Trident fetches data LIFs from the SVM. You can specify a fully-qualified domain name (FQDN) to be used for the NFS mount operations, allowing you to create a round-robin DNS to load-balance across multiple data LIFs. Refer to [ONTAP NAS configuration options and examples](#) for details

Can Trident configure CHAP for ONTAP backends?

Yes. Trident supports bidirectional CHAP for ONTAP backends. This requires setting `useCHAP=true` in your backend configuration.

How do I manage export policies with Trident?

Trident can dynamically create and manage export policies from version 20.04 onwards. This enables the storage administrator to provide one or more CIDR blocks in their backend configuration and have Trident add node IPs that fall within these ranges to an export policy it creates. In this manner, Trident automatically manages the addition and deletion of rules for nodes with IPs within the given CIDRs.

Can IPv6 addresses be used for the Management and Data LIFs?

Trident supports defining IPv6 addresses for:

- `managementLIF` and `dataLIF` for ONTAP NAS backends.
- `managementLIF` for ONTAP SAN backends. You cannot specify `dataLIF` on an ONTAP SAN backend.

Trident must be installed using the flag `--use-ipv6` (for `tridentctl` installation), `IPv6` (for Trident operator), or `tridentTPv6` (for Helm installation) for it to function over IPv6.

Is it possible to update the Management LIF on the backend?

Yes, it is possible to update the backend Management LIF using the `tridentctl update backend` command.

Is it possible to update the Data LIF on the backend?

You can update the Data LIF on `ontap-nas` and `ontap-nas-economy` only.

Can I create multiple backends in Trident for Kubernetes?

Trident can support many backends simultaneously, either with the same driver or different drivers.

How does Trident store backend credentials?

Trident stores the backend credentials as Kubernetes Secrets.

How does Trident select a specific backend?

If the backend attributes cannot be used to automatically select the right pools for a class, the `storagePools` and `additionalStoragePools` parameters are used to select a specific set of pools.

How do I ensure that Trident will not provision from a specific backend?

The `excludeStoragePools` parameter is used to filter the set of pools that Trident uses for provisioning and will remove any pools that match.

If there are multiple backends of the same kind, how does Trident select which backend to use?

If there are multiple configured backends of the same type, Trident selects the appropriate backend based on the parameters present in `StorageClass` and `PersistentVolumeClaim`. For example, if there are multiple `ontap-nas` driver backends, Trident tries to match parameters in the `StorageClass` and `PersistentVolumeClaim` combined and match a backend which can deliver the requirements listed in `StorageClass` and `PersistentVolumeClaim`. If there are multiple backends that match the request, Trident selects from one of them at random.

Does Trident support bi-directional CHAP with Element/SolidFire?

Yes.

How does Trident deploy Qtrees on an ONTAP volume? How many Qtrees can be deployed on a single volume?

The `ontap-nas-economy` driver creates up to 200 Qtrees in the same FlexVol (configurable between 50 and 300), 100,000 Qtrees per cluster node, and 2.4M per cluster. When you enter a new `PersistentVolumeClaim` that is serviced by the economy driver, the driver looks to see if a FlexVol already exists that can service the new Qtree. If the FlexVol does not exist that can service the Qtree, a new FlexVol is created.

How can I set Unix permissions for volumes provisioned on ONTAP NAS?

You can set Unix permissions on the volume provisioned by Trident by setting a parameter in the backend definition file.

How can I configure an explicit set of ONTAP NFS mount options while provisioning a volume?

By default, Trident does not set mount options to any value with Kubernetes. To specify the mount options in the Kubernetes Storage Class, follow the example given [here](#).

How do I set the provisioned volumes to a specific export policy?

To allow the appropriate hosts access to a volume, use the `exportPolicy` parameter configured in the backend definition file.

How do I set volume encryption through Trident with ONTAP?

You can set encryption on the volume provisioned by Trident by using the encryption parameter in the backend definition file. For more information, refer to: [How Trident works with NVE and NAE](#)

What is the best way to implement QoS for ONTAP through Trident?

Use `StorageClasses` to implement QoS for ONTAP.

How do I specify thin or thick provisioning through Trident?

The ONTAP drivers support either thin or thick provisioning. The ONTAP drivers default to thin provisioning. If thick provisioning is desired, you should configure either the backend definition file or the `StorageClass`. If both are configured, `StorageClass` takes precedence. Configure the following for ONTAP:

1. On `StorageClass`, set the `provisioningType` attribute as `thick`.
2. In the backend definition file, enable thick volumes by setting `backend spaceReserve` parameter as `volume`.

How do I make sure that the volumes being used are not deleted even if I accidentally delete the PVC?

PVC protection is automatically enabled on Kubernetes starting from version 1.10.

Can I grow NFS PVCs that were created by Trident?

Yes. You can expand a PVC that has been created by Trident. Note that volume autogrow is an ONTAP feature that is not applicable to Trident.

Can I import a volume while it is in SnapMirror Data Protection (DP) or offline mode?

The volume import fails if the external volume is in DP mode or is offline. You receive the following error message:

```
Error: could not import volume: volume import failed to get size of
volume: volume <name> was not found (400 Bad Request) command terminated
with exit code 1.
Make sure to remove the DP mode or put the volume online before importing
the volume.
```

How is resource quota translated to a NetApp cluster?

Kubernetes Storage Resource Quota should work as long as NetApp storage has capacity. When the NetApp storage cannot honor the Kubernetes quota settings due to lack of capacity, Trident tries to provision but errors out.

Can I create Volume Snapshots using Trident?

Yes. Creating on-demand volume snapshots and Persistent Volumes from Snapshots are supported by Trident. To create PVs from snapshots, ensure that the `VolumeSnapshotDataSource` feature gate has been enabled.

What are the drivers that support Trident volume snapshots?

As of today, on-demand snapshot support is available for our `ontap-nas`, `ontap-nas-flexgroup`, `ontap-san`, `ontap-san-economy`, `solidfire-san`, `gcp-cvs`, and `azure-netapp-files` backend drivers.

How do I take a snapshot backup of a volume provisioned by Trident with ONTAP?

This is available on `ontap-nas`, `ontap-san`, and `ontap-nas-flexgroup` drivers. You can also specify a `snapshotPolicy` for the `ontap-san-economy` driver at the FlexVol level.

This is also available on the `ontap-nas-economy` drivers but on the FlexVol level granularity and not on the qtree level granularity. To enable the ability to snapshot volumes provisioned by Trident, set the backend parameter option `snapshotPolicy` to the desired snapshot policy as defined on the ONTAP backend. Any snapshots taken by the storage controller are not known by Trident.

Can I set a snapshot reserve percentage for a volume provisioned through Trident?

Yes, you can reserve a specific percentage of disk space for storing the snapshot copies through Trident by setting the `snapshotReserve` attribute in the backend definition file. If you have configured `snapshotPolicy` and `snapshotReserve` in the backend definition file, snapshot reserve percentage is set according to the `snapshotReserve` percentage mentioned in the backend file. If the `snapshotReserve` percentage number is not mentioned, ONTAP by default takes the snapshot reserve percentage as 5. If the `snapshotPolicy` option is set to none, the snapshot reserve percentage is set to 0.

Can I directly access the volume snapshot directory and copy files?

Yes, you can access the snapshot directory on the volume provisioned by Trident by setting the `snapshotDir` parameter in the backend definition file.

Can I set up SnapMirror for volumes through Trident?

Currently, SnapMirror has to be set externally by using ONTAP CLI or OnCommand System Manager.

How do I restore Persistent Volumes to a specific ONTAP snapshot?

To restore a volume to an ONTAP snapshot, perform the following steps:

1. Quiesce the application pod which is using the Persistent volume.
2. Revert to the required snapshot through ONTAP CLI or OnCommand System Manager.
3. Restart the application pod.

Can Trident provision volumes on SVMs that have a Load-Sharing Mirror configured?

Load-sharing mirrors can be created for root volumes of SVMs that serve data over NFS. ONTAP automatically updates load-sharing mirrors for volumes that have been created by Trident. This may result in delays in mounting volumes. When multiple volumes are created using Trident, provisioning a volume is dependent on ONTAP updating the load-sharing mirror.

How can I separate out storage class usage for each customer/tenant?

Kubernetes does not allow storage classes in namespaces. However, you can use Kubernetes to limit usage of a specific storage class per namespace by using Storage Resource Quotas, which are per namespace. To deny a specific namespace access to specific storage, set the resource quota to 0 for that storage class.

Troubleshooting

Use the pointers provided here for troubleshooting issues you might encounter while

installing and using Trident.

General troubleshooting

- If the Trident pod fails to come up properly (for example, when the Trident pod is stuck in the `ContainerCreating` phase with fewer than two ready containers), running `kubectl -n trident describe deployment trident` and `kubectl -n trident describe pod trident--**` can provide additional insights. Obtaining kubelet logs (for example, via `journalctl -xeu kubelet`) can also be helpful.
- If there is not enough information in the Trident logs, you can try enabling the debug mode for Trident by passing the `-d` flag to the `install` parameter based on your installation option.

Then confirm debug is set using `./tridentctl logs -n trident` and searching for `level=debug msg` in the log.

Installed with Operator

```
kubectl patch torc trident -n <namespace> --type=merge -p
'{"spec":{"debug":true}}'
```

This will restart all Trident pods, which can take several seconds. You can check this by observing the 'AGE' column in the output of `kubectl get pod -n trident`.

For Trident 20.07 and 20.10 use `tprov` in place of `torc`.

Installed with Helm

```
helm upgrade <name> trident-operator-21.07.1-custom.tgz --set
tridentDebug=true`
```

Installed with tridentctl

```
./tridentctl uninstall -n trident
./tridentctl install -d -n trident
```

- You can also obtain debug logs for each backend by including `debugTraceFlags` in your backend definition. For example, include `debugTraceFlags: {"api":true, "method":true,}` to obtain API calls and method traversals in the Trident logs. Existing backends can have `debugTraceFlags` configured with a `tridentctl backend update`.
- When using RedHat CoreOS, ensure that `iscsid` is enabled on the worker nodes and started by default. This can be done using OpenShift MachineConfigs or by modifying the ignition templates.
- A common problem you could encounter when using Trident with [Azure NetApp Files](#) is when the tenant and client secrets come from an app registration with insufficient permissions. For a complete list of Trident requirements, Refer to [Azure NetApp Files](#) configuration.
- If there are problems with mounting a PV to a container, ensure that `rpcbind` is installed and running. Use the required package manager for the host OS and check if `rpcbind` is running. You can check the status of the `rpcbind` service by running a `systemctl status rpcbind` or its equivalent.

- If a Trident backend reports that it is in the `failed` state despite having worked before, it is likely caused by changing the SVM/admin credentials associated with the backend. Updating the backend information using `tridentctl update backend` or bouncing the Trident pod will fix this issue.
- If you encounter permission issues when installing Trident with Docker as the container runtime, attempt the installation of Trident with the `--in cluster=false` flag. This will not use an installer pod and avoid permission troubles seen due to the `trident-installer` user.
- Use the `uninstall` parameter `<Uninstalling Trident>` for cleaning up after a failed run. By default, the script does not remove the CRDs that have been created by Trident, making it safe to uninstall and install again even in a running deployment.
- If you want to downgrade to an earlier version of Trident, first run the `tridentctl uninstall` command to remove Trident. Download the desired [Trident version](#) and install using the `tridentctl install` command.
- After a successful install, if a PVC is stuck in the `Pending` phase, running `kubectl describe pvc` can provide additional information about why Trident failed to provision a PV for this PVC.

Unsuccessful Trident deployment using the operator

If you are deploying Trident using the operator, the status of `TridentOrchestrator` changes from `Installing` to `Installed`. If you observe the `Failed` status, and the operator is unable to recover by itself, you should check the logs of the operator by running following command:

```
tridentctl logs -l trident-operator
```

Trailing the logs of the `trident-operator` container can point to where the problem lies. For example, one such issue could be the inability to pull the required container images from upstream registries in an airgapped environment.

To understand why the installation of Trident was unsuccessful, you should take a look at the `TridentOrchestrator` status.


```

kubect1 describe torc trident-2
Name:          trident-2
Namespace:
Labels:        <none>
Annotations:   <none>
API Version:   trident.netapp.io/v1
Kind:          TridentOrchestrator
...
Status:
  Current Installation Params:
    IPv6:
    Autosupport Hostname:
    Autosupport Image:
    Autosupport Proxy:
    Autosupport Serial Number:
    Debug:
    Image Pull Secrets:          <nil>
    Image Registry:
    k8sTimeout:
    Kubelet Dir:
    Log Format:
    Silence Autosupport:
    Trident Image:
  Message:          Trident is bound to another CR 'trident'
  Namespace:       trident-2
  Status:          Error
  Version:
Events:
  Type      Reason  Age          From          Message
  ----      -
Warning    Error   16s (x2 over 16s)  trident-operator.netapp.io  Trident
is bound to another CR 'trident'

```

This error indicates that there already exists a `TridentOrchestrator` that was used to install Trident. Since each Kubernetes cluster can only have one instance of Trident, the operator ensures that at any given time there only exists one active `TridentOrchestrator` that it can create.

In addition, observing the status of the Trident pods can often indicate if something is not right.

```
kubectl get pods -n trident
```

NAME	READY	STATUS	RESTARTS
trident-csi-4p5kq	1/2	ImagePullBackOff	0
trident-csi-6f45bfd8b6-vfrkw	4/5	ImagePullBackOff	0
trident-csi-9q5xc	1/2	ImagePullBackOff	0
trident-csi-9v95z	1/2	ImagePullBackOff	0
trident-operator-766f7b8658-ldzsv	1/1	Running	0

You can clearly see that the pods are not able to initialize completely because one or more container images were not fetched.

To address the problem, you should edit the `TridentOrchestrator` CR. Alternatively, you can delete `TridentOrchestrator`, and create a new one with the modified and accurate definition.

Unsuccessful Trident deployment using `tridentctl`

To help figure out what went wrong, you could run the installer again using the `-d` argument, which will turn on debug mode and help you understand what the problem is:

```
./tridentctl install -n trident -d
```

After addressing the problem, you can clean up the installation as follows, and then run the `tridentctl install` command again:

```
./tridentctl uninstall -n trident
INFO Deleted Trident deployment.
INFO Deleted cluster role binding.
INFO Deleted cluster role.
INFO Deleted service account.
INFO Removed Trident user from security context constraint.
INFO Trident uninstallation succeeded.
```

Completely remove Trident and CRDs

You can completely remove Trident and all created CRDs and associated custom resources.



This cannot be undone. Do not do this unless you want a completely fresh installation of Trident. To uninstall Trident without removing CRDs, refer to [Uninstall Trident](#).

Trident operator

To uninstall Trident and completely remove CRDs using the Trident operator:

```
kubectl patch torc <trident-orchestrator-name> --type=merge -p
'{"spec":{"wipeout":["crds"],"uninstall":true}}'
```

Helm

To uninstall Trident and completely remove CRDs using Helm:

```
kubectl patch torc trident --type=merge -p
'{"spec":{"wipeout":["crds"],"uninstall":true}}'
```

```
tridentctl
```

To completely remove CRDs after uninstalling Trident using `tridentctl`

```
tridentctl obliviate crd
```

NVMe node unstaging failure with RWX raw block namespaces on Kubernetes 1.26

If you are running Kubernetes 1.26, node unstaging might fail when using NVMe/TCP with RWX raw block namespaces. The following scenarios provide workaround to the failure. Alternatively, you can upgrade Kubernetes to 1.27.

Deleted the namespace and pod

Consider a scenario where you have a Trident managed namespace (NVMe persistent volume) attached to a pod. If you delete the namespace directly from the ONTAP backend, the unstaging process gets stuck after you attempt to delete the pod. This scenario does not impact the Kubernetes cluster or other functioning.

Workaround

Unmount the persistent volume (corresponding to that namespace) from the respective node and delete it.

Blocked dataLIFs

```
If you block (or bring down) all the dataLIFs of the NVMe Trident backend,
the unstaging process gets stuck when you attempt to delete the pod. In
this scenario, you cannot run any NVMe CLI commands on the Kubernetes
node.
```

Workaround

Bring up the dataLIFS to restore full functionality.

Deleted namespace mapping

If you remove the `hostNQN` of the worker node from the corresponding subsystem, the unstaging process gets stuck when you attempt to delete the pod. In this scenario, you cannot run any NVMe CLI commands on the Kubernetes node.

Workaround

Add the `hostNQN` back to the subsystem.

Support

NetApp provides support for Trident in a variety of ways. Extensive free self-support options are available 24x7, such as knowledgebase (KB) articles and a Discord channel.

Trident support lifecycle

Trident provides three levels of support based on your version. Refer to [NetApp software version support for definitions](#).

Full support

Trident provides full support for twelve months from the release date.

Limited support

Trident provides limited support for months 13 - 24 from the release date.

Self-support

Trident documentation is available for months 25 - 36 from the release date.

Table 1. Trident version support schedule

Version	Full support	Limited support	Self-support
24.10	October 2025	October 2026	October 2027
24.06	June 2025	June 2026	June 2027
24.02	February 2025	February 2026	February 2027
23.10	October 2024	October 2025	October 2026
23.07	July 2024	July 2025	July 2026
23.04	—	April 2025	April 2026

Version	Full support	Limited support	Self-support
23.01	—	January 2025	January 2026
22.10	—	October 2024	October 2025
22.07	—	July 2024	July 2025
22.04	—	—	April 2025
22.01	—	—	January 2025

Self-support

For a comprehensive list of troubleshooting articles, Refer to [NetApp Knowledgebase \(login required\)](#).

Community support

There is a vibrant public community of container users (including Trident developers) on our [Discord channel](#). This is a great place to ask general questions about the project and discuss related topics with like-minded peers.

NetApp technical support

For help with Trident, create a support bundle using `tridentctl logs -a -n trident` and send it to `NetApp Support <Getting Help>`.

For more information

- [Trident resources](#)
- [Kubernetes Hub](#)

Reference

Trident ports

Learn more about the ports that Trident uses for communication.

Trident ports

Trident communicates over the following ports:

Port	Purpose
8443	Backchannel HTTPS
8001	Prometheus metrics endpoint
8000	Trident REST server
17546	Liveness/readiness probe port used by Trident daemonset pods



The liveness/readiness probe port can be changed during installation using the `--probe-port` flag. It is important to make sure this port isn't being used by another process on the worker nodes.

Trident REST API

While [tridentctl commands and options](#) are the easiest way to interact with the Trident REST API, you can use the REST endpoint directly if you prefer.

When to use the REST API

REST API is useful for advanced installations that use Trident as a standalone binary in non-Kubernetes deployments.

For better security, the Trident REST API is restricted to localhost by default when running inside a pod. To change this behavior, you need to set Trident's `-address` argument in its pod configuration.

Using REST API

For examples of how these APIs are called, pass the debug (`-d`) flag. For more information, refer to [Manage Trident using tridentctl](#).

The API works as follows:

GET

GET `<trident-address>/trident/v1/<object-type>`

Lists all objects of that type.

GET <trident-address>/trident/v1/<object-type>/<object-name>

Gets the details of the named object.

POST

POST <trident-address>/trident/v1/<object-type>

Creates an object of the specified type.

- Requires a JSON configuration for the object to be created. For the specification of each object type, refer to [Manage Trident using tridentctl](#).
- If the object already exists, behavior varies: backends update the existing object, while all other object types will fail the operation.

DELETE

DELETE <trident-address>/trident/v1/<object-type>/<object-name>

Deletes the named resource.



Volumes associated with backends or storage classes will continue to exist; these must be deleted separately. For more information, refer to [Manage Trident using tridentctl](#).

Command-line options

Trident exposes several command-line options for the Trident orchestrator. You can use these options to modify your deployment.

Logging

-debug

Enables debugging output.

-loglevel <level>

Sets the logging level (debug, info, warn, error, fatal). Defaults to info.

Kubernetes

-k8s_pod

Use this option or `-k8s_api_server` to enable Kubernetes support. Setting this causes Trident to use its containing pod's Kubernetes service account credentials to contact the API server. This only works when Trident runs as a pod in a Kubernetes cluster with service accounts enabled.

-k8s_api_server <insecure-address:insecure-port>

Use this option or `-k8s_pod` to enable Kubernetes support. When specified, Trident connects to the Kubernetes API server using the provided insecure address and port. This Enables Trident to be deployed outside of a pod; however, it only supports insecure connections to the API server. To connect securely, deploy Trident in a pod with the `-k8s_pod` option.

Docker

-volume_driver <name>

Driver name used when registering the Docker plugin. Defaults to `netapp`.

-driver_port <port-number>

Listen on this port rather than a UNIX domain socket.

-config <file>

Required; you must specify this path to a backend configuration file.

REST

-address <ip-or-host>

Specifies the address on which Trident's REST server should listen. Defaults to `localhost`. When listening on `localhost` and running inside a Kubernetes pod, the REST interface isn't directly accessible from outside the pod. Use `-address ""` to make the REST interface accessible from the pod IP address.



Trident REST interface can be configured to listen and serve at `127.0.0.1` (for IPv4) or `:::1` (for IPv6) only.

-port <port-number>

Specifies the port on which Trident's REST server should listen. Defaults to `8000`.

-rest

Enables the REST interface. Defaults to `true`.

Kubernetes and Trident objects

You can interact with Kubernetes and Trident using REST APIs by reading and writing resource objects. There are several resource objects that dictate the relationship between Kubernetes and Trident, Trident and storage, and Kubernetes and storage. Some of these objects are managed through Kubernetes and the others are managed through Trident.

How do the objects interact with one another?

Perhaps the easiest way to understand the objects, what they are for, and how they interact, is to follow a single request for storage from a Kubernetes user:

1. A user creates a `PersistentVolumeClaim` requesting a new `PersistentVolume` of a particular size from a Kubernetes `StorageClass` that was previously configured by the administrator.
2. The Kubernetes `StorageClass` identifies Trident as its provisioner and includes parameters that tell Trident how to provision a volume for the requested class.
3. Trident looks at its own `StorageClass` with the same name that identifies the matching `Backends` and `StoragePools` that it can use to provision volumes for the class.
4. Trident provisions storage on a matching backend and creates two objects: a `PersistentVolume` in

Kubernetes that tells Kubernetes how to find, mount, and treat the volume, and a volume in Trident that retains the relationship between the `PersistentVolume` and the actual storage.

5. Kubernetes binds the `PersistentVolumeClaim` to the new `PersistentVolume`. Pods that include the `PersistentVolumeClaim` mount that `PersistentVolume` on any host that it runs on.
6. A user creates a `VolumeSnapshot` of an existing PVC, using a `VolumeSnapshotClass` that points to Trident.
7. Trident identifies the volume that is associated with the PVC and creates a snapshot of the volume on its backend. It also creates a `VolumeSnapshotContent` that instructs Kubernetes on how to identify the snapshot.
8. A user can create a `PersistentVolumeClaim` using `VolumeSnapshot` as the source.
9. Trident identifies the required snapshot and performs the same set of steps involved in creating a `PersistentVolume` and a `Volume`.



For further reading about Kubernetes objects, we highly recommend that you read the [Persistent Volumes](#) section of the Kubernetes documentation.

Kubernetes `PersistentVolumeClaim` objects

A Kubernetes `PersistentVolumeClaim` object is a request for storage made by a Kubernetes cluster user.

In addition to the standard specification, Trident allows users to specify the following volume-specific annotations if they want to override the defaults that you set in the backend configuration:

Annotation	Volume Option	Supported Drivers
<code>trident.netapp.io/fileSystem</code>	<code>fileSystem</code>	ontap-san, solidfire-san,ontap-san-economy
<code>trident.netapp.io/cloneFromPVC</code>	<code>cloneSourceVolume</code>	ontap-nas, ontap-san, solidfire-san, azure-netapp-files, gcp-cvs, ontap-san-economy
<code>trident.netapp.io/splitOnClone</code>	<code>splitOnClone</code>	ontap-nas, ontap-san
<code>trident.netapp.io/protocol</code>	<code>protocol</code>	any
<code>trident.netapp.io/exportPolicy</code>	<code>exportPolicy</code>	ontap-nas, ontap-nas-economy, ontap-nas-flexgroup
<code>trident.netapp.io/snapshotPolicy</code>	<code>snapshotPolicy</code>	ontap-nas, ontap-nas-economy, ontap-nas-flexgroup, ontap-san
<code>trident.netapp.io/snapshotReserve</code>	<code>snapshotReserve</code>	ontap-nas, ontap-nas-flexgroup, ontap-san, gcp-cvs
<code>trident.netapp.io/snapshotDirectory</code>	<code>snapshotDirectory</code>	ontap-nas, ontap-nas-economy, ontap-nas-flexgroup

Annotation	Volume Option	Supported Drivers
trident.netapp.io/unixPermissions	unixPermissions	ontap-nas, ontap-nas-economy, ontap-nas-flexgroup
trident.netapp.io/blockSize	blockSize	solidfire-san

If the created PV has the `Delete` reclaim policy, Trident deletes both the PV and the backing volume when the PV becomes released (that is, when the user deletes the PVC). Should the delete action fail, Trident marks the PV as such and periodically retries the operation until it succeeds or the PV is manually deleted. If the PV uses the `Retain` policy, Trident ignores it and assumes the administrator will clean it up from Kubernetes and the backend, allowing the volume to be backed up or inspected before its removal. Note that deleting the PV does not cause Trident to delete the backing volume. You should remove it using the REST API (`tridentctl`).

Trident supports the creation of Volume Snapshots using the CSI specification: you can create a Volume Snapshot and use it as a Data Source to clone existing PVCs. This way, point-in-time copies of PVs can be exposed to Kubernetes in the form of snapshots. The snapshots can then be used to create new PVs. Take a look at `On-Demand Volume Snapshots` to see how this would work.

Trident also provides the `cloneFromPVC` and `splitOnClone` annotations for creating clones. You can use these annotations to clone a PVC without having to use the CSI implementation.

Here is an example: If a user already has a PVC called `mysql`, the user can create a new PVC called `mysqlclone` by using the annotation, such as `trident.netapp.io/cloneFromPVC: mysql`. With this annotation set, Trident clones the volume corresponding to the `mysql` PVC, instead of provisioning a volume from scratch.

Consider the following points:

- We recommend cloning an idle volume.
- A PVC and its clone should be in the same Kubernetes namespace and have the same storage class.
- With the `ontap-nas` and `ontap-san` drivers, it might be desirable to set the PVC annotation `trident.netapp.io/splitOnClone` in conjunction with `trident.netapp.io/cloneFromPVC`. With `trident.netapp.io/splitOnClone` set to `true`, Trident splits the cloned volume from the parent volume and thus, completely decoupling the life cycle of the cloned volume from its parent at the expense of losing some storage efficiency. Not setting `trident.netapp.io/splitOnClone` or setting it to `false` results in reduced space consumption on the backend at the expense of creating dependencies between the parent and clone volumes such that the parent volume cannot be deleted unless the clone is deleted first. A scenario where splitting the clone makes sense is cloning an empty database volume where it's expected for the volume and its clone to greatly diverge and not benefit from storage efficiencies offered by ONTAP.

The `sample-input` directory contains examples of PVC definitions for use with Trident. Refer to [Trident Volume objects](#) for a full description of the parameters and settings associated with Trident volumes.

Kubernetes PersistentVolume objects

A Kubernetes `PersistentVolume` object represents a piece of storage that is made available to the Kubernetes cluster. It has a lifecycle that is independent of the pod that uses it.



Trident creates `PersistentVolume` objects and registers them with the Kubernetes cluster automatically based on the volumes that it provisions. You are not expected to manage them yourself.

When you create a PVC that refers to a Trident-based `StorageClass`, Trident provisions a new volume using the corresponding storage class and registers a new PV for that volume. In configuring the provisioned volume and corresponding PV, Trident follows the following rules:

- Trident generates a PV name for Kubernetes and an internal name that it uses to provision the storage. In both cases, it is assuring that the names are unique in their scope.
- The size of the volume matches the requested size in the PVC as closely as possible, though it might be rounded up to the nearest allocatable quantity, depending on the platform.

Kubernetes `StorageClass` objects

Kubernetes `StorageClass` objects are specified by name in `PersistentVolumeClaims` to provision storage with a set of properties. The storage class itself identifies the provisioner to be used and defines that set of properties in terms the provisioner understands.

It is one of two basic objects that need to be created and managed by the administrator. The other is the Trident backend object.

A Kubernetes `StorageClass` object that uses Trident looks like this:

```
apiVersion: storage.k8s.io/v1
kind: StorageClass
metadata:
  name: <Name>
provisioner: csi.trident.netapp.io
mountOptions: <Mount Options>
parameters:
  <Trident Parameters>
allowVolumeExpansion: true
volumeBindingMode: Immediate
```

These parameters are Trident-specific and tell Trident how to provision volumes for the class.

The storage class parameters are:

Attribute	Type	Required	Description
attributes	map[string]string	no	See the attributes section below
storagePools	map[string]StringList	no	Map of backend names to lists of storage pools within

Attribute	Type	Required	Description
additionalStoragePools	map[string]StringList	no	Map of backend names to lists of storage pools within
excludeStoragePools	map[string]StringList	no	Map of backend names to lists of storage pools within

Storage attributes and their possible values can be classified into storage pool selection attributes and Kubernetes attributes.

Storage pool selection attributes

These parameters determine which Trident-managed storage pools should be utilized to provision volumes of a given type.

Attribute	Type	Values	Offer	Request	Supported by
media ¹	string	hdd, hybrid, ssd	Pool contains media of this type; hybrid means both	Media type specified	ontap-nas, ontap-nas-economy, ontap-nas-flexgroup, ontap-san, solidfire-san
provisioningType	string	thin, thick	Pool supports this provisioning method	Provisioning method specified	thick: all ontap; thin: all ontap & solidfire-san
backendType	string	ontap-nas, ontap-nas-economy, ontap-nas-flexgroup, ontap-san, solidfire-san, gcp-cvs, azure-netapp-files, ontap-san-economy	Pool belongs to this type of backend	Backend specified	All drivers
snapshots	bool	true, false	Pool supports volumes with snapshots	Volume with snapshots enabled	ontap-nas, ontap-san, solidfire-san, gcp-cvs
clones	bool	true, false	Pool supports cloning volumes	Volume with clones enabled	ontap-nas, ontap-san, solidfire-san, gcp-cvs

Attribute	Type	Values	Offer	Request	Supported by
encryption	bool	true, false	Pool supports encrypted volumes	Volume with encryption enabled	ontap-nas, ontap-nas-economy, ontap-nas-flexgroups, ontap-san
IOPS	int	positive integer	Pool is capable of guaranteeing IOPS in this range	Volume guaranteed these IOPS	solidfire-san

¹: Not supported by ONTAP Select systems

In most cases, the values requested directly influence provisioning; for instance, requesting thick provisioning results in a thickly provisioned volume. However, an Element storage pool uses its offered IOPS minimum and maximum to set QoS values, rather than the requested value. In this case, the requested value is used only to select the storage pool.

Ideally, you can use `attributes` alone to model the qualities of the storage you need to satisfy the needs of a particular class. Trident automatically discovers and selects storage pools that match *all* of the `attributes` that you specify.

If you find yourself unable to use `attributes` to automatically select the right pools for a class, you can use the `storagePools` and `additionalStoragePools` parameters to further refine the pools or even to select a specific set of pools.

You can use the `storagePools` parameter to further restrict the set of pools that match any specified `attributes`. In other words, Trident uses the intersection of pools identified by the `attributes` and `storagePools` parameters for provisioning. You can use either parameter alone or both together.

You can use the `additionalStoragePools` parameter to extend the set of pools that Trident uses for provisioning, regardless of any pools selected by the `attributes` and `storagePools` parameters.

You can use the `excludeStoragePools` parameter to filter the set of pools that Trident uses for provisioning. Using this parameter removes any pools that match.

In the `storagePools` and `additionalStoragePools` parameters, each entry takes the form `<backend>:<storagePoolList>`, where `<storagePoolList>` is a comma-separated list of storage pools for the specified backend. For example, a value for `additionalStoragePools` might look like `ontapnas_192.168.1.100:aggr1,aggr2;solidfire_192.168.1.101:bronze`. These lists accept regex values for both the backend and list values. You can use `tridentctl get backend` to get the list of backends and their pools.

Kubernetes attributes

These attributes have no impact on the selection of storage pools/backends by Trident during dynamic provisioning. Instead, these attributes simply supply parameters supported by Kubernetes Persistent Volumes. Worker nodes are responsible for filesystem create operations and might require filesystem utilities, such as `xfsprogs`.

Attribute	Type	Values	Description	Relevant Drivers	Kubernetes Version
fsType	string	ext4, ext3, xfs	The file system type for block volumes	solidfire-san, ontap-nas, ontap-nas-economy, ontap-nas-flexgroup, ontap-san, ontap-san-economy	All
allowVolumeExpansion	boolean	true, false	Enable or disable support for growing the PVC size	ontap-nas, ontap-nas-economy, ontap-nas-flexgroup, ontap-san, ontap-san-economy, solidfire-san, gcp-cvs, azure-netapp-files	1.11+
volumeBindingMode	string	Immediate, WaitForFirstConsumer	Choose when volume binding and dynamic provisioning occurs	All	1.19 - 1.26

- The `fsType` parameter is used to control the desired file system type for SAN LUNs. In addition, Kubernetes also uses the presence of `fsType` in a storage class to indicate a filesystem exists. Volume ownership can be controlled using the `fsGroup` security context of a pod only if `fsType` is set. Refer to [Kubernetes: Configure a Security Context for a Pod or Container](#) for an overview on setting volume ownership using the `fsGroup` context. Kubernetes will apply the `fsGroup` value only if:

- `fsType` is set in the storage class.
- The PVC access mode is RWO.

For NFS storage drivers, a filesystem already exists as part of the NFS export. In order to use `fsGroup` the storage class still needs to specify a `fsType`. You can set it to `nfs` or any non-null value.

- Refer to [Expand volumes](#) for further details on volume expansion.
- The Trident installer bundle provides several example storage class definitions for use with Trident in `sample-input/storage-class-*.yaml`. Deleting a Kubernetes storage class causes the corresponding Trident storage class to be deleted as well.

Kubernetes VolumeSnapshotClass objects

Kubernetes `VolumeSnapshotClass` objects are analogous to `StorageClasses`. They help define multiple classes of storage and are referenced by volume snapshots to associate the snapshot with the required snapshot class. Each volume snapshot is associated with a single volume snapshot class.

A `VolumeSnapshotClass` should be defined by an administrator in order to create snapshots. A volume snapshot class is created with the following definition:

```
apiVersion: snapshot.storage.k8s.io/v1
kind: VolumeSnapshotClass
metadata:
  name: csi-snapclass
driver: csi.trident.netapp.io
deletionPolicy: Delete
```

The `driver` specifies to Kubernetes that requests for volume snapshots of the `csi-snapclass` class are handled by Trident. The `deletionPolicy` specifies the action to be taken when a snapshot must be deleted. When `deletionPolicy` is set to `Delete`, the volume snapshot objects as well as the underlying snapshot on the storage cluster are removed when a snapshot is deleted. Alternatively, setting it to `Retain` means that `VolumeSnapshotContent` and the physical snapshot are retained.

Kubernetes `VolumeSnapshot` objects

A Kubernetes `VolumeSnapshot` object is a request to create a snapshot of a volume. Just as a PVC represents a request made by a user for a volume, a volume snapshot is a request made by a user to create a snapshot of an existing PVC.

When a volume snapshot request comes in, Trident automatically manages the creation of the snapshot for the volume on the backend and exposes the snapshot by creating a unique `VolumeSnapshotContent` object. You can create snapshots from existing PVCs and use the snapshots as a `DataSource` when creating new PVCs.



The lifecycle of a `VolumeSnapshot` is independent of the source PVC: a snapshot persists even after the source PVC is deleted. When deleting a PVC which has associated snapshots, Trident marks the backing volume for this PVC in a **Deleting** state, but does not remove it completely. The volume is removed when all the associated snapshots are deleted.

Kubernetes `VolumeSnapshotContent` objects

A Kubernetes `VolumeSnapshotContent` object represents a snapshot taken from an already provisioned volume. It is analogous to a `PersistentVolume` and signifies a provisioned snapshot on the storage cluster. Similar to `PersistentVolumeClaim` and `PersistentVolume` objects, when a snapshot is created, the `VolumeSnapshotContent` object maintains a one-to-one mapping to the `VolumeSnapshot` object, which had requested the snapshot creation.

The `VolumeSnapshotContent` object contains details that uniquely identify the snapshot, such as the `snapshotHandle`. This `snapshotHandle` is a unique combination of the name of the PV and the name of the `VolumeSnapshotContent` object.

When a snapshot request comes in, Trident creates the snapshot on the backend. After the snapshot is created, Trident configures a `VolumeSnapshotContent` object and thus exposes the snapshot to the Kubernetes API.



Typically, you do not need to manage the `VolumeSnapshotContent` object. An exception to this is when you want to [import a volume snapshot](#) created outside of Trident.

Kubernetes CustomResourceDefinition objects

Kubernetes Custom Resources are endpoints in the Kubernetes API that are defined by the administrator and are used to group similar objects. Kubernetes supports the creation of custom resources for storing a collection of objects. You can obtain these resource definitions by running `kubectl get crds`.

Custom Resource Definitions (CRDs) and their associated object metadata are stored by Kubernetes in its metadata store. This eliminates the need for a separate store for Trident.

Trident uses CustomResourceDefinition objects to preserve the identity of Trident objects, such as Trident backends, Trident storage classes, and Trident volumes. These objects are managed by Trident. In addition, the CSI volume snapshot framework introduces some CRDs that are required to define volume snapshots.

CRDs are a Kubernetes construct. Objects of the resources defined above are created by Trident. As a simple example, when a backend is created using `tridentctl`, a corresponding `tridentbackends` CRD object is created for consumption by Kubernetes.

Here are a few points to keep in mind about Trident's CRDs:

- When Trident is installed, a set of CRDs are created and can be used like any other resource type.
- When uninstalling Trident by using the `tridentctl uninstall` command, Trident pods are deleted but the created CRDs are not cleaned up. Refer to [Uninstall Trident](#) to understand how Trident can be completely removed and reconfigured from scratch.

Trident StorageClass objects

Trident creates matching storage classes for Kubernetes `StorageClass` objects that specify `csi.trident.netapp.io` in their `provisioner` field. The storage class name matches that of the Kubernetes `StorageClass` object it represents.



With Kubernetes, these objects are created automatically when a Kubernetes `StorageClass` that uses Trident as a provisioner is registered.

Storage classes comprise a set of requirements for volumes. Trident matches these requirements with the attributes present in each storage pool; if they match, that storage pool is a valid target for provisioning volumes using that storage class.

You can create storage class configurations to directly define storage classes by using the REST API. However, for Kubernetes deployments, we expect them to be created when registering new Kubernetes `StorageClass` objects.

Trident backend objects

Backends represent the storage providers on top of which Trident provisions volumes; a single Trident instance can manage any number of backends.



This is one of the two object types that you create and manage yourself. The other is the Kubernetes `StorageClass` object.

For more information about how to construct these objects, refer to [configuring backends](#).

Trident `StoragePool` objects

Storage pools represent the distinct locations available for provisioning on each backend. For ONTAP, these correspond to aggregates in SVMs. For NetApp HCI/SolidFire, these correspond to administrator-specified QoS bands. For Cloud Volumes Service, these correspond to cloud provider regions. Each storage pool has a set of distinct storage attributes, which define its performance characteristics and data protection characteristics.

Unlike the other objects here, storage pool candidates are always discovered and managed automatically.

Trident `Volume` objects

Volumes are the basic unit of provisioning, comprising backend endpoints, such as NFS shares and iSCSI LUNs. In Kubernetes, these correspond directly to `PersistentVolumes`. When you create a volume, ensure that it has a storage class, which determines where that volume can be provisioned, along with a size.



- In Kubernetes, these objects are managed automatically. You can view them to see what Trident provisioned.
- When deleting a PV with associated snapshots, the corresponding Trident volume is updated to a **Deleting** state. For the Trident volume to be deleted, you should remove the snapshots of the volume.

A volume configuration defines the properties that a provisioned volume should have.

Attribute	Type	Required	Description
version	string	no	Version of the Trident API ("1")
name	string	yes	Name of volume to create
storageClass	string	yes	Storage class to use when provisioning the volume
size	string	yes	Size of the volume to provision in bytes
protocol	string	no	Protocol type to use; "file" or "block"
internalName	string	no	Name of the object on the storage system; generated by Trident
cloneSourceVolume	string	no	ontap (nas, san) & solidfire-*: Name of the volume to clone from
splitOnClone	string	no	ontap (nas, san): Split the clone from its parent

Attribute	Type	Required	Description
snapshotPolicy	string	no	ontap-*: Snapshot policy to use
snapshotReserve	string	no	ontap-*: Percentage of volume reserved for snapshots
exportPolicy	string	no	ontap-nas*: Export policy to use
snapshotDirectory	bool	no	ontap-nas*: Whether the snapshot directory is visible
unixPermissions	string	no	ontap-nas*: Initial UNIX permissions
blockSize	string	no	solidfire-*: Block/sector size
fileSystem	string	no	File system type

Trident generates `internalName` when creating the volume. This consists of two steps. First, it prepends the storage prefix (either the default `trident` or the prefix in the backend configuration) to the volume name, resulting in a name of the form `<prefix>-<volume-name>`. It then proceeds to sanitize the name, replacing characters not permitted in the backend. For ONTAP backends, it replaces hyphens with underscores (thus, the internal name becomes `<prefix>_<volume-name>`). For Element backends, it replaces underscores with hyphens.

You can use volume configurations to directly provision volumes using the REST API, but in Kubernetes deployments we expect most users to use the standard Kubernetes `PersistentVolumeClaim` method. Trident creates this volume object automatically as part of the provisioning process.

Trident Snapshot objects

Snapshots are a point-in-time copy of volumes, which can be used to provision new volumes or restore state. In Kubernetes, these correspond directly to `VolumeSnapshotContent` objects. Each snapshot is associated with a volume, which is the source of the data for the snapshot.

Each `Snapshot` object includes the properties listed below:

Attribute	Type	Required	Description
version	String	Yes	Version of the Trident API ("1")
name	String	Yes	Name of the Trident snapshot object
internalName	String	Yes	Name of the Trident snapshot object on the storage system

Attribute	Type	Required	Description
volumeName	String	Yes	Name of the Persistent Volume for which the snapshot is created
volumeInternalName	String	Yes	Name of the associated Trident volume object on the storage system



In Kubernetes, these objects are managed automatically. You can view them to see what Trident provisioned.

When a Kubernetes `VolumeSnapshot` object request is created, Trident works by creating a snapshot object on the backing storage system. The `internalName` of this snapshot object is generated by combining the prefix `snapshot-` with the UID of the `VolumeSnapshot` object (for example, `snapshot-e8d8a0ca-9826-11e9-9807-525400f3f660`). `volumeName` and `volumeInternalName` are populated by getting the details of the backing volume.

Trident `ResourceQuota` object

The Trident daemonset consumes a `system-node-critical` Priority Class—the highest Priority Class available in Kubernetes—to ensure Trident can identify and clean up volumes during graceful node shutdown and allow Trident daemonset pods to preempt workloads with a lower priority in clusters where there is high resource pressure.

To accomplish this, Trident employs a `ResourceQuota` object to ensure a "system-node-critical" Priority Class on the Trident daemonset is satisfied. Prior to deployment and daemonset creation, Trident looks for the `ResourceQuota` object and, if not discovered, applies it.

If you need more control over the default Resource Quota and Priority Class, you can generate a `custom.yaml` or configure the `ResourceQuota` object using Helm chart.

The following is an example of a `ResourceQuota` object prioritizing the Trident daemonset.

```
apiVersion: <version>
kind: ResourceQuota
metadata:
  name: trident-csi
  labels:
    app: node.csi.trident.netapp.io
spec:
  scopeSelector:
    matchExpressions:
      - operator : In
        scopeName: PriorityClass
        values: ["system-node-critical"]
```

For more information on Resource Quotas, refer to [Kubernetes: Resource Quotas](#).

Clean up ResourceQuota if installation fails

In the rare case where installation fails after the ResourceQuota object is created, first try [uninstalling](#) and then reinstall.

If that doesn't work, manually remove the ResourceQuota object.

Remove ResourceQuota

If you prefer to control your own resource allocation, you can remove the Trident ResourceQuota object using the command:

```
kubectl delete quota trident-csi -n trident
```

Pod Security Standards (PSS) and Security Context Constraints (SCC)

Kubernetes Pod Security Standards (PSS) and Pod Security Policies (PSP) define permission levels and restrict the behavior of pods. OpenShift Security Context Constraints (SCC) similarly define pod restriction specific to the OpenShift Kubernetes Engine. To provide this customization, Trident enables certain permissions during installation. The following sections detail the permissions set by Trident.



PSS replaces Pod Security Policies (PSP). PSP was deprecated in Kubernetes v1.21 and will be removed in v1.25. For more information, Refer to [Kubernetes: Security](#).

Required Kubernetes Security Context and Related Fields

Permission	Description
Privileged	CSI requires mount points to be Bidirectional, which means the Trident node pod must run a privileged container. For more information, refer to Kubernetes: Mount propagation .
Host networking	Required for the iSCSI daemon. <code>iscsiadm</code> manages iSCSI mounts and uses host networking to communicate with the iSCSI daemon.
Host IPC	NFS uses interprocess communication (IPC) to communicate with the NFSD.
Host PID	Required to start <code>rpc-statd</code> for NFS. Trident queries host processes to determine if <code>rpc-statd</code> is running before mounting NFS volumes.

Permission	Description
Capabilities	The <code>SYS_ADMIN</code> capability is provided as part of the default capabilities for privileged containers. For example, Docker sets these capabilities for privileged containers: <code>CapPrm: 0000003fffffffffff</code> <code>CapEff: 0000003fffffffffff</code>
Seccomp	Seccomp profile is always "Unconfined" in privileged containers; therefore, it cannot be enabled in Trident.
SELinux	On OpenShift, privileged containers are run in the <code>spc_t</code> ("Super Privileged Container") domain, and unprivileged containers are run in the <code>container_t</code> domain. On <code>containerd</code> , with <code>container-selinux</code> installed, all containers are run in the <code>spc_t</code> domain, which effectively disables SELinux. Therefore, Trident does not add <code>seLinuxOptions</code> to containers.
DAC	Privileged containers must be run as root. Non-privileged containers run as root to access unix sockets required by CSI.

Pod Security Standards (PSS)

Label	Description	Default
<code>pod-security.kubernetes.io/enforce</code>	Allows the Trident Controller and nodes to be admitted into the install namespace.	<code>enforce: privileged</code>
<code>pod-security.kubernetes.io/enforce-version</code>	Do not change the namespace label.	<code>enforce-version: <version of the current cluster or highest version of PSS tested.></code>



Changing the namespace labels can result in pods not being scheduled, an "Error creating: ..." or, "Warning: trident-csi-...". If this happens, check if the namespace label for `privileged` was changed. If so, reinstall Trident.

Pod Security Policies (PSP)

Field	Description	Default
<code>allowPrivilegeEscalation</code>	Privileged containers must allow privilege escalation.	<code>true</code>
<code>allowedCSIDrivers</code>	Trident does not use inline CSI ephemeral volumes.	Empty

Field	Description	Default
allowedCapabilities	Non-privileged Trident containers do not require more capabilities than the default set and privileged containers are granted all possible capabilities.	Empty
allowedFlexVolumes	Trident does not make use of a FlexVolume driver , therefore they are not included in the list of allowed volumes.	Empty
allowedHostPaths	The Trident node pod mounts the node's root filesystem, therefore there is no benefit to setting this list.	Empty
allowedProcMountTypes	Trident does not use any ProcMountTypes.	Empty
allowedUnsafeSysctls	Trident does not require any unsafe sysctls.	Empty
defaultAddCapabilities	No capabilities are required to be added to privileged containers.	Empty
defaultAllowPrivilegeEscalation	Allowing privilege escalation is handled in each Trident pod.	false
forbiddenSysctls	No sysctls are allowed.	Empty
fsGroup	Trident containers run as root.	RunAsAny
hostIPC	Mounting NFS volumes requires host IPC to communicate with nfsd	true
hostNetwork	iscsiadm requires the host network to communicate with the iSCSI daemon.	true
hostPID	Host PID is required to check if rpc-statd is running on the node.	true
hostPorts	Trident does not use any host ports.	Empty
privileged	Trident node pods must run a privileged container in order to mount volumes.	true
readOnlyRootFilesystem	Trident node pods must write to the node filesystem.	false
requiredDropCapabilities	Trident node pods run a privileged container and cannot drop capabilities.	none
runAsGroup	Trident containers run as root.	RunAsAny
runAsUser	Trident containers run as root.	runAsAny

Field	Description	Default
runtimeClass	Trident does not use RuntimeClasses.	Empty
seLinux	Trident does not set <code>seLinuxOptions</code> because there are currently differences in how container runtimes and Kubernetes distributions handle SELinux.	Empty
supplementalGroups	Trident containers run as root.	RunAsAny
volumes	Trident pods require these volume plugins.	hostPath, projected, emptyDir

Security Context Constraints (SCC)

Labels	Description	Default
allowHostDirVolumePlugin	Trident node pods mount the node's root filesystem.	true
allowHostIPC	Mounting NFS volumes requires host IPC to communicate with <code>nfsd</code> .	true
allowHostNetwork	<code>iscsiadm</code> requires the host network to communicate with the iSCSI daemon.	true
allowHostPID	Host PID is required to check if <code>rpc-statd</code> is running on the node.	true
allowHostPorts	Trident does not use any host ports.	false
allowPrivilegeEscalation	Privileged containers must allow privilege escalation.	true
allowPrivilegedContainer	Trident node pods must run a privileged container in order to mount volumes.	true
allowedUnsafeSysctls	Trident does not require any unsafe <code>sysctls</code> .	none
allowedCapabilities	Non-privileged Trident containers do not require more capabilities than the default set and privileged containers are granted all possible capabilities.	Empty
defaultAddCapabilities	No capabilities are required to be added to privileged containers.	Empty
fsGroup	Trident containers run as root.	RunAsAny

Labels	Description	Default
groups	This SCC is specific to Trident and is bound to its user.	Empty
readOnlyRootFilesystem	Trident node pods must write to the node filesystem.	false
requiredDropCapabilities	Trident node pods run a privileged container and cannot drop capabilities.	none
runAsUser	Trident containers run as root.	RunAsAny
seLinuxContext	Trident does not set <code>seLinuxOptions</code> because there are currently differences in how container runtimes and Kubernetes distributions handle SELinux.	Empty
seccompProfiles	Privileged containers always run "Unconfined".	Empty
supplementalGroups	Trident containers run as root.	RunAsAny
users	One entry is provided to bind this SCC to the Trident user in the Trident namespace.	n/a
volumes	Trident pods require these volume plugins.	hostPath, downwardAPI, projected, emptyDir

Legal notices

Legal notices provide access to copyright statements, trademarks, patents, and more.

Copyright

<https://www.netapp.com/company/legal/copyright/>

Trademarks

NETAPP, the NETAPP logo, and the marks listed on the NetApp Trademarks page are trademarks of NetApp, Inc. Other company and product names may be trademarks of their respective owners.

<https://www.netapp.com/company/legal/trademarks/>

Patents

A current list of NetApp owned patents can be found at:

<https://www.netapp.com/pdf.html?item=/media/11887-patentspage.pdf>

Privacy policy

<https://www.netapp.com/company/legal/privacy-policy/>

Open source

You can review third-party copyright and licenses used in NetApp software for Trident in the notices file for each release at <https://github.com/NetApp/trident/>.

Copyright information

Copyright © 2024 NetApp, Inc. All Rights Reserved. Printed in the U.S. No part of this document covered by copyright may be reproduced in any form or by any means—graphic, electronic, or mechanical, including photocopying, recording, taping, or storage in an electronic retrieval system—without prior written permission of the copyright owner.

Software derived from copyrighted NetApp material is subject to the following license and disclaimer:

THIS SOFTWARE IS PROVIDED BY NETAPP "AS IS" AND WITHOUT ANY EXPRESS OR IMPLIED WARRANTIES, INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, THE IMPLIED WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY AND FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE, WHICH ARE HEREBY DISCLAIMED. IN NO EVENT SHALL NETAPP BE LIABLE FOR ANY DIRECT, INDIRECT, INCIDENTAL, SPECIAL, EXEMPLARY, OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES (INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, PROCUREMENT OF SUBSTITUTE GOODS OR SERVICES; LOSS OF USE, DATA, OR PROFITS; OR BUSINESS INTERRUPTION) HOWEVER CAUSED AND ON ANY THEORY OF LIABILITY, WHETHER IN CONTRACT, STRICT LIABILITY, OR TORT (INCLUDING NEGLIGENCE OR OTHERWISE) ARISING IN ANY WAY OUT OF THE USE OF THIS SOFTWARE, EVEN IF ADVISED OF THE POSSIBILITY OF SUCH DAMAGE.

NetApp reserves the right to change any products described herein at any time, and without notice. NetApp assumes no responsibility or liability arising from the use of products described herein, except as expressly agreed to in writing by NetApp. The use or purchase of this product does not convey a license under any patent rights, trademark rights, or any other intellectual property rights of NetApp.

The product described in this manual may be protected by one or more U.S. patents, foreign patents, or pending applications.

LIMITED RIGHTS LEGEND: Use, duplication, or disclosure by the government is subject to restrictions as set forth in subparagraph (b)(3) of the Rights in Technical Data -Noncommercial Items at DFARS 252.227-7013 (FEB 2014) and FAR 52.227-19 (DEC 2007).

Data contained herein pertains to a commercial product and/or commercial service (as defined in FAR 2.101) and is proprietary to NetApp, Inc. All NetApp technical data and computer software provided under this Agreement is commercial in nature and developed solely at private expense. The U.S. Government has a non-exclusive, non-transferrable, nonsublicensable, worldwide, limited irrevocable license to use the Data only in connection with and in support of the U.S. Government contract under which the Data was delivered. Except as provided herein, the Data may not be used, disclosed, reproduced, modified, performed, or displayed without the prior written approval of NetApp, Inc. United States Government license rights for the Department of Defense are limited to those rights identified in DFARS clause 252.227-7015(b) (FEB 2014).

Trademark information

NETAPP, the NETAPP logo, and the marks listed at <http://www.netapp.com/TM> are trademarks of NetApp, Inc. Other company and product names may be trademarks of their respective owners.